

CMS

CONSERVATION MANAGEMENT STRATEGY

Waikato 2014–2024, Volume I
Operative 29 September 2014



Department of
Conservation
Te Papa Atou'wai

CONSERVATION MANAGEMENT STRATEGY

WAIKATO 2014–2024, Volume I

Operative 29 September 2014

Cover image: Rider on the Timber Trail, Pureora Forest Park.

Photo: DOC

September 2014, New Zealand Department of Conservation

ISBN 978-0-478-15021-6 (print)

ISBN 978-0-478-15023-0 (online)



This document is protected by copyright owned by the Department of Conservation on behalf of the Crown. Unless indicated otherwise for specific items or collections of content, this copyright material is licensed for re-use under the Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 New Zealand licence. In essence, you are free to copy, distribute and adapt the material, as long as you attribute it to the Department of Conservation and abide by the other licence terms.

To view a copy of this licence, visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/nz/>

This publication is produced using paper sourced from well-managed, renewable and legally logged forests.

Contents

Foreword	7
<hr/>	
Introduction	8
<hr/>	
Purpose of conservation management strategies	8
CMS structure	10
CMS term	10
Relationship with other Department of Conservation strategic documents and tools	10
Relationship with other planning processes	11
Legislative tools	12
Exemption from land use consents	12
Closure of areas	12
Bylaws and regulations	12
Conservation management plans	12
International obligations	13
Part One	14
<hr/>	
1 The Department of Conservation in Waikato	14
2 Vision for Waikato—2064	14
2.1 Long-term vision for Waikato—2064	15
3 Distinctive features, values and issues in Waikato	16
3.1 Water—the life force of the region	17
3.2 Fragmented biodiversity	18
3.3 Nationally significant karst landscape	20
3.4 East and west—distinctly different coastal environments	21
3.5 Diverse communities—from the King Country to the Coromandel	23
3.6 Recreation and tourism opportunities at the cross roads	24
3.7 Interconnected and valued cultural and historic heritage	26
4 Treaty of Waitangi partnerships	27
4.1 Waikato-Tainui	27
4.2 Ngāti Maniapoto	28
4.3 Raukawa	29
4.4 Ngāti Korokī Kahukura	30
4.5 Pouakani	30
4.6 Hauraki Whānui	30
4.7 Tūwharetoa Iwi	31
4.8 Treaty of Waitangi objectives	31
5 Waikato by 2024	33
5.1 The diversity of our natural heritage is maintained and restored	33
5.2 History is protected and brought to life	38
5.3 More people participate in recreation	39
5.4 More people engage with conservation and value its benefits	42
5.5 Conservation gains from business partnerships	45
6 The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato	47
6.1 Waikato River Objectives	50
7 Hauraki Gulf Marine Park	51
7.1 Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Objectives	52

Part Two—Places	54
<hr/>	
8 Hauraki Islands Place	55
8.1 Description	56
8.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Hauraki Islands Place	58
9 Hauraki–Coromandel Peninsula Place	64
9.1 Description	64
9.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Hauraki–Coromandel Peninsula Place	70
10 Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place	81
10.1 Description	81
10.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place	85
11 Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana Wetland Place	93
11.1 Description	93
11.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana Wetland Place	96
12 Freshwater Wetlands Place	100
12.1 Description	100
12.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Freshwater Wetlands Place	106
13 Karioi to Whareorino Place	114
13.1 Description	114
13.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Karioi to Whareorino Place	120
14 Waitomo Place	126
14.1 Description	126
14.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Waitomo Place	128
15 Pureora Place	133
15.1 Description	133
15.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Pureora Place	137
Part Three	146
<hr/>	
16 Specific policy requirements for Waikato	146
16.1 General	146
16.2 Authorisations (General)	147
16.3 Vehicles	149
16.4 Animals	159
16.5 Private accommodation and related facilities	161
16.6 Marine mammals	163
16.7 Commercial eeling	164
16.8 Sports fish and game bird hunting	165
16.9 Mining	166
16.10 Sand and shingle extraction	167
16.11 Commercial filming and photography	167
16.12 Collection of material	168
16.13 Wild animal control activities	168
16.14 Fire management	170
16.15 Kauri dieback disease	170
16.16 Game animals (see also Wild Animals)	171
16.17 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS	171
Part Four	173
<hr/>	
17 Implementation monitoring and reporting, and review	173
17.1 Introduction	173

Appendix 1	195
Work or activities of the Department of Conservation that may meet the requirements of Section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 for exemptions from land use consents	195
Appendix 2	208
Important ecosystems and habitats within Waikato	208
Appendix 3	212
Islands administered by the Department of Conservation in Waikato	212
Appendix 4	214
Priority ecosystems on public conservation lands and waters in Waikato identified by the Department of Conservation using its natural heritage prioritising processes in September 2013	214
Appendix 5	218
Threats or pests and wild animals present in Waikato	218
Appendix 6	228
Threatened and At Risk species present in Waikato	228
Appendix 7	233
Nationally iconic species in Waikato	233
Appendix 8	234
Marine habitats and ecosystems in Waikato	234
Appendix 9	239
Significant geological features, landforms and landscapes in Waikato	239
Appendix 10	247
Actively conserved historic places in Waikato on public conservation lands or waters managed by the Department	247
Appendix 11	250
Recreation destinations in Waikato	250
Appendix 12	253
Prescriptions for the management of visitor management zones	253
Appendix 13	256
Summary of the Memorandum of Understanding between Pouakani and the Minister of Conservation	256
Appendix 14	258
Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato—The Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River	258
Appendix 15	264
Private accommodation schedule	264
Appendix 16	265
Criteria for which the Firth of Thames, Kopuatai Peat Dome and Whangamarino Wetland were nominated as Wetlands of International Importance	265

Appendix 17	266
Statement of Values and Protection Principles for Pureora o Kahu	266
Index	267

List of tables

Table 1: Islands within the Hauraki Islands Place and their 2011 island classification	55
Table 2: Key wetlands administered by the Department of Conservation in the Waikato, Waipa and Hauraki Districts	100
Table 3: Mountain bike, horse and motorised vehicle access within in Pureora Place	144
Table 4: Spectrum of aircraft encounters on public conservation lands and waters	156
Table 5: Locations in Waikato where activities under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 are restricted	172

Foreword

“He Tau Ariki te Tau, He Tau Whāngai te Tau”

“Matariki’s Celestial Gift”

Knowledge systems and balance in our world through the rhythm of seasons

The major issues identified in this conservation management strategy are freshwater quality, responding to population growth and demographic change, and kauri dieback.

To make improvements in freshwater quality the Department will be working with communities and stakeholders on priority ecosystem units, particularly freshwater wetlands, lakes and rivers and providing advice and input into integrated planning for the catchments of the Waikato and Waipa Rivers.

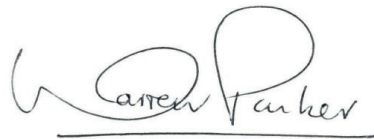
In responding to population growth and demographic change the Department will be targeting young people and Māori, and working with other agencies to respond to their recreation needs, with the aim of thereby also increasing understanding of, and engagement in, conservation in Waikato.

A strategic milestone of this strategy is to prevent the further spread of kauri dieback disease in Waikato, focusing on the Coromandel Peninsula, the Hakarimata Range and Te Kauri Park Scenic Reserve, in collaboration with other agencies, iwi, local authorities and the community.

This conservation management strategy has been developed through a lengthy public process and includes significant on-going contributions from tangata whenua and Waikato communities and others over many years. This enthusiastic input and active engagement is acknowledged, and it has resulted in this robust statement of the direction for conservation in Waikato for the next decade and beyond.

This CMS became operative on 29 September 2014.

Dr Warren Parker
Chairman NZ Conservation Authority



Mark Brough
Chairman Waikato Conservation Board



Nicola Douglas
Director Conservation Partnerships



Chris Jenkins
Director Conservation Services



Introduction

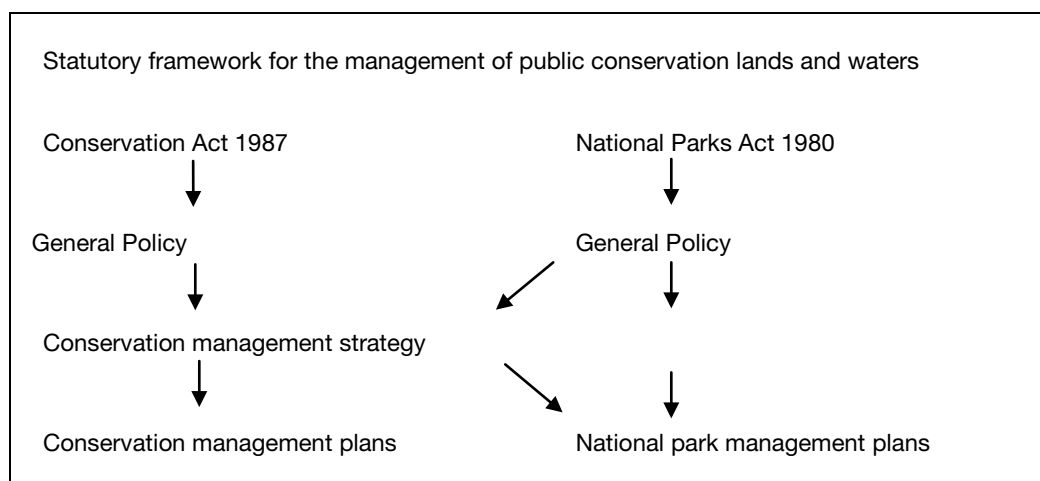
Purpose of conservation management strategies

Conservation, as defined under section 2 of the Conservation Act 1987 (the Act), is the ‘preservation and protection of natural and historic resources for the purpose of maintaining their intrinsic values, providing for their appreciation and recreational enjoyment by the public, and safeguarding the options of future generations’.

The functions of the Department of Conservation (the Department) are, for the most part, identified in section 6 of the Act and in other Acts listed in the First Schedule of the Act.

The purpose of a conservation management strategy (CMS), as defined by section 17D of the Act, is to implement general policies (including the Conservation General Policy 2005), and to establish objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources, including species managed by the Department, and for recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes.

The Act creates a hierarchy of documents to guide the Department in its management. The Act is at the top, the General Policy is next, and below that are the CMSs and conservation management plans. In Waikato (refer Map 1), there is one operative conservation management plan: the Coromandel Land Management Plan. This Management Plan will be superseded by this CMS and will be revoked when the CMS becomes operative. Other statutory management plans impacting on conservation in Waikato will be developed pursuant to Treaty settlement legislation (refer to the section below on conservation management plans).



The general policies relevant to this CMS are as follows:

- Conservation General Policy 2005, which applies to all conservations lands, waters and resources managed by the Department under the following Acts: the Conservation Act 1987, the Wildlife Act 1953, the Marine Reserves Act 1971, the Reserves Act 1977, the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 and the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978.
- Sections 7 and 8 of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000.
- The Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River—as recorded in the Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010, the Ngati Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010, and the Nga Wai o Maniapoto (Waipa River) Act 2012.

Introduction

Other legislation in which the Minister of Conservation has a role or that is relevant to this CMS includes the Electricity Act 1992, the Freedom Camping Act 2011, the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014, the Protected Objects Act 1975, the State-Owned Enterprises Act 1986, the Crown Minerals Act 1991, the Walking Access Act 2008 and the Game Animal Council Act 2013.

All public conservation lands and waters must be managed in accordance with the legislation under which they are held. This CMS must be interpreted and applied in line with that legislation.

The parts of this CMS that have legal effect are the objectives, outcome statements, policies and glossary:

- Objectives describe the goals that the Department wants to achieve across Waikato, and support national directions and community aspirations to achieve integrated management.
- Outcome statements describe the future state of a 'Place', including its values and changes at that Place over the 10-year term of the CMS, and will be used when making decisions. This applies whether or not there is a specific policy for a Place.
- Policies describe the course of action or guiding principles to be used for conservation management and decision-making.
- Glossary defines terms.

All other text is provided as supportive background material.

Each CMS is prepared in consultation with the Conservation Board, and with public participation, and is approved by the New Zealand Conservation Authority according to the process set out in the Conservation Act 1987. Preparation of this CMS has involved two pre-statutory consultation phases and a statutory consultation phase in 2008–2009 for an earlier draft. The first pre-statutory consultation occurred during 2007–2008, and involved meetings and hui with communities throughout Waikato, and the release and receipt of informal submissions on a preliminary draft of the Waikato CMS. Open days were held as part of the statutory consultation phase in 2008, as a result of which 89 submissions were received. The second phase of pre-statutory consultation was held during 2011 and this sought mainly to fill any gaps in the earlier phase. A survey that asked questions about 'Places' was promoted online, via newspaper advertising, through local events and directly to over 800 stakeholders. Offers were made to meet, and face-to-face meetings were held with a range of stakeholders, including interested local authorities, recreation clubs and organisations, and conservation groups. Iwi authorities were informed on several occasions and some face-to-face hui were held. Feedback was received from over 200 people who participated in this process. The Waikato Conservation Board was involved throughout: members attended meetings and were provided with briefings at their own Board meetings.

The draft Waikato Conservation Management Strategy was publicly notified on 5 December 2012. Submissions closed on 15 March 2013. A total of 167 submissions were received. Hearings were held in May 2013 and 53 submitters attended to speak to their submissions. Submitters were heard by a hearings panel of two representatives from the Waikato Conservation Board and two Department of Conservation staff members. The hearings panel reviewed and commented on revision of the draft CMS.

CMS structure

This CMS describes the conservation values present in Waikato, and provides guidance for the Department's work in the form of a vision, objectives, outcomes for Places, policies and milestones, translating the Department's Strategic Outcomes to Waikato. The Places described in Part Two of this CMS have been identified for the purposes of integrated conservation management and require some specific management direction.

This CMS has two volumes.

Volume I includes:

- a vision for Waikato, objectives and milestones (Part One)
- outcomes, policies and milestones for Places (Part Two)
- other specific policies that address legislative and general policy requirements (Part Three)
- implementation monitoring and reporting, and review (Part Four)
- appendices
- a glossary which defines words and phrases
- an index.

The vision and objectives in Part One, the policies in Part Three, and objectives in Part Four cover the entire Waikato region (the area covered by this CMS).

Volume II contains maps and a public conservation land inventory.

Sites not covered by a Part Two Place are of no lesser value or importance but require less detailed management direction. Conservation management will still be undertaken in these areas in line with the vision, objectives, policies, milestones and related provisions in Parts One, Three and Four of this CMS.

Further guidance for interpretation is provided at the start of Parts One, Two and Three, in Policy 16.1.1.1 and the Glossary.

CMS term

This CMS will have effect for 10 years, or until formally amended or reviewed in full or in part. The term of this CMS is from 2014 to 2024, but may be extended with ministerial approval.

Relationship with other Department of Conservation strategic documents and tools

This CMS must be read in conjunction with the Conservation General Policy, as this is the key statutory tool directing the content of conservation management strategies. Relevant provisions of the Conservation General Policy are not repeated in the CMS.

The Conservation General Policy 2005 provides clear direction that each conservation management strategy should integrate the management of Places to achieve national conservation outcomes and coordinate planning between Places in other conservation management strategies. To help achieve this integration towards national conservation outcomes, the high-level objectives of the Department's Statement of Intent 2012-17, and national priorities identified through the Department's national decision-making support tools are reflected in this CMS. These

tools, including those for natural heritage management and destination management, identify national priorities for the delivery of the Department's biodiversity, historic and recreation functions. National priorities for ecosystems and recreation are identified on Map 2 (Ecosystem priorities and Icon and Gateway destinations).

In this CMS, the term 'priority ecosystem unit' refers to a site where conservation work will most effectively contribute to protecting the full range of ecosystems nationally and the Threatened and At Risk species that live within them. These sites have been identified through the application of the Department's natural heritage management prioritising processes. Research and increased knowledge will result in adaptations to management approaches.

Threatened and At Risk species are referred to by their status according to their level of threat of extinction identified in the New Zealand Threat Classification System 2008¹. Iconic species are those that the public has told the Department help define New Zealand's identity. Locally treasured natural heritage work is, collectively, the species and natural features that are valued by a local community as defining their locality.

References to recreation opportunities on public conservation lands and waters have been categorised as a suite of destinations to reflect known and potential demand and to capture people's outdoor leisure preferences. 'Icon destinations' are those that the Department has identified as inspirational places that are crucial to domestic and international tourism. 'Gateway destinations' are places that the Department will promote as suitable for people's first adventures in the outdoors, or repeat adventures of a gentle nature. 'Local Treasure destinations' are nearby destinations valued by the local community and managed to grow community connection with and use of those places. 'Backcountry' opportunities are more challenging recreation opportunities in the backcountry. 'Historic Icon sites' are an important part of New Zealand's history and identity, and the focus of the Department's story-telling to bring history to life.

Conservation management strategies integrate the Department's national priorities with local priorities that have been identified through consultation with the community. They guide the Department's management of places, business planning and the Statement of Intent, decisions on concessions and other authorisations, and identify opportunities for collaborative efforts to achieve more conservation.

Relationship with other planning processes

Conservation management strategies are part of a wider planning framework. In preparing CMSs, the Conservation General Policy 2005 requires that regard be had to local government planning documents. In turn, local government planning processes are required to have regard to the Department's statutory plans when preparing documents under the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA). Planning for natural and historic resources cannot be undertaken in isolation from wider regional, local government and iwi planning processes. Integration of this planning framework will ensure that plans and policies work as building blocks to deliver good conservation and environmental outcomes at a regional scale.

Statutory planning documents relevant to the management of natural and historic resources in Waikato include the Proposed Waikato Regional Policy Statement, district

¹ Townsend, A.J.; de Lange, P.J.; Duffy, C.A.J.; Miskelly, C.M.; Molloy, J.; Norton, D.A. 2008: New Zealand Threat Classification System Manual. Department of Conservation, Wellington.

plans, the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010 and the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2011.

Under the Biosecurity Act 1993, regional councils are responsible for preparing regional pest management strategies and pathway plans to ensure a coordinated approach to pest control is taken. The Department will work with regional councils on the preparation of these strategies and plans.

Legislative tools

Exemption from land use consents

Section 4(3) of the RMA exempts the Department from needing to obtain district council land use consents where activities are consistent with a CMS, conservation management plan or similar document and do not have significant adverse effects beyond the boundary of public conservation lands. Appendix 1 of this CMS lists many activities that the Department considers meet the requirements for an exemption under section 4(3)(a) and (b) of the RMA. The facilities and activities in Appendix 1 are listed for the sole purpose of enabling the exemption under section 4(3) of the RMA and do not represent an undertaking in terms of the provision of these facilities.

Further, while certain activities may be exempt from land use consent, this does not preclude compliance with other consent requirements under the RMA and other legislation.

Closure of areas

Section 13 of the Conservation Act 1987 enables the Minister of Conservation to close areas administered under that Act for reasons of public safety or emergency. This section also enables the Minister to close areas if a CMS provides for the closure for conservation purposes (refer Part Three, policy 16.1.1.7). Access to reserves may also be restricted under the conditions for use of the reserve by Gazette notice or signage.

Bylaws and regulations

Bylaws can be established for reserves under the Reserves Act 1977, and regulations can be made for conservation areas and other conservation purposes under the Conservation Act 1987. The Hauraki Gulf Maritime Park Bylaws 1984, which the Department administers, apply to 15 reserves in the Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana². New bylaws and regulations will be developed during the term of this CMS to replace these bylaws.

Conservation management plans

Sections 17E and 17G of the Conservation Act 1987 provides for the preparation of conservation management plans for the purpose of implementing a CMS, and establishing detailed objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources for a place, and for recreation, tourism or other conservation purposes. The Act provides for the intention to prepare a conservation management plan to be identified in a CMS. This does not preclude the preparation of conservation management plans, which may come about as a requirement in Treaty Settlement Acts.

² The Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana is referred to as the 'Hauraki Gulf' throughout this CMS.

In Waikato, the conservation component³ of the following plans, once developed, (required under Treaty settlement legislation) will have dual status as both a conservation management plan and a freshwater fisheries management plan (Section 17J) under the Conservation Act:

- The integrated river management plan for the Waikato River
- The Upper Waikato River Integrated Management Plan
- The Upper Waipa River Integrated Management Plan.

The conservation component of these plans must be jointly approved by the relevant iwi and the Minister of Conservation.

International obligations

New Zealand is a signatory to many international agreements that are relevant to conservation. The Department implements these agreements in accordance with its functions and has responsibilities for a number of species under these agreements. Examples of important international agreements of most relevance within Waikato include the:

- Convention on Biological Diversity
- Convention Concerning the Protection of the World's Cultural and Natural Heritage (World Heritage Convention)
- Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wildlife Flora and Fauna (CITES)
- International Convention for the Regulation of Whaling
- Convention on Migratory Species
- Convention on Wetlands of International Importance especially as Waterfowl Habitat (Ramsar Convention)
- Convention for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict
- Convention on the Means of Prohibiting and Preventing the Illicit Import, Export and Transfer of Ownership of Cultural Property
- East Asian-Australasian Flyway Partnership.

In Waikato, the Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana, Kopuatai Peat Dome and Whangamarino Wetland are recognised as Wetlands of International Importance under the Ramsar Convention (refer Appendix 16). The Arawai Kākāriki wetland restoration programme, which undertakes research to improve understanding of wetland restoration issues and develop best practice wetland management and monitoring tools, is a good example of how Ramsar obligations are being met at Whangamarino Wetland. Refer to sections 11 and 12 for further information about each wetland.

The upper Firth of Thames is also recognised as a site important for migratory species under the East Asian-Australasian Flyway Partnership. The recognition of this site as an important migratory flyway also contributes to New Zealand's obligations under the Convention on Migratory Species.

³ The conservation component of each settlement is the component on issues related to conservation management under the conservation legislation.

Part One

1 The Department of Conservation in Waikato

This section contains a vision, objectives and milestones that apply to all public conservation lands, waters and resources in Waikato (refer Map 1). Where there is a more specific provision in Part Two or Part Three, the more specific provision prevails.

This section, along with Part Two, also guides the Department when it advocates for conservation off public conservation lands and waters.

2 Vision for Waikato—2064

The 50-year Vision sets the long-term picture for the conservation of natural and historic resources in Waikato. It goes well beyond the 10-year life of this CMS and may change over time.

The Department of Conservation also has a national long-term Vision:

New Zealand is the greatest living space on Earth
Kāore he wāhi i tua atu i a Āotearoa, hei wahi noho i te ao

This Vision is aspirational, a great deal bigger than conservation and a great deal bigger than the Department. It challenges the Department to connect with others to achieve it, often in ways that expand the traditional view of the Department's role and who its traditional partners are. In doing so, it requires the Department to build empathy, trust and understanding, so that both traditional and non-traditional audiences engage in a common vision.

Conservation is an investment in New Zealand's future prosperity—with 'prosperity' defined in the broadest environmental, heritage, cultural, social and economic terms. The aim is to shift perceptions of conservation as a cost, to conservation as an investment. The Department wants to inspire and involve others to work together to achieve more conservation than it could achieve alone.

It means changing the way people perceive a healthy environment, so that they understand and value spending on nature conservation, seeing that it delivers a broad range of benefits, such as healthy soils, clean air and fresh water. The benefits nature provides are also multi-faceted and broad—they feed social, physical, cultural and spiritual health, and wealth. This allows people to be drawn to making *New Zealand the greatest living space on Earth* through many pathways.

Neither the ecological or social environment of New Zealand will be the same in 100 years as is today. The Department will adapt its management as the decades pass in response to climate and demographic changes so as to maintain relevance to New Zealanders and to demonstrate inspirational conservation leadership. Future revisions of the CMS will reflect those adaptations.

Working towards the 100-year Vision for the Department and the 50-year Vision for Waikato, the Department aims to increase the amount of conservation work being achieved over the 20-year period from 2014 to 2034 by building strong local partnerships with tangata whenua, communities, agencies and business.

2.1 Long-term vision for Waikato—2064

By 2064, the challenge of safeguarding and improving Waikato’s conservation values within the mosaic of a highly fragmented and modified natural landscape has been met.

Waikato’s natural heritage is flourishing. Coastal and marine environments, islands, forests, wetlands, karst, and rivers are protected and enhanced, and the resilience of these natural systems is strengthened. Nationally representative marine protected areas and the West Coast North Island Marine Mammal Sanctuary contribute to thriving marine life, including a healthy population of Māui dolphins. Clean water flows into and through Waikato’s harbours, estuaries, wetlands and rivers. Interconnected patches and large contiguous areas of healthy and intact indigenous forest characterise the landscape. These ecosystems and habitats provide a haven for abundant indigenous fauna, including migratory species, such as tuna/eels and wading birds. Nationally Threatened and At Risk species and priority ecosystems are no longer threatened or at risk by people’s actions.

More conservation is achieved across the Waikato through collaboration with tangata whenua, the community, landowners, local authorities, other agencies and business.

Tangata whenua, having settled historical Treaty claims, are active partners in managing natural, historic and process heritage on public conservation land. The health and well-being of the Waikato River (Te Awa o Waikato), the Waipa River and other rivers specified in Treaty settlements are restored. These rivers sustain abundant life as a result of integrated action by tangata whenua, the community, the Department, local authorities, landowners and other agencies.

Waikato’s protected natural heritage, including the ecosystem services it provides, is valued for the vital role it plays in the region’s economic prosperity. Tangata whenua, the community, local authorities, other agencies, businesses and individuals join together to participate in conservation activities in increasing numbers. Landowners are inspired and continue to improve the health of natural areas on private land, achieving greater habitat and ecosystem connectivity between public and private lands.

With guidance and leadership from the Department, each generation accepts the challenge of building on past conservation successes, and identifying places and future issues requiring action, such as the control of invasive pests and active participation in the adoption of biosecurity measures.

Waikato’s historic and cultural heritage is valued for the connections it provides with the past and people are proud of their local history and heritage places.

Waikato is a desirable destination in its own right, underpinned by outdoor recreation opportunities that showcase its attributes without diminishing natural, historic and cultural values or the enjoyment of others. The Coromandel Peninsula remains a popular domestic and international destination, with greater awareness and connections being made to protect its natural, historic and cultural values. The hidden beauty and biodiversity treasures of Waikato’s wetlands are brought to life. Waitomo and the surrounding karst country deliver an outstanding, internationally renowned tourism experience while protecting the natural state of karst. To the southeast, Pureora’s Timber Trail is a model for economic and social renewal of communities through recreation and tourism integrated with the conservation of Pureora’s diverse natural, cultural and historic heritage.

3 Distinctive features, values and issues in Waikato

Waikato extends from the west coast of the North Island between Port Waikato and Mokau, across to the western edge of Lake Taupo and north to the Coromandel Peninsula. It is characterised by a variety of different landscapes, resulting from a history of uplifting, sea level change, volcanism and the influence of major river systems, such as the Waikato River. Stand-out landscape features of the Waikato include the west coast harbours – Kawhia, Aotea and Raglan; spectacular coastal cliffs at Moeatoa and Te Toto Gorge; Waitomo karst system; volcanic cones such as Pirongia and Karioi, and the exposed volcanic plugs (remnants of older volcanoes) on the Coromandel Range; the lakes and wetlands of the Waikato and Hauraki plains; and rugged coastline, including the many islands off the Coromandel Peninsula.

The range of landscapes, altitude and east-to-west contrast provides for a great diversity of ecosystems, including the southern limit for some species, such as kauri, and northern limit of others, such as subalpine vegetation found at its northern-most limit on Moehau. Historically rare ecosystems, such as Kopuatai Peat Dome and Waitomo karst, are internationally important. Some ecosystems are well represented, such as the tall podocarp-broadleaf forests of Pureora (including the largely intact forest at Waipapa), whereas other once widespread ecosystems, such as lowland kahikatea forest, are now threatened. These ecosystems in turn provide habitat for a wide diversity of native flora and fauna.

Waikato is the second-fastest growing region in New Zealand, behind Auckland and ahead of the Bay of Plenty. In 2013, the Waikato region had 403, 638 people, or 9.5% of the national population, and regional population growth is expected to increase by 0.7% per annum by 2031, to reach just over 468 000 people⁴. This population growth drives intensive urbanisation and coastal and lifestyle property development within a landscape that has already been highly modified, mainly for agriculture.

With more than 20% of Waikato's population identifying as Māori, the Waikato has a rich Māori heritage.

With the exception of Pureora and Coromandel Forests, much of the remaining indigenous landscape in Waikato is highly fragmented. Agriculture is a major driver of the Waikato economy, with dairy farming being a significant contributor to New Zealand's exports. Thirty percent of all dairy farms in New Zealand are found in the Waikato, which is continuing to experience further intensification of land use, particularly in the dairy farming sector. The Waikato is also a popular destination for international and domestic tourism and recreation, much of which occurs in places with conservation values. Within this context, the Department's priority is to continue to maintain and enhance Waikato's natural and historic heritage, particularly ecosystems, habitats and species vulnerable to the adverse effects of human activities, pest plants, animal pests and wild animals. Many management issues require cross-boundary collaborative approaches between agencies.

Important issues for managing and contributing to conservation in Waikato include:

- realising the potential for indigenous ecosystem protection, landscape appreciation, and ecosystem services
- ensuring public enjoyment of conservation lands and waters is compatible with the protection of natural heritage and historic heritage values
- reversing the degradation of freshwater ecosystems and threats to their indigenous species

⁴ Statistics New Zealand 2013: New Zealand 2013 Census. www.stats.govt.nz/Census/2013-census.

- valuing the coastal environment, both land and marine
- recognising the need for coordinated partnership approaches and guiding the contribution of community and business to maximise the benefits of conservation initiatives.

3.1 Water—the life force of the region

Waikato's freshwater resources include nationally and internationally significant rivers, wetlands and lakes. Some of these are legally protected, including a variety of rivers, streams, swamps, peat bogs, lakes and mires⁵.

Waikato's wetland ecosystems are abundant and diverse. Wetlands originally covered some 110 000 ha of the Waikato region, dominating the lowland basins of the lower Waikato River and the Waipa District and the Hauraki Plains; and although only 30 000 ha remain today, Waikato is still a national stronghold for wetlands. Three of New Zealand's six Wetlands of International Importance under the Ramsar Convention are found here: Whangamarino Wetland, Kopuatai Peat Dome and the Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana.

Wetland management in Waikato is a priority focus for the Department, which manages a number of wetlands, including Whangamarino, Kopuatai and Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko). The Department also works collaboratively with tangata whenua, local authorities, communities and other organisations to ensure the protection and ongoing management of other priority wetlands.

The economic value of ecosystem services⁶ in the Waikato region is estimated to be approximately 95% (\$12.6 billion in 2010) of Waikato's total Gross Regional Product. Wetland ecosystems were seen as particularly important, accounting for 13% of all ecosystem services in the region. Services of particular economic and ecological importance include storm protection, water supply, flood control, habitat provision, nutrient recycling and waste treatment⁷

The Waikato River catchment crosses the rohe of Hauraki, Tainui, Raukawa, Te Arawa River Iwi, and Ngāti Tūwharetoa. The river has been modified for a range of uses, including electricity generation, but still has a nationally unique lowland river delta with a range of natural values. The Waipa River is a major tributary of the Waikato River and receives significant sediment from its catchments. This has a large impact on the natural values of both rivers. Its sub-catchment contains significant karst river headwaters.

The Waihou and Piako River systems, which are adjacent to Kopuatai and drain into the Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana, are highly degraded, and a source of nutrient enrichment and sedimentation. On the east coast, Coromandel Peninsula catchments are typically small and steep, streams are relatively unmodified, and many headwaters and mid-stream sections are within Coromandel Forest Park.

On Waikato's west coast, small, steep coastal catchments without large flood plains predominate. The largest rivers are the Marokopa, Awakino and Mokau. In the south of

⁵ For further information about wetlands types, please refer to the publication: Johnson P and Gerbeaux P 2004: *Wetland Types in New Zealand*. Department of Conservation. Wellington. This can be viewed at www.doc.govt.nz/documents/science-and-technical/WetlandsBW.pdf

⁶ The resources and services provided by ecosystems, such as clean drinking water, flood protection and decomposition of waste.

⁷ Patterson, M.; Cole, A. 1998: *The economic value of ecosystem services in the Waikato region*. Report prepared for Environment Waikato. Massey University, Palmerston North, New Zealand.

Waikato, the Ongarue River, one of the larger river catchments in Waikato, flows into the Whanganui River.

As well as holding important ecological values, the waterways of the Waikato have socio-cultural and economic values for both the Waikato people, and the wider New Zealand public. They are a source of food, recreation, and commercial benefit to many New Zealanders.

Tangata whenua, in particular, have strong spiritual, historic and cultural connections with Waikato's wetlands, lakes and rivers. Not only are they important for their intrinsic values, but they are also a valued food source, and provide resources for building and weaving materials. Important issues for tangata whenua include the damming, drainage and pollution of waterways and the adverse effects these have on the mauri (life force) of the waterways.

Treaty settlements between the Crown and several Waikato iwi provide a number of mechanisms to achieve co-governance and co-management of the Waikato and Waipa Rivers—refer section 4 (Treaty of Waitangi) and section 6 (The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato).

Some of Waikato's surface water resources completely or partially occur in locations that are covered as Places in Part Two of this CMS. However, many waterways do not fall within Places and flow through only small areas of public conservation land. Therefore, the Department must work in partnership with tangata whenua, local authorities, landowners, communities and other organisations to ensure that there is appropriate management and sufficient protection for habitats and native species along the entire length of these waterways. The Department is involved in catchment management projects led by Waikato Regional Council, including the Kaimai-Mamaku, Waihou and Piako rivers, and Coromandel Peninsula catchment management programmes, which aim to improve water quality and facilitate flood protection measures.

3.2 Fragmented biodiversity

Large, continuous tracts of indigenous forest are now rare in Waikato. The maintenance and enhancement of large areas of native habitat with connecting ecological corridors between fragments brings benefits to habitat diversity, ecological resilience, and species migration and dispersal. It also improves the ability of species to respond and adapt to the effects of climate change. These forests are important for their ecological, cultural, historic, geological and landscape values, as well as for the recreation opportunities and ecosystem services they provide. The large forest park catchments sustain the quality of surface and ground water that are a source of the region's horticultural, agricultural and municipal drinking water supplies. Indigenous ecosystems on public conservation lands and waters also contribute to flood protection, soil conservation and carbon sequestration.

Pureora Forest Park is the Waikato's best example of a continuous area of indigenous forest, and is renowned for its unlogged podocarp forests, which provide important habitat for Threatened species including North Island kākā (*Nestor meridionalis*), native bats and North Island kōkako (*Callaeas cinereas*). Frost flat shrublands within the park also provide habitat for Threatened plants such as *Pittosporum turneri* and *Pimelea tomentosa*.

The Coromandel Forest Park and forests from Karioi to Whareorino also contain extensive and largely continuous tracts of indigenous vegetation. Altitudinal sequences of vegetation from coastal to montane types occur at Karioi, Herangi and

Moehau. Moehau contains Coromandel brown kiwi (*Apteryx mantelli*), an endemic population of the brown kiwi taxon⁸, and important coastal pōhutukawa (*Metrosideros excelsa*) forest. This forest type is also present at Hot Water Beach, Waiomu Ecological Area (in association with rātā (*Metrosideros robusta*)), along the Thames Coast and on offshore islands.

At least 21 plant species reach their northern limit at Moehau. The nearest populations of these plant species occur at Mt Hikurangi, some 280 km further southeast. The At Risk swamp leek orchid (*Prasophyllum hectorii*) and locally rare *Pittosporum virgatum* are present, as are 14 other locally rare species. Moehau is also home to several endemic invertebrate species, including the Moehau stag beetle (*Geodorcus alsobius*).

The Coromandel Forest Park Whenuakite Block contains the largest area of protected eastern coastal and semi-coastal forest, a vegetation type that is now severely depleted on the Peninsula. Community groups are actively involved in the protection of Coromandel brown kiwi and ecosystems in this area.

Archey's frog (*Leiopelma archeyi*) is restricted to moist, medium to high-altitude forest habitats in the Herangi and Coromandel Ranges—the only places in New Zealand where natural populations of this acutely Threatened species occur.

Outside the Places described in Part Two of this CMS, relatively large areas of lowland podocarp-broadleaf forest habitats are found on the Hapuakohe and Hakarimata Ranges. The Hakarimata Range is one of the largest remaining examples of lowland forest in the Waikato, and lies in a transition zone between northern kauri (*Agathis australis*) forest and southern beech forest, providing a high diversity of animal and plant species. Forest remnants are also found in upper sections of the Mokau River catchment and at Mapara Wildlife Management Reserve which provides habitat for the Threatened North Island kōkako.

The Mahoenui giant wētā (*Deinacrida mahoenui*), previously considered extinct, was rediscovered in an area of King Country gorse (*Ulex europaeus*) in 1963. This site now has legal protection as the Mahoenui Giant Weta Scientific Reserve. New populations, including on Mahurangi Island (Goat Island) off the east coast of the Coromandel Peninsula, are being established through translocations to secure the species' long-term future.

Some Waikato indigenous forest areas, such as the volcanic cone Maungatautari, are being managed by local communities. Maungatautari is managed by Waipa District Council and the Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust, with representatives from the community, adjacent landowners and tangata whenua, and one representative from the Waikato Conservation Board. Ecological restoration at Maungatautari includes maintaining a pest-proof fence, reintroducing Threatened, At Risk and other native species and preventing incursions and eradicating remaining animal pests and wild animals. Maungatautari is one of the most ambitious community-led conservation projects in Waikato.

Many natural areas with high ecological and biodiversity values in Waikato are located on private land. These areas often play an important role in buffering and connecting habitats and ecosystems, including those on public conservation lands and waters. Private landowners contribute to the protection of these areas by setting aside land for indigenous vegetation enhancement and regeneration, such as Queen Elizabeth II covenants. For example, 1929 hectares of private land was protected in the Thames

⁸ There are four geographically and genetically distinct forms of brown kiwi (*Apteryx mantelli*): Northland brown kiwi, Coromandel brown kiwi, western brown kiwi and eastern brown kiwi. These taxa have been separated geographically and genetically for between 40 000 and 150 000 years.

Coromandel District between 1990 and 2010 through QEII covenants⁹. Private landowners also contribute to vegetation and habitat restoration, and species protection on their lands. The Waikato Regional Council's Significant Natural Areas programme, which identifies natural areas on public and private lands in Waikato, also contributes to understanding of and efforts to protect natural areas in Waikato.

Waikato's highly fragmented forest habitats face a greater range of threats than larger forested areas. These include the invasion of pest plants and animals, the effects of adjoining land use activities (e.g. grazing), and a reduced ability to support indigenous fauna and biodiversity in general.

Climate change will potentially have significant effects on biodiversity and ecosystem function, particularly through sea level rises, effects of extreme weather events, changes in habitat and incursions of new pest plants and animals. Habitat fragmentation will limit the ability of some species to move in response to shifting climatic zones and will reduce the resilience of many ecosystems.

If not planned and managed to ensure conservation values are maintained and protected, other threats to natural heritage in Waikato can include the adverse effects of forestry, mining, aquaculture, fire, drainage, agricultural land use and coastal and urban development. Disease, decreased water quality and quantity, and an increase in invasive plants and animal pests and wild animals are also important issues associated with the maintenance and protection of natural heritage. These threats and issues highlight the importance of taking an integrated approach to natural heritage management.

3.3 Nationally significant karst landscape

The Waikato includes one of New Zealand's three major karst areas, extending through the western King Country northwards to Port Waikato.

Karst areas form in limestone and have unique geomorphological and ecological features and processes. Caves, blind valleys, disappearing streams and sculpted rock outcrops are all characteristic of karst environments. Within the caves are a valuable and vulnerable range of cave formations, such as stalactites, stalagmites, and scientifically important sediment, bone and fossil deposits.

While glowworms (*Arachnocampa luminosa*) are the most familiar cave invertebrate, there are also troglodyte species such as snails, beetles, harvestmen and pseudoscorpions. On the surface, a variety of plants prefer the chemistry and refugia that karst offers. The fern *Asplenium cimmeriorum* and Awaroa hebe (*Hebe scopulorum*) are found only in karst areas. Tawarau Forest is unique as a large piece of forested North Island karst that has essentially intact vegetation and biogeochemical processes. The forested limestone gorge at Grand Canyon Nature Reserve provides habitat for one of the largest known pekapeka/long-tailed bat (*Chalinolobus tuberculatus*) populations in the country.

Karst areas are highly significant for tangata whenua, and the damage and desecration of caves is a key concern. Other threats to karst areas can include changes to surface vegetation, farming and forestry, sedimentation, flooding, mining, and recreation and tourism activities in cave systems where activities are not planned and managed to ensure conservation values are maintained and protected. An integrated catchment management approach (above and below ground) is important for the protection of karst values.

⁹ Natural Solutions – Marine and Terrestrial Ecologists Ltd. 2010: Are covenants working? Biodiversity protection through the Thames-Coromandel District Council District Plan.

A number of important caves are on conservation land, including the well-known Waitomo tourist caves. The Waitomo District provides the most readily accessible and numerous caving opportunities in New Zealand, with the Waitomo Glowworm Cave, Ruakuri Cave and Aranui Cave providing commercially operated caving experiences to a large number of visitors, both domestic and international.

3.4 East and west—distinctly different coastal environments

The Waikato coastline covers 1150 km, with the west coast's mostly sparsely settled and exposed coastline contrasting with the east coast's more intensively developed Coromandel Peninsula and Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana. The east coast includes estuaries, intertidal harbours, rocky reefs, sandy beaches and offshore islands, and provides habitat for regionally and nationally Threatened and At Risk coastal and marine species.

Some of the earliest Māori settlement sites in New Zealand are found on the east coast of the Coromandel Peninsula. There are numerous pā (fortified villages) and kāinga (village) sites, and urupā (burial grounds) along both coasts of Waikato, which are particularly concentrated around harbours and estuaries. Providing access to kaimoana (seafood) and taking effective action to improve harbour health are issues of particular importance to tangata whenua.

Waikato sits within two biogeographic regions. The northeast region extends down the east coast of the North Island from Cape Reinga (Te Rerengawairua) to East Cape and is influenced by the East Auckland Current. The central region extends down the west coast of Waikato, and is influenced by the northward-flowing Westland Current and the southward-flowing West Auckland Current, both of which are of subtropical origin.

Coastal areas provide habitat for a range of Threatened and At Risk seabirds. The Coromandel Peninsula supports approximately 60% of the total national population of tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel (*Charadrius obscurus*). The Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana and other coastal harbours, including Aotea and Kawhia Harbours, provide important feeding and wintering grounds for endemic species such as ngutuparore/wrybill (*Anarhynchus frontalis*) and tōrea/South Island pied oystercatcher (*Haematopus ostralegus finschi*), and for east Asian-Australasian migrants, such as kuaka/bar-tailed godwit (*Limosa lapponica*) and huahou/lesser or red knot (*Calidris canutus*).

Most Waikato harbours and estuaries provide excellent shore and estuarine bird habitat. For example, Kawhia and Aotea Harbours and the lower Waikato River mouth (Port Waikato) have been assessed as internationally significant sites for shorebirds, and meet the criteria for inclusion as Wetlands of International Importance under the Ramsar Convention. The ecological quality of Waikato's harbours and estuaries is influenced by sediment and nutrient inputs from surrounding catchments, and land use activities adjacent to and along the harbour and estuary margins. Most of the coastal environments referred to above have been identified as Areas of Significant Conservation Value in the Waikato Regional Coastal Plan (2004), and are important sites for integrated harbour and river catchment management. Identifying other outstanding, rare, distinctive, and nationally or internationally significant sites is important, and such sites will be priorities for protection. In addition to these ecological values, the harbours of Raglan (Whaingaroa), Kawhia and Aotea, and the Waikato River mouth have high cultural, historic and aesthetic value for which there is high interest from iwi, local communities and agencies involved in their management. The Shores Futures Project is a collaborative multi-agency approach to long-term integrated management of the Kawhia and Aotea harbour catchments.

The protection of shorebird feeding areas, and roosting and nesting sites from development and disturbance by humans, domestic animals and animal pests and wild animals, as well as pest plants, is important. Awareness of national and international flyways (migratory paths) that connect these habitat areas and the integrated management of both the areas and flyways is vital for maintaining their ecological integrity. The Department works in conjunction with tangata whenua, communities, organisations, territorial authorities and international organisations to ensure that appropriate management and sufficient protection are provided for these habitats (including migratory pathways) and their associated native species. Notably, the Important Bird Area (IBA) programme¹⁰ identifies sites used to encourage protection of important wildlife habitat. A process is underway to list IBA sites in New Zealand. Sites for consideration in Waikato include Hirakimata Kotuku Peninsula (Aotea Harbour), the Firth of Thames, Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), the Mercury Islands and the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua).

Waikato's harbours and estuaries support populations of many important fish species, providing a haven for spawning and juvenile fish. They also provide recreation opportunities, including boating, swimming, windsurfing, fishing and kayaking. While the Department does not administer most harbours and estuaries, it does administer scattered reserves and marginal strips surrounding some harbours, and has responsibility for protecting indigenous species, and advocating for the protection of ecosystems and indigenous species at these locations. Management of harbours and estuaries is led by Waikato Regional Council and includes the development of harbour catchment management plans.

The Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000 covers the Hauraki Gulf, Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana and the east coast of the Coromandel Peninsula (to Waihi Beach) (Te Tai Tamahine) within Waikato. It includes all adjacent islands managed by the Department, Whanganui A Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve¹¹, and terrestrial public conservation land within the catchments that adjoin the Marine Park. This Act established the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park, and promotes the conservation and sustainable management of the natural, historical and cultural resources of the Hauraki Gulf, its islands and catchments (refer section 7).

New Zealand waters contain 41 species of whales, dolphins and porpoises, and nine species of seals. The marine mammal species that are most frequently encountered in Waikato are common (*Delphinus capensis*) and bottlenose (*Tursiops truncatus*) dolphins, orca (*Orcinus orca*), Bryde's whale (*Balaenoptera brydei*), and kekeno/New Zealand fur seal (*Arctocephalus forsteri*). There are known fur seal rookeries at Karewa/Gannet Island, Tirua Point and Albatross Point, and a small haul-out on the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua).

The Nationally Critical Māui dolphin (*Cephalorhynchus hectori maui*), a subspecies of the Hector's dolphin, is the world's smallest and rarest marine dolphin. The population of around 55 dolphins over the age of 1 year is found only on the west coast of the North Island. In Waikato, they are most commonly seen between Raglan and Port Waikato. Entanglement in set nets is a major threat to this species, as is trawling, seabed mining, marine pollution and disease. The West Coast North Island Marine

¹⁰ The Important Bird Area programme (an initiative of Birdlife International, a partnership of non-governmental organisations) uses a set of standard criteria for identifying sites based on the IUCN (International Union for Conservation of Nature) threat rankings of the birds and a set of population parameters (numbers of birds present based on their threat status).

¹¹ Whanganui A Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve is the legal gazetted name of this Marine Reserve.

Mammal Sanctuary (refer Map 5), which includes the entire western Waikato coastline, was established in 2008 to provide protection for this critically endangered species from seabed mining and acoustic seismic surveys. Restrictions on set net and trawl fishing under the Fisheries Act 1996 also exist within the sanctuary area to help the recovery of Māui dolphin within the species' natural range. The review of the Maui's Dolphin Threat Management Plan undertaken in 2012 has resulted in a package of protection measures that will be implemented in 2014/15 and also identifies research priorities to focus efforts prior to the 5 year review due in 2018.

3.5 Diverse communities—from the King Country to the Coromandel

Waikato has diverse communities with differing socioeconomic circumstances, a rich heritage and increasing involvement in conservation. The extent of protected areas across Waikato reflects a complex history of Māori and European occupation (including warfare), changes in resource use (e.g. mining, logging, and food production and gathering) and conservation action.

Hamilton, the region's largest city, is home to 31% of Waikato's population and has increasing cultural diversity. Surrounding Hamilton City, the Waipa and Waikato Districts contain a further 27% of Waikato's population¹². Coromandel Peninsula is a popular destination for holiday home owners and tourists by virtue of its proximity to Auckland, Hamilton and Tauranga—the population swells to five times its usual size over summer. The southern part of Waikato, which incorporates much of the King Country, is largely rural and is experiencing a slow population decline, particularly in isolated, more sparsely populated areas.

Hamilton has a long history of leadership in environmental action. The nationally successful Enviroschools Programme was founded in the city and is one of the leading participants in the Communities for Climate Protection¹³. Initiatives that the Department has been partner to include Project Halo, which aims to bring more native birds back into the city, and Project Echo, which involves the collection of information on the resident population of pekapeka/long-tailed bats.

The Waikato and Waipa Districts are very diverse, with Ngaruawahia being a cultural hub for Waikato-Tainui iwi; Cambridge servicing the dairy and equine industries; and Raglan providing a seaside lifestyle and holiday destination. Within the Waikato and Waipa Districts, the Department's focus has been on working with tangata whenua, communities, local government and other agencies on a wide range of conservation initiatives, including wetland and coastal habitat protection and enhancement, threatened species protection, and remnant forest restoration. The national Agricultural Fieldays, held at Mystery Creek each year, provide a valuable opportunity for the Department to raise awareness and encourage the public to become more involved in conservation.

The communities on the Coromandel Peninsula are diverse and have differing perspectives on conservation and resource extraction. For example, community opposition to mining culminated in legislative changes in 1997 to restrict this activity on the Peninsula; but, on the other hand, there are generations of families with connections to gold mining and the heritage associated with it.

A shared community vision for the future of the Coromandel Peninsula has been developed that sees the environment as being central to the community's well-being

¹² Statistics New Zealand 2013: New Zealand 2013 Census. www.stats.govt.nz/Census/2013-census.

¹³ Hamilton City Council 2008: Environmental Sustainability Strategy for Hamilton: engaging our city. Hamilton City Council, Hamilton, New Zealand.

and vitality¹⁴ (refer section 9). The Department's focus has been on supporting and partnering a number of conservation initiatives, including the New Zealand Dotterel Watch Programme¹⁵ and community-based restoration programmes. The Department also provides recreation opportunities that capitalise on the Peninsula's natural and historic heritage. The community's high interest in the Department providing further recreation opportunities and expanding efforts in biodiversity protection poses a significant challenge.

Otorohanga and Te Kuiti are the major agricultural service centres in the southern part of Waikato. Beyond them is the tourist settlement of Waitomo, the coastal settlements of Marokopa and Kawhia/Aotea (which are becoming popular in summer) and inland rural settlements such as Benneydale and Piopio. Local iwi have a long history of involvement in conservation, particularly species translocations. Community conservation initiatives are increasing in this part of Waikato, led by both local groups and groups from urban centres, such as Auckland. Examples include programmes for North Island kōkako, brown kiwi, tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel and whio/blue duck (*Hymenolaimus malacorhynchos*) and catchment management partnerships with Waikato Regional Council and local communities. Increasing the number of community-led conservation initiatives is a challenge for this part of Waikato, due to its declining population and isolated communities.

3.6 Recreation and tourism opportunities at the cross roads

Waikato's mix of mountains, plains, forests, shrublands, wetlands, karst and coastal landscapes, cultural heritage and natural resources offers visitors an extensive choice of attractions. Meeting the diverse demands and aspirations of the many recreational users in Waikato is challenging.

Over 50% of New Zealand's population lives within a 90-minute drive of Waikato and an active boating community is able to access the Coromandel coastline within 1-2 hours from Auckland. In 2007, 20% of international visitors to New Zealand stopped in the Waikato. However, most international visitors arriving into Auckland drive through the Waikato to Rotorua, Taupo¹⁶ and other popular destinations. Thus, there is the opportunity to work with local government and regional tourism organisations to increase the profile of significant destinations in Waikato.

Recreation plays a key role in developing understanding of and support for conservation by attracting more (and new) people to take advantage of opportunities provided on public conservation lands and waters. It is essential to maintain an awareness of changing trends in the recreation sector, and to consider whether new trends can be catered for on public conservation lands and waters, or as part of a strategic approach with other parts of the country and/or other recreation providers.

Forming strategic alliances with recreation providers and organisations, and encouraging active involvement from the public will help to ensure that Waikato provides an integrated range of recreation opportunities and services, both on and off public conservation lands and waters.

¹⁴ Coromandel Peninsula Blueprint Political Steering Group 2009: Coromandel Peninsula blueprint: framework for our future: summary. Thames Coromandel District Council, Thames, New Zealand.

¹⁵ In partnership with Newmont Gold Waihi with assistance from local volunteers.

¹⁶ Zahra, A.; Walter, N. 2007: The Waikato region: major tourism issues and opportunities to facilitate tourism development: public summary. A report commissioned by Katolyst, University of Waikato, Hamilton, New Zealand

Recreation opportunities in Waikato are available in a diverse range of settings, from urban (provided mainly by others such as local authorities), through to rural, front country and backcountry, to limited, remote experience opportunities. Waikato provides for a variety of recreational opportunities ranging from picnicking and bush walks to more active pursuits such as tramping, mountain biking, four-wheel driving and hunting. There are extensive walking and tramping opportunities, primarily in the Coromandel, Pureora and Pirongia Forest Parks, and Tawarau and Whareorino Forests (further detailed in Part Two—Places). Waikato's neighbouring areas provide complementary outdoor recreation opportunities, notably in the Whanganui and Tongariro National Parks, and the volcanic and geothermal regions of the Bay of Plenty.

Walking and tramping tracks also provide access for recreational users to enjoy activities such as fishing, picnicking, snorkelling, boating and historic site exploration. Some tracks are also designated for use by mountain bikes, four-wheel drive vehicles, quad bikes and trail bikes. Hunting is a popular activity in Waikato, both as a recreational activity and as a means of food gathering, with opportunities available for hunting introduced animals such as deer, goats (*Capra hircus*), pigs (*Sus scrofa*) and game birds.

Most Waikato campsites are accessible by vehicle and located on the Coromandel Peninsula and in Pureora Forest Park. The northern Coromandel provides camping experiences in a remote coastal setting, while the Kauaeranga Valley, southern Coromandel and Pureora provide opportunities in attractive bush locations. High demand for camping opportunities in the northern North Island has led to the Department exploring options to expand the provision of camping opportunities on public conservation lands.

Cathedral Cove and Hot Water Beach are significant attractions for national and international visitors to the Coromandel. Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve at Hahei has a snorkel trail and a range of water-based recreation opportunities.

Te Araroa—The Long Pathway¹⁷ is a trail from Cape Reinga (Te Rerengawairua) to Bluff, which provides opportunities for visitors to experience environments both on and off public conservation lands. It crosses public conservation lands within Waikato, utilising existing walking tracks in the Hakarimata Scenic Reserve, Pirongia Forest Park and Pureora Forest Park. A collaborative approach with councils, the Te Araroa Trust and communities could provide further significant recreation and conservation awareness opportunities along and linking to Te Araroa.

The Timber Trail, located in Pureora Forest Park, is a cycling track that forms part of the New Zealand Cycle Trail—Nga Haerenga. It provides multi-day recreational cycling and walking experiences from Pureora Village, southwards to Ongarue, near Taumararua. Further information on the Timber Trail can be found in section 15: Pureora Place in Part Two of this CMS.

Although increased visitation and enjoyment are primary goals for recreation, the Department will monitor activities and the quality of visitor experiences to ensure that adverse effects are minimised. This may result in limiting certain activities or managing visitor levels to maintain the quality of the visitor experience, reduce conflict, minimise site degradation and/or ensure public safety, and protect natural, historic and cultural values.

¹⁷ www.teararoa.org.nz.

3.7 Interconnected and valued cultural and historic heritage

Public conservation lands and waters in the Waikato contain a rich historical and cultural heritage – sites of exploration, settlement, natural resource use and protection, warfare, communication and ongoing spiritual and cultural associations. These places link the present to the past, to the culture of those who came before.

Waikato, particularly the Coromandel Peninsula, has a rich Māori heritage dating back 800 years. More than 5000 recorded pre-European archaeological sites are found in Waikato: fewer than 10% of these are on public conservation lands and waters. The sites are associated with initial settlement, establishment, subsistence and warfare, as well as wāhi tapu, special economic resources such as stone outcrops used for adze manufacture, and rock art sites. Some of the Māori dune sites on the east coast of the Coromandel Peninsula are among the earliest settlement sites in New Zealand. There are numerous pā and kāinga sites along Waikato's coastlines.

European arrival resulted in a range of new historic places, including trading posts, mission stations, sites associated with the Waikato campaign (1863–64) of the New Zealand Wars, sites associated with extractive industries (notably gold mining, coal mining and kauri logging) and historic places associated with whaling, shipping and ship building, railway routes and agriculture.

Within the Coromandel Forest Park, there are numerous significant sites associated with quartz reef mining in the 19th and 20th centuries. Also within the park, concentrated in the Kauaeranga and Tairua catchments are many sites, notably the driving dams, associated with the kauri logging industry, which continued until the 1930s. Historical relics from more recent podocarp logging in the King Country forests are also an important feature. Some of them have been incorporated into the Timber Trail, an 83 kilometre cycleway in Pureora Forest Park.

Historical and cultural heritage helps us to understand how people have changed the environment over time. Few areas of New Zealand remain unmodified by the effects of human occupation. A single site or area usually has a range of interrelated values, including historical and cultural, biodiversity and recreational values. Visitors are interested in both natural and cultural heritage, and many historic sites attract large numbers of visitors. Historical and cultural heritage conservation is an essential part of integrated conservation management.

The Department has identified 44 important historic places for active management in Waikato (refer Appendix 10). These include pā sites, Māori rock art, logging and gold mining themes. Thirty-nine of these places are located within Places in Part Two of this CMS. Work is ongoing to prevent the loss of, and to restore, the historical values of these places.

4 Treaty of Waitangi partnerships

The Conservation Act 1987 and all the Acts listed in its First Schedule must be so interpreted and administered as to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi (Conservation Act 1987: section 4). The Department also has specific responsibilities under Treaty settlement legislation.

The Department recognises the role of tangata whenua as kaitiaki and acknowledges their mana whenua, the special relationship they have with the land and its resources. Of all things, it is the whenua (land) that Māori hold most precious. The whenua is Papatūānuku (Mother Earth) – the nurturer of life and the provider of water, food, shelter and life’s essentials. Conservation and respect for the whenua were an integral facet of traditional Māori life and are still practised today. Māori are kaitiaki (guardians) of the whenua and have an inherent responsibility to ensure that the whenua and its resources are managed in a sustainable manner for the benefit of future generations.

Some of the most important wāhi tapu sites and places of ancestral significance in Waikato are on public conservation lands and waters. Physical and spiritual characteristics, including pā sites, urupā, tauranga waka (canoe landing sites), māra kai (cultivation sites), mātaitai (seafood gathering areas) and wāhi pakanga (battle sites), are clearly visible. The four main iwi that descend from the Tainui Waka—Waikato, Maniapoto, Raukawa and Hauraki—have an environmental whakapapa (genealogy) that is special and clearly identifies their relationship between the tangible and intangible.

Effective partnerships with tangata whenua help to achieve conservation of natural resources and historic and cultural heritage. Relationships with tangata whenua vary, and take a unique form with different iwi or hapū, or with respect to individual places, species or resources. The Crown’s Treaty of Waitangi settlement process is creating enhanced relationships with Māori. The special and traditional relationships of claimant groups with the natural environment are often explicitly recognised, and claimant groups are better able to participate in decision-making processes. Iwi may also choose to develop their own environmental plans to express how they exercise kaitiakitanga; and to guide how Crown agencies and others should work with them in regards to their environment. Iwi represented by an iwi authority, and/or iwi/hapū groups formally recognised as a result of Treaty settlement legislation, with rohe in Waikato are Waikato-Tainui, Ngāti Maniapoto, Ruapuha Uekaha Hapu Trust (Ngāti Maniapoto), Te Maru o Rereahu Trust (Ngāti Maniapoto), Raukawa, Ngāti Korokī Kahukura, Pouakani, Hauraki Whānui and Tūwharetoa Iwi.

4.1 Waikato-Tainui

The ancestral lands of Waikato-Tainui encompass all lands within the Tainui Waka rohe (region). This territory, along with that of Ngāti Maniapoto, forms the heart of the King Movement or Kiingitanga. Waikato-Tainui’s relationship with the Waikato River and west coast harbours (Raglan, Aotea and Kawhia) extends back over many generations, since the time of the first inland explorations of the ancestors who brought the Tainui canoe to Aotearoa in the 14th century. The Waikato Raupatu Claims Settlement Act 1995 formalised Waikato-Tainui’s relationship with much of their ancestral lands and associated resources, including forests. The Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010 formalised Waikato-Tainui’s relationship with the Waikato River, and set out co-governance and co-management arrangements for it, including the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River. Waikato-

Tainui has developed an Environmental Plan ‘Tai Tumu, Tai Pari, Tai Ao’¹⁸ under section 39 of this Act. The plan provides guidance on Waikato-Tainui objectives, policies and values for the environment within their tribal area. Under section 40 of the same Act, a person carrying out functions or exercising powers under conservation legislation in relation to the Waikato River and its catchment must have particular regard to the Waikato-Tainui Environmental Plan, to the extent to which its contents relate to their functions and powers (refer section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato). Further Treaty settlements relating to west coast harbours are expected to produce additional partnership opportunities.

4.2 Ngāti Maniapoto

Ngāti Maniapoto, an iwi of the Tainui Confederation, occupies the southern region of the territory of the Tainui tribes—Pirongia, Mōkau, Ongarue, Benneydale and Otorohanga. Ngāti Maniapoto are tangata whenua of the Maniapoto area. Te Maru o Rereahu, Te Ihingarangi, is also recognised as tangata whenua within the rohe of Maniapoto.

Ngāti Maniapoto are kaitiaki (guardians) of their rohe. The iwi is firm in its commitment to protect and restore the health of the environment, and seeks greater involvement in monitoring and managing natural and physical resources within its rohe. Karst, Pureora Forest, freshwater fisheries, flora and fauna and the Waipa and Mokau Rivers are features of particular importance to Ngāti Maniapoto within its rohe.

The Nga Wai o Maniapoto (Waipa River) Act 2012 passed into law on 5 April 2012, formalising the enduring relationship of Maniapoto with the Waipa River. It sets out co-governance and co-management arrangements for the Waipa River and its catchment, which extends to the headwaters of the river at Pekepeke Spring in the Rangitoto Ranges. The overarching purpose is to restore and maintain the quality and integrity of the waters that flow into, and form part of, the Waipa River for present and future generations, and the care and protection of the mana tuku iho o waiwai¹⁹. A primary component of this settlement is the Upper Waipa River Integrated Management Plan, the conservation component of which must be approved jointly by the Maniapoto Trust Board and the Minister of Conservation. The Minister of Conservation entered into a Conservation Accord with Ngāti Maniapoto in respect of the Waipa River in September 2012. Under section 16 of the Nga Wai o Maniapoto (Waipa River) Act 2012, a person carrying out functions or exercising powers under conservation legislation in relation to the Waipa River and its catchment must also have particular regard to the Maniapoto Iwi Environmental Management Plan,²⁰ to the extent to which its contents relate to their functions and powers. Outcomes for the Waipa River are also linked to the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River (refer section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato).

4.2.1 Ruapuha Uekaha Hapu Trust

The Ruapuha Uekaha Hapu Trust is affiliated to Ngāti Maniapoto and has interests in the Waitomo/Hauturu area. The Waitomo Glowworm Caves Claim WAI 51 was

¹⁸ Waikato-Tainui Te Kauhanganui Incorporated 2013: Waikato-Tainui Environmental Plan - Te Mahere a-Taiao a Waikato-Tainui. Waikato-Tainui te Kauhanganui Incorporated. Hamilton, New Zealand. www.waikatotainui.com.

¹⁹ Waiwaiā refers to the essence and well-being of the Waipa River. To Maniapoto, waiwaiā is the personification of the waters of the Waipa River and its enduring spiritual guardian.

²⁰ Kowhai Consulting 2007: He Mahere Taiao—The Maniapoto Iwi Environmental Management Plan. Kowhai Consulting Ltd for the Maniapoto Māori Trust Board. Te Kuiti, New Zealand.

implemented and signed on 14 June 1990. The document was an Agreement to Licence Waitomo Glowworm Caves, which was signed by the Minister of Conservation, Tourist Hotel Corporation (THC), and the hapū of Ruapuha and Uekaha ('the Claimants'), being the descendants of the original owners of Hauturu East Block Nos 1A5B, 1A6 and 3B1. The resulting arrangements saw the interests in the land recognised by the Trust holding a 75% interest and the Crown retaining its 25% interest through the Department. An Agreement in Principle provided for 3 acres of the cave area to be vested in the claimants, with 1 acre to remain vested in the Crown. The management of the caves is now shared between the claimants and the Department, who work in partnership to preserve ecological and Māori interests in the area.

4.2.2 Te Maru o Rereahu Trust

The Te Maru o Rereahu Trust is affiliated to Ngāti Maniapoto and represents the descendants of the original owners of Maraeroa A and B Blocks, near Pureora. The Maraeroa A and B Blocks Incorporation Act 2012 and the Maraeroa A and B Blocks Settlement Act 2012 both implement parts of the Deed of Settlement relating to the post-settlement governance arrangements for the management of the Maraeroa A and B Blocks. This includes a Partnership Agreement between the 'post settlement governance entity' (PSGE) structure and the Department for the management of public conservation land within the Maraeroa A and B Blocks, including statutory acknowledgement for 12 wāhi tapu and the overlay site Pureora o Kahu (Mt Pureora), to which specific protection principles apply. The Deed of Settlement also provides for a conservation corridor that will link two large areas of indigenous forest in the Pureora Forest Park and a plan for the restoration of the corridor area. Te Maru o Rereahu has particular interests surrounding Pureora. Pā Harakeke and the Maraeroa Cycleway at Pureora are two initiatives by this iwi that contribute to conservation values and expand on public recreation opportunities.

4.3 Raukawa

Within Waikato, the Raukawa takiwā (tribal area) includes Atiamuri, Mokai, Mangakino, Te Awamutu, Kihikihi, Maungatautari, Arapuni, Matamata, Cambridge, Putaruru, Tirau and Tokoroa. Over generations, Raukawa has developed tikanga (protocols) that embody a profound respect for their tribal area and all life within it. Raukawa have a sacred relationship with their awa (rivers), particularly the Waikato and Waihou Rivers. Raukawa tikanga recognise that an environment people care for will continue to sustain those people into the future. Raukawa forms part of the Central North Island Collective Forests Settlement and they received an on-account settlement of their forestry assets in June 2009. They have also been part of the Waikato River Treaty settlement processes and secured co-governance and co-management agreements in relation to their interests in the river and its catchment under the Ngati Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010 (refer section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato).

The Raukawa Claims Settlement Act 2014 passed on 19 March 2014. The Act acknowledges and apologises for historical grievances and provides for the settlement of these grievances. An overlay classification over Wharepūhunga and Pureora acknowledges the statement made by Raukawa of their values relating to their cultural, historical, spiritual, and traditional association with the overlay area. The Minister and Director-General of Conservation entered into a Conservation Portfolio Accord with Raukawa on 3 December 2010, which forms part of the Raukawa-Crown Overarching Accord also signed on that date. The Accord sets a framework for Raukawa and the Department to work together on conservation objectives across the rohe of Raukawa, including freshwater fisheries, sites of significance, cultural materials, species and habitat protection, and the Waikato River (refer section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa

o Waikato). Places of significance that are recognised include Titiraupenga, Pureora o Kahu, Wharepūhanga, parts of Pureora Forest Park, and the Waipa and Waikato Rivers and their catchments.

4.4 Ngāti Korokī Kahukura

Ngāti Korokī Kahukura is a Tainui tribe that has connections to both Waikato and Raukawa. The traditional rohe of Ngāti Korokī Kahukura extends north to Horotiu Pā (which was in the Te Rapa region of Hamilton) and then west to Puahue, east to Puketutu and south through Waipa, Huihuitaha, Waotu North, Waotu South, Matanuku, Maraetai and Wharepūhanga to Waipapa.

4.5 Pouakani

The Pouakani people are a community that has Ngāti Tūwharetoa, Ngāti Maniapoto, Raukawa and Te Arawa affiliations. A Deed of Settlement was signed on 19 November 1999 by the Crown and the Te Putahitanga O Nga Ara Trust (the Pouakani Claims Trust—the mandated representative of the Pouakani people). The Pouakani Claims Settlement Act 2000 gives effect to certain provisions of the Deed of Settlement. The Act afforded a statutory acknowledgement over the part of Titiraupenga that is located in Pureora Forest Park. A Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) between Pouakani and the Minister of Conservation outlines how the Department and the Pouakani people interact in regard to the management of specified areas of Crown land (part of Pureora Forest Park and Pouakani Scenic Reserve), and specified areas of Māori land (native bush on Titiraupenga). The purpose of the MOU reads:

To enable both Pouakani and the Department to exercise their respective responsibilities with the utmost co-operation. The Memorandum sets out a framework that will enable the Department and Pouakani to establish a healthy and constructive working relationship.

Refer to Appendix 13 for a summary of the Memorandum of Understanding.

4.6 Hauraki Whānui

Hauraki Whānui are often referred to as Ngā Tai Papakitoru, which recognises the three waves of settlement to Hauraki—the original tribes, the Marutūahu tribes and iwi that were gifted land in Hauraki.

The Coromandel Peninsula is commonly known as Te Tara o Te Whai, the figurative ama (outrigger), with its prow at Mt Te Aroha and its stern at Mt Moehau. As a coastal people, Hauraki depended on the Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana and Te Tai Tamahine for their physical and spiritual sustenance, and these remain a pervading presence in their lives. The catchments of Te Tara O Te Ika, where the great kauri forests stood, to the inland awa of Waihou and Piako and their tributaries, where once vast and plentiful wetlands and kahikatea (*Dacrycarpus dacrydioides*) forests stood, extend across the western part of the Hauraki rohe. The conservation of these taonga is significantly important to Hauraki Whānui.

It is expected that Treaty settlements with the Hauraki Collective²¹ and individual Hauraki iwi will create new partnership opportunities and recognition of places of significance to Hauraki Whānui on public conservation lands and waters.

²¹ Ngāi Tai ki Tāmaki, Ngāti Hako, Ngāti Hei, Ngāti Maru, Ngāti Pāoa, Ngāti Porou ki Hauraki, Ngāti Pūkenga, Ngāti Rahiri Tumutumu, Ngāti Tamaterā, Ngāti Tara Tokanui, Ngāti Whanaunga and Te Patukirikiri.

The description of Hauraki Whānui values and interests is incomplete in this CMS. The text was developed while the Treaty of Waitangi settlement process for Hauraki Whānui was under active negotiation. This means it has not been possible for iwi to engage with this process and for the implications of those values and interests, including in establishing the draft management objectives, to be considered. However, it was determined by the Department that it was in the wider public interest to complete this CMS rather than wait while these matters were resolved. Once negotiations have been completed, amended text relating to iwi values and interests, including any revised objectives, will be subject to public consultation.

4.7 Tūwharetoa Iwi

Ngāti Tūwharetoa holds mana whenua and kaitiakitanga over the central plateau rohe. The boundary of their rohe, called the Taupo-Nui-a-Tia Block, was supported by the Native Land Court in 1886. Ngāti Tūwharetoa is the legal owner of the bed of Taupo-Nui-a-Tia (Lake Taupo (Taupomoana)) and the beds of its tributaries. Much of the rohe overlaps with the Department's Central North Island region. The Tongariro/Taupo Conservation Management Strategy refers to He Kaupapa Rangatira, a relationship protocol to implement and monitor the achievement of the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi. Part of the rohe, including the eastern side of Pureora Forest Park that flows into the Lake Taupo (Taupomoana) catchment and parts of the upper Waikato River catchment, is in Waikato.

Under section 42 of the Ngāti Tūwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010, a person carrying out functions or exercising powers under conservation legislation in relation to the Waikato River and its catchment must have particular regard to the Ngāti Tūwharetoa Iwi Environmental Management Plan²², to the extent to which its contents relate to their functions and powers (refer Section 6: The Waikato River – Te Awa o Waikato).

Ngāti Tūwharetoa is kaitiaki for the physical and spiritual well-being of its environment.

4.8 Treaty of Waitangi objectives

4.8.1 OBJECTIVES

- 4.8.1.1 Maintain and strengthen relationships with tangata whenua to enhance conservation and recognise mana. These relationships should be based on mutual good faith, co-operation and respect.
- 4.8.1.2 Formalise relationships, where appropriate, through agreements with tangata whenua to enhance and support those relationships.
- 4.8.1.3 Actively consult and work with tangata whenua, ensuring consultation is early, ongoing, informed and effective.
- 4.8.1.4 Consider customary practices and the customary use of traditional materials and indigenous species by tangata whenua, consistent with kaitiakitanga, the relevant legislation, regulations, general policies and the purposes for which the land concerned is held.

²² Ngāti Tūwharetoa 2002: Ngāti Tūwharetoa Environmental Iwi Management Plan. Ngāti Tūwharetoa Maori Trust Board. Turangi, New Zealand.

Part One

- 4.8.1.5 Encourage tangata whenua involvement and participation in conservation management on public conservation lands and waters.
 - 4.8.1.6 Promote integrated conservation management for areas adjoining public conservation lands or waters that have been returned to tangata whenua through Treaty of Waitangi settlements.
 - 4.8.1.7 Work with tangata whenua, where the Department has a common interest, to protect on public conservation lands and waters, and advocate for off public conservation lands and waters, mahinga kai, wāhi tapu and other cultural resources in accordance with Treaty settlement outcomes.
 - 4.8.1.8 Work with tangata whenua to establish formal protocols to:
 - a) enable the customary use of traditional materials and indigenous species consistent with Objective 4.8.1.4; and
 - b) guide the management of marine mammal strandings.
 - 4.8.1.9 Implement relevant Treaty of Waitangi settlements consistent with the Department's statutory role.
 - 4.8.1.10 Consider relevant iwi environmental plans in conservation management and the operations of the Department.
-

5 Waikato by 2024

This section outlines national and regional conservation objectives for natural heritage, history, recreation, public engagement and conservation gains from business partnerships to be delivered by management of conservation resources within the Waikato over the next 10 years (refer Introduction).

These objectives are linked to the outcomes in the Department's outcome statement and long-term vision, as detailed in the Department's Statement of Intent 2013–2017.

Map 2 demonstrates the national ecosystem and destination priorities in Waikato, as part of the national jigsaw of priority ecosystem and recreation outcomes identified by the Department.

5.1 The diversity of our natural heritage is maintained and restored

Section 3 outlines the themes that make Waikato an important place for natural heritage, the pressures that make Waikato's natural heritage vulnerable to further decline and the opportunities that need to be pursued into the future. The objectives in this section provide guidance for the maintenance and restoration of nationally important natural heritage both on and off public conservation lands and waters in Waikato, including in the Places in Part Two of this CMS.

Places the Department considers nationally important for natural heritage management in Waikato are outlined in Appendices 2–4 and include:

- wetlands, lakes and rivers
- island sanctuaries off the Coromandel Peninsula
- coastal dunes and harbours
- mainland forest remnants ranging from coastal to montane forests
- karst ecosystems
- Whanganui A Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve
- West Coast North Island Marine Mammal Sanctuary.

Many of these places have been identified as priority ecosystem units through the Department's natural heritage management prioritisation process and their management and restoration is aimed at ensuring that a full range of New Zealand's ecosystems are maintained and restored.

Many of Waikato's most important ecosystems are formally protected and administered by the Department. There are also many nationally important places for natural heritage management off public lands and waters. The Department would like to progress further work with landowners, local authorities and the community, through, for example, multi-agency biodiversity programmes, to protect these to ensure that the highest priority natural areas do not incur further biodiversity loss and are maintained and restored for future generations.

The Department has a role in preventing the decline and ensuring the persistence, of Threatened and At Risk species both on and off public conservation lands and waters. Threatened and At Risk species present in Waikato are outlined in Appendix 6. In addition, eight of the top 10 nationally iconic species are found within Waikato (refer Appendix 7), some of which are Threatened or At Risk. Species-specific conservation management, including the work of other agencies and the community, will be important in many cases to reducing the risk of species extinctions and restoring locally treasured natural heritage in Waikato.

Kauri dieback disease (*Phytophthora* taxon *Agathis*, or PTA), a soil-borne fungus-like organism that kills kauri trees, is a significant risk to the health and functioning of kauri forest ecosystems and can be spread by human activity as well as by animals.

Locally treasured species include North Island kōkako, brown kiwi, North Island kākā, kererū/New Zealand pigeon (*Hemiphaga novaeseelandiae*), toutouwai/North Island robin (*Petroica longipes*), tūī (*Prothemadera novaeseelandiae*), tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel, whio/blue duck, matuku/Australasian bittern (*Botaurus poiciloptilus*), kārearea /New Zealand falcon (*Falco novaeseelandiae*), pāteke/brown teal (*Anas chlorotis*), shorebirds, seabirds, mudfish, tuna/eel, whitebait species, wētā, bats, Māui dolphin, lizards, tuatara (*Sphenodon punctatus punctatus*), Archey's frog and Hochstetter's frog (*Leiopelma hochstetteri*). The community particularly values undertaking conservation work in its own 'backyard'. The Department supports this with technical and operational advice across a range of sites in Waikato.

Priority areas for marine protection will be identified through collaborative planning processes with other agencies such as the Ministry for Primary Industries and Hauraki Gulf Forum. Section 3 and Appendix 8 identify some habitats that have high conservation value, including harbours such as Kawhia, Aotea and Raglan (Whaingaroa), Port Waikato, intertidal areas such as the Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana, and coastal areas featuring rocky reefs and soft sediments.

Internationally, nationally and regionally significant geological features, landforms and landscapes in Waikato have been identified and are listed in Appendix 9 and include karst formations, coastal and wetland environments and volcanic formations among others.

Important actions for maintaining Waikato's natural heritage include animal pest, wild animal and plant pest control and management; biosecurity surveillance; maintenance of pest-free sites; monitoring and advocacy; and collaboration with others. Pest plants and animals found in Waikato are outlined in Appendix 5. The Department intends to concentrate on ecosystems and species where efforts will best achieve national priorities for protection across marine, terrestrial and freshwater ecosystems and habitats. In addition, other programmes that help to inform ecosystem and species priorities in Waikato will be considered in the context of the Department's natural heritage prioritisation process.

5.1.1 OBJECTIVES

- 5.1.1.1 The diversity of New Zealand's natural heritage is maintained and restored with priority given to:
- a) conserving a full range of New Zealand's ecosystems to a healthy functioning state, with an emphasis on priority ecosystems in Appendix 4;
 - b) supporting the work of others to maintain and restore ecosystem types selected from Appendix 2;
 - c) conserving Threatened species²³ to ensure persistence²⁴, with an emphasis on those species listed in Appendix 6.

²³ 'Threatened species' in this context are all species categorised as Threatened (Nationally Critical, Nationally Endangered, Nationally Vulnerable) and At Risk (Declining, Relict, Naturally Uncommon, Recovering).

²⁴ Persistence is achieved when there is a 95% probability of a species surviving over the next 50 years or three generations (whichever is longer).

Part One

- 5.1.1.2 Contribute to efforts to maintain or restore the nationally iconic species listed in Appendix 7 that occur locally.²⁵
- 5.1.1.3 Build partnerships with others to maintain or restore locally treasured natural heritage.
- 5.1.1.4 Engage in collaborative processes to build a nationally representative network of marine reserves and other marine protected areas, taking into account the marine ecosystems listed in Appendix 8.
- 5.1.1.5 Focus on integrated conservation management to achieve objectives 5.1.1.1–5.1.1.4.
- 5.1.1.6 Contribute to the protection of the quality of ecosystem services, and support research into ecosystem services provided by public conservation lands and waters to better understand and quantify these services and convey this information to the public.
- 5.1.1.7 Advocate for the protection of priority natural heritage off public conservation lands and waters, such as priority ecosystem units, Threatened and At Risk species, and significant geological features, landforms and landscapes at risk of permanent degradation selected from Appendix 9.
- 5.1.1.8 Work with landowners and local authorities, and advocate for (a) the protection of freshwater fish habitat and fish passage, (b) the preservation of threatened and at risk indigenous species, and (c) the maintenance of habitat connectivity and water quality from the headwaters of waterways to the coast.
- 5.1.1.9 Maintain the natural form of prominent and distinctive geological features, landforms and landscapes, including undeveloped skylines and ridgelines, on public conservation lands and waters in Waikato.
- 5.1.1.10 Maintain the mammalian-pest-free status of islands where this exists, and explore and encourage the creation of more mammalian-pest-free islands.
- 5.1.1.11 Work with local authorities, tangata whenua, the community and other organisations to identify and protect karst, freshwater and marine ecosystems (listed in Appendix 8) and habitats and species that are under the most threat, or identified as nationally or regionally outstanding, rare, distinctive or of international importance.
- 5.1.1.12 Work with the Ministry for Primary Industries, local authorities, tangata whenua, fishers and others to manage threats to marine mammals to ensure their recovery and protection.
- 5.1.1.13 Contribute to the recovery and protection of Māui dolphin by working with the Ministry for Primary Industries, local authorities, tangata whenua, fishers and others to implement the Maui’s Dolphin Threat Management Plan.
- 5.1.1.14 Work in collaboration with tangata whenua, the community, neighbouring landowners, local authorities and other organisations to maintain and restore the ecological integrity of habitats, improve habitat connectivity, and protect migratory pathways, flyway sites and dispersal options for indigenous fauna.

²⁵ The priority for ferns are those threatened and at risk species listed in Appendix 6.

- 5.1.1.15 Control and manage pest plants, animal pests and wild animals (identified in Appendix 5) and seek opportunities to collaborate with tangata whenua, local authorities, other agencies, neighbouring landowners and the community in this regard, to:
- a) improve the quality and functioning of the ecosystems identified in Part Two Places of this CMS and the ecosystems and habitats outside those Places identified in Appendices 2-4; and
 - b) protect populations of threatened and at risk species within Waikato.
- 5.1.1.16 Foster recreational and commercial hunting and pest control on public conservation lands and waters where this is consistent with the planned outcomes for Places and does not diminish the effectiveness of the Department's operations to control animal pests and wild animals.
- 5.1.1.17 Contain all deer species within their gazetted feral range²⁶ in collaboration with tangata whenua, communities, neighbouring landowners, hunting groups and other organisations.
- 5.1.1.18 Prevent the establishment of kauri dieback disease in Waikato, focusing on the Coromandel Peninsula, the Hakarimata Range and Te Kauri Park Scenic Reserve, in collaboration with other agencies, iwi, local authorities and the community.
- 5.1.1.19 Work with concessionaires, businesses, other relevant organisations, recreational users and the community to build understanding of kauri dieback disease and other biosecurity threats and their role in preventing the establishment of these threats in Waikato.
- 5.1.1.20 Work with others to undertake strategic and integrated catchment management around harbours, estuaries, marine and intertidal areas; to seek further protection of harbours, estuaries, marine and intertidal areas; and to restore intertidal ecosystems and habitats important for the protection of coastal-marine indigenous and migratory species.
- 5.1.1.21 Advocate for and contribute to the integrated management of Port Waikato, and Raglan (Whaingaroa), Aotea and Kawhia Harbours and their catchments, consistent with objectives 5.1.1.9, 5.1.1.12, and 1.5.1.1.16 and ecosystem management priorities.
- 5.1.1.22 Protect the natural heritage values of the Hakarimata Range, in collaboration with Waikato-Tainui, local authorities, neighbouring landowners, the community, business and other interested parties. Focus efforts on the Hakarimata Range priority ecosystem unit, habitats of importance to threatened and at risk species (including freshwater fish), and the Waikato River catchment.
- 5.1.1.23 Work with the Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust, Waipa District Council, tangata whenua, neighbouring landowners and others in their efforts to protect and restore ecosystems, habitats and indigenous species on Maungatautari mountain.
- 5.1.1.24 Progress changing the classification of public conservation land to better reflect the primary values of that land, including changes identified in Part Two of this CMS.

²⁶ As defined in: Department of Conservation 2008: Deer Farming Notice No. 5, 2008: Pursuant to Section 12A of the Wild Animal Control Act 1977. New Zealand Gazette 125: 3239-3257.

- 5.1.1.25 Review the Hauraki Gulf Maritime Park Bylaws to enable better management of public conservation lands and waters in Waikato.

5.1.2 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 5.1.2.1 Scheduled outputs identified in approved work programmes for priority ecosystem units identified in the milestones in Part Two and at sites outside Places.
- 5.1.2.2 Scheduled outputs for nationally threatened and at risk species outside priority ecosystem units for which a work programme is underway, including hihi/stitchbird (*Notiomystis cincta*) and the forget-me-not (*Myosotis petiolata* var. *pansa*).
- 5.1.2.3 Collaborative restoration opportunities for ecosystems and threatened and at risk species have been identified, in conjunction with tangata whenua, the community and others.
- 5.1.2.4 Hunting access to public conservation lands and waters has been reviewed, and revised in line with the Department's guidelines for hunting access.
- 5.1.2.5 Report on any significant changes in the feral range and populations of animal and plant pests, and wild animals.
- 5.1.2.6 Effective kauri dieback disease prevention measures are in place for kauri forest sites in Waikato.
- 5.1.2.7 The Research Advisory Group for Māui dolphin has been established.
- 5.1.2.8 Report on actions taken on furthering marine protected areas within Waikato.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 5.1.2.9 Scheduled outputs identified in approved work programmes for priority ecosystem units identified in the milestones in Part Two and at sites outside Places.
- 5.1.2.10 Scheduled outputs for nationally threatened and at risk species outside priority ecosystem units for which a work programme is underway.
- 5.1.2.11 The Hauraki Gulf Maritime Park Bylaws and regulations over public conservation lands and waters have been reviewed.
- 5.1.2.12 The success of existing threat management programmes for possums (*Trichosurus vulpecula*), goats and plant threats at Places identified in Part Two of this CMS and other priority ecosystems has been reviewed.
- 5.1.2.13 Report on any significant changes in the feral range and populations of animal and plant pests, and wild animals.
- 5.1.2.14 The Māui dolphin population is stable or increasing.
- 5.1.2.15 Report on actions taken on furthering marine protected areas within Waikato.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 5.1.2.16 Scheduled outputs identified in approved work programmes for priority ecosystem units identified in the milestones in Part Two and at sites outside Places.

- 5.1.2.17 Scheduled outputs for nationally threatened and at risk species outside priority ecosystem units for which a work programme is underway.
 - 5.1.2.18 Report on the outcomes of collaborative restoration projects.
 - 5.1.2.19 Report on any significant changes in the feral range and populations of animal and plant pests, and wild animals.
 - 5.1.2.20 Report on actions taken on furthering marine protected areas within Waikato.
-

5.2 History is protected and brought to life

In Waikato, the Department has identified 44 significant historical and cultural places for active management (Appendix 10). These include pā sites, sites with Māori rock art, and sites with historically significant logging and gold mining themes. Thirty-nine of these sites are located within the Places identified in Part Two of this CMS, while the remainder are on other public conservation lands and waters. There is ongoing work to prevent the loss of the historic value of these sites and to restore them where appropriate. The Timber Trail at Pureora has been identified as a proposed Historic Icon site.

The Department will focus on fulfilling its core obligation to actively conserve the most significant sites identified on public conservation lands and waters. This includes ensuring that places of significance to tangata whenua are managed and protected in a way that respects cultural values, iwi, hapū and whānau. The Department seeks to acknowledge people's connection with their heritage through the enhanced management of these key sites. The aim is to protect these sites while providing for increased awareness and participation by the community to ensure a memorable visitor experience.

Active conservation requires a planned programme of work that takes into account threats, condition, technical feasibility, future use and resource levels. Visitor facilities that are appropriate to the recreational setting may be provided to complement the historic values of sites of high significance.

Places where the Department will focus effort to ensure that history is protected and brought to life in Waikato are listed in Appendix 10 and include:

- logging and gold mining sites, including kauri dams in the Kauaeranga Valley
- abandoned mines in central and southern Coromandel
- timber milling heritage sites, including hauler sites in Pureora
- pā sites, including those connected with the New Zealand Wars
- Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) lighthouse complex and World War II defences.

5.2.1 OBJECTIVES

- 5.2.1.1 Understand the location, value, significance and condition of historic places on public conservation lands, and ensure that records of the location, value, significance and condition of these places are up to date.
- 5.2.1.2 Profile the Historic Icon sites and selected actively conserved historic places listed in Appendix 10 through quality interpretation both on- and off-site, to enable visitors to identify with historic places and their stories.

- 5.2.1.3 Prioritise and protect the actively conserved historic places listed in Appendix 10 on the basis of their historic, cultural and physical significance, their value to tangata whenua and the wider community, and their conservation need.
- 5.2.1.4 Identify and understand the expectations of tangata whenua, the communities and others regarding the protection and management of historic places on public conservation land.
- 5.2.1.5 Build relationships with tangata whenua, communities and business to increase understanding, skill, and active management and support for historic places.
- 5.2.1.6 Undertake conservation work (repair and maintenance) at actively conserved historic places having regard to conservation plans, national and international best practice and ICOMOS NZ Charter.
- 5.2.1.7 Work cooperatively with tangata whenua to protect and interpret (where agreed) places of cultural significance, especially where Treaty settlements identify specific obligations for the Department.
- 5.2.1.8 Encourage collaborative efforts between tangata whenua, communities and others to protect, restore and interpret historic and cultural heritage sites.

5.2.2 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 5.2.2.1 Heritage assessment reports have been completed for the historic places listed in Appendix 10.
- 5.2.2.2 Information on actively conserved historic places is available on the Department's website.
- 5.2.2.3 Report on the number of actively conserved historic places listed in Appendix 10 that are stable and not deteriorating. Collaborative historic heritage restoration opportunities have been identified in conjunction with tangata whenua, Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga, the community and others.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 5.2.2.4 Report on the number of actively conserved historic places listed in Appendix 10 that are stable and not deteriorating

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 5.2.2.5 Report on the number of actively conserved historic places listed in Appendix 10 that are stable and not deteriorating.
- 5.2.2.6 Report on the outcomes of collaborative historic heritage restoration projects.

5.3 More people participate in recreation

Waikato residents are less likely than residents of other regions to visit their local public conservation lands and waters within Waikato²⁷. This represents a significant opportunity for Waikato to raise the profile of, and visitation to, public conservation

²⁷ Department of Conservation 2011: Department of Conservation National Survey of New Zealanders Report No. 5: Conservancy Comparison. Premium Research, Wellington.

lands and waters in Waikato, which could, in turn, build public support for and contribution towards conservation.

The public conservation lands and waters and their associated values within the Waikato provide a variety of outdoor recreational opportunities readily accessible to those from both the Waikato and neighbouring areas. In its function to foster the use of natural and historic resources for recreation and allow their use for tourism, the Department must ensure that any use is consistent with conservation values. This includes protecting indigenous natural and historic resources, cultural heritage and a full spectrum of visitor experiences, including natural quiet, solitude, self-reliance and remoteness, while providing a range of quality recreation opportunities and facilities.

The Department manages recreation opportunities as a suite of recreation destinations (Icon destinations, Gateway destinations, Local Treasure destinations and Backcountry Destinations). The Department intends to increase participation at the recreation destinations in Waikato outlined in Appendix 11. (Note: Backcountry destinations are not listed in Appendix 11.) These destinations and their recreation setting are managed within a wider recreation zoning framework (refer Visitor Management Zones shown on Map 3 in Volume II, and as described in Appendix 12).

Future initiatives will encourage more people to use public conservation lands and waters by focusing on improving and developing existing facilities while providing an expanded range of well-promoted experiences. The Timber Trail in Pureora Forest Park is one such initiative.

Examples of places where people participate in recreation are outlined below:

- The Icon destination of Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve, including Mahurangi Island (Goat Island).
- The Timber Trail Historic Icon site in Pureora Forest Park, which is also envisaged to become an Icon destination over the term of this CMS.
- The renowned tourist destination at Waitomo Caves, incorporating the Department-managed Ruakuri Gateway destination within Ruakuri Scenic Reserve and Opapaka Pa Historic Reserve.
- The following Gateway destinations: the northern Coromandel Peninsula campsites; Kauaeranga Valley campsites and short walks; Kauaeranga Kauri Trail; Broken Hills campsites and tracks; Wentworth Valley campsite and falls track; Kaniwhaniwha Amenity Area in Pirongia Forest Park; and Kakaho campsite in Pureora Forest Park.
- Local Treasures, which include walking tracks in Pirongia Forest Park; Wairēinga (Bridal Veil Falls) Track; Ngarunui (Bryant Memorial) Track at Raglan; Hakarimata Rail Trail; Waterworks Track; Waingaro link track; walking tracks on the Coromandel Peninsula; walking tracks highlighting the karst features in the Waitomo District; and walking tracks featuring biodiversity, logging and conservation protest themes in Pureora Forest Park.
- Backcountry sites, including overnight tramping opportunities in Coromandel, Pirongia and Pureora Forest Parks, and Whareorino Forest.
- Local Treasure and Backcountry sections of Te Araroa—The Long Pathway near Whangamarino Wetland, on the Hakarimata Range, and in Pirongia and Pureora Forest Parks.

To enable the continued provision of recreation facilities and opportunities, the Department will also draw on assistance from the community. Recreation

opportunities and sites where the community will be encouraged to initiate or lead the provision and/or maintenance of recreation facilities include:

- mountain biking and four-wheel driving opportunities on Coromandel Peninsula and in Pureora Forest
- mountain biking opportunities in Pirongia Forest Park and at Waitomo
- biodiversity enhancement of recreation amenity areas
- mountain biking in south Whareorino Forest and Tawarau Forest
- potential mountain biking link between the Timber Trail and the Great Lake Trail along Lake Taupo (Taupomoana), and
- potential mountain biking links between cycleways along the Waikato River with opportunities on public conservation lands, including the Hakarimata Rail Trail.

5.3.1 OBJECTIVES

- 5.3.1.1 Understand demand for outdoor recreation and provide recreation opportunities where demand is evident and expected to be sustained and the recreational opportunities are consistent with the protection of indigenous natural resources and historic and cultural heritage.
- 5.3.1.2 Contribute to a national network of visitor opportunities by promoting the Icon and Gateway destinations identified in Appendix 11 as the key attractions within the network of opportunities offered in Waikato.
- 5.3.1.3 Contribute to a national network of visitor opportunities by promoting Local Treasure (Appendix 11) and Backcountry destinations, as valued by local communities and as more challenging attractions respectively, within the network of opportunities offered in Waikato.
- 5.3.1.4 Build partnerships with others to plan for, maintain and/or better develop recreation destinations in a way that is consistent with the visitor management zones set out in Appendix 12 and Map 3.
- 5.3.1.5 Work with the New Zealand Walking Access Commission to identify priorities for improved access to public conservation land and waters for recreation.
- 5.3.1.6 Work in partnership with the Te Araroa Trust in the maintenance and improvement of Te Araroa—The Long Pathway to tramping track standard and afford a consistent level of priority to Te Araroa—The Long Pathway within the Department’s visitor destination management framework.
- 5.3.1.7 Provide visitors with the opportunity for a positive social, physical and learning experience on public conservation lands.
- 5.3.1.8 Focus effort at sites that are accessible to major population centres, receive significant visitor numbers, or have the potential to leverage greater participation in recreation, conservation and regional tourism.
- 5.3.1.9 Provide facilities and services that respond to both the demand for emerging recreation activities and traditional forms of participation (e.g. tramping).
- 5.3.1.10 Enhance people’s understanding and appreciation of natural, historic and cultural heritage, particularly at Icon and Gateway destinations.

- 5.3.1.11 Work with local authorities, regional tourism organisations, businesses, the community and other agencies to improve and better coordinate the provision of information, education and marketing to promote, recreation opportunities on and linking to public conservation lands and waters.
- 5.3.1.12 Understand and encourage opportunities for visitors to undertake voluntary conservation work as a form of recreation.
- 5.3.1.13 Avoid, minimise and manage conflicts between different users, including people undertaking different types of activities in the same location, in particular by:
 - a) providing guidance on appropriate shared-use etiquette;
 - b) using one-way direction of travel or specified single-use tracks; and
 - c) placing seasonal restrictions on some activities.
- 5.3.1.14 Integrate the improvement or expansion of existing campsites and overnight accommodation with the promotion and development of visitor destinations.
- 5.3.1.15 Work with Waikato-Tainui, local authorities, the Te Araroa Trust, neighbouring landowners, business and other interested parties to plan, maintain and improve recreation opportunities on and linking to the Hakarimata Range.

5.3.2 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 5.3.2.1 Accreditation²⁸ of Icon and Gateway destinations for excellence in the management of public space.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 5.3.2.2 An assessment of the success of Icon and Gateway destinations in increasing the number of people participating in recreation on public conservation land.
- 5.3.2.3 Accreditation achieved by 2017 has been maintained.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 5.3.2.4 Waikato recreation facility maintenance and development programmes have been reviewed and revised.
- 5.3.2.5 An assessment of the success of Icon, Gateway, Local Treasure and Backcountry destinations towards increasing the number of people participating in recreation on public land.
- 5.3.2.6 Accreditation achieved by 2017 has been maintained.

5.4 More people engage with conservation and value its benefits

Waikato already receives a large public contribution towards improving conservation and recreation outcomes, both on and off public conservation lands and waters. This includes pest control, tree planting, and walkway and cycleway development. The

²⁸ For instance, Green Flag or a similar international accreditation.

Waikato Biodiversity Forum, which is partly funded by the Department, provides advice and support to 160 community groups involved in biodiversity protection and enhancement. This active public involvement has resulted in significant conservation gains that would otherwise have been impossible for the Department to achieve.

A survey by the Waikato Biodiversity Forum revealed that the biggest challenge facing community groups is having enough volunteers to do the work, especially younger people²⁹. Community groups working on conservation land tend to be in the 50+ age bracket, many of whom are retired and so have the time and inclination to undertake conservation projects, particularly in their local area. Facilitating more people to participate in conservation activity, especially in terms of choosing to support work in places where they do not live, will be a key challenge for the Department. There is little in the way of conservation land within urban environments and yet a high proportion of Waikato's population lives in urban communities—from Hamilton City to small towns across Waikato.

For conservation to really flourish within Waikato, there must be a supportive environment where conservation is viewed as a legitimate and necessary activity that benefits everyone. Finding new and innovative ways to engage the community in conservation will be an ongoing task.

Waikato recognises that there is a need to increase awareness of the value of conservation, particularly in those who have been identified as under-represented users of the conservation estate—namely youths (under 30s), Māori and families with children³⁰. The Department must develop relationships and partnerships that help conservation, recreation and understanding of our history to new audiences, e.g. working with 'conservation champions' and recreation agencies that already have standing in the community. This will be achieved through the development of engagement programmes. Alongside this, the Department intends to continue to support active, community-led projects, such as community species protection programmes at Pureora, Pirongia and Coromandel Forest Parks, and lead and/or support volunteer programmes, such as the Coromandel Peninsula volunteer programme. Strategies to achieve this include identifying opportunities for partnerships and community-led projects; ensuring that conservation activities cater for a wide range of interests and aspirations; and trusting and supporting others to deliver quality conservation outcomes.

The Department works with a wide range of other agencies to achieve common objectives and mutually agreed priorities. Examples include: New Zealand Transport Agency on roading; New Zealand Walking Access Commission on access; TBfree New Zealand (formerly the Animal Health Board) on possum control; local authorities on biodiversity and pest management; Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga; Auckland/Waikato and Eastern Fish and Game Councils on sports fish and game bird-related issues; Police and Land Search and Rescue; the Game Animal Council on improving hunting opportunities; New Zealand Motor Caravan Association; and the Te Araroa Trust.

²⁹ Cursey, M. 2011: Valuing community action on the ground: July 2009 to June 2010. Waikato Biodiversity Forum, Hamilton, New Zealand.

³⁰ Department of Conservation 2008: Increasing the value of conservation to New Zealanders: a social marketing and awareness strategy for the Waikato 2008–2013.

5.4.1

OBJECTIVES

- 5.4.1.1 Increase understanding of, technical skills in, and active management and support for, conservation in the Waikato.
- 5.4.1.2 Seek opportunities that connect more people to the value of conservation.
- 5.4.1.3 Work with a range of partners (such as tangata whenua, statutory agencies and local authorities, businesses, schools and the wider community) in enduring relationships to achieve ongoing conservation results.
- 5.4.1.4 Focus building relationships and partnerships in those areas where cooperative relationships are most needed to support priority conservation outcomes, particularly those that:
 - a) are aligned with national priorities and people’s outdoor leisure preferences;
 - b) add value and extend management to realise natural, cultural, historical and/or recreational benefits at the Places identified in Part Two of this CMS;
 - c) enhance and create ecological corridors and buffers for the protection of ecosystems, habitats and species;
 - d) develop support for and appreciation of marine protected areas;
 - e) support work to reach key audiences who are not currently engaged in conservation; and
 - f) recognise and protect sites and stories of special historical and cultural interest, including those at the Places identified in Part Two of this CMS.
- 5.4.1.5 Work with tangata whenua, communities, territorial authorities and other organisations to promote priority conservation messages, and to make linkages between the Department’s work and the importance of healthy ecosystems for people’s prosperity and well-being.
- 5.4.1.6 Identify and support partnerships that target key sectors of the community that are not well represented in conservation activities, focusing on young people, Māori and families with children.
- 5.4.1.7 Encourage public participation in the formulation and review of statutory planning documents for public conservation lands and waters in Waikato.
- 5.4.1.8 Keep the public informed about events, activities and opportunities where they can assist with conservation management.
- 5.4.1.9 Liaise with adjoining landowners and others whose interests may be directly affected by specific management issues where those interests are greater than those of the general public.
- 5.4.1.10 Encourage and provide technical skills and guidance to tangata whenua, the community, interested organisations and landowners to undertake biodiversity protection and restoration, in particular with respect to priorities for:
 - a) ecosystem restoration;
 - b) threatened and at risk species protection, survey and reintroduction; and
 - c) conservation and participation.

- 5.4.1.11 Achieve recognition of the contribution that places within Waikato make to the well-being and economic prosperity of the Waikato region and beyond.
- 5.4.1.12 Raise public awareness that intact functioning ecosystems underpin New Zealand's economy both directly and indirectly.

5.4.2 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 5.4.2.1 Report on outcomes from programmes aimed at increasing engagement in conservation in Waikato, including for young people and Māori.
- 5.4.2.2 Report on outcomes from programmes aimed at increasing the amount of conservation achieved with partners in Waikato.
- 5.4.2.3 Report on tangata whenua and stakeholder satisfaction with engagement with the Department in Waikato.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 5.4.2.4 Report on outcomes from programmes aimed at increasing engagement in conservation in Waikato, including for young people and Māori.
- 5.4.2.5 Report on outcomes from programmes aimed at increasing the amount of conservation achieved with partners in Waikato.
- 5.4.2.6 Report on tangata whenua and stakeholder satisfaction with engagement with the Department in Waikato.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 5.4.2.7 Programmes aimed at increasing engagement in conservation have been reviewed and revised.
 - 5.4.2.8 Programmes aimed at increasing the amount of conservation achieved with partners in Waikato have been reviewed and revised.
 - 5.4.2.9 Report on tangata whenua and stakeholder satisfaction with engagement with the Department in Waikato.
-

5.5 Conservation gains from business partnerships

The Department will seek to identify and promote new business opportunities and partnerships that complement conservation values and deliver conservation gains while enhancing prosperity. Waikato has identified four key business sectors with which it will work to achieve greater conservation gains over the term of this CMS: farming, energy, forestry and tourism.

Waikato is a major centre for agriculture and technological innovation in New Zealand, and has a critical role to play in contributing to the national economy and improving economic performance.

Businesses are increasingly seeking to demonstrate how they can contribute to sustaining a healthy environment. The potential to engage in conservation partnerships increasingly makes sense for businesses, as it can significantly improve their worth, value and reputation while helping to conserve natural, historic and cultural heritage values.

Places for which the outcomes in Part Two—Places identify potential business opportunities include:

- Providing guided cycling, accommodation and transport for the Timber Trail in Pureora Forest Park.
- Working with the community to realise the conservation benefits from visits to karst country at Waitomo.
- Providing transport by boat to Mahurangi Island (Goat Island).
- Considering the feasibility of nature tourism visits to Cuvier Island (Repanga Island).
- Providing tourism facilities (with limits) at, or in the vicinity of, the car park to the Cathedral Cove walk.
- Providing multi-day ‘great walk’ style tramping/walking opportunities, including hut accommodation, in the Thames Coast to Broken Hills and Wharekirauponga areas on the Coromandel Peninsula.

5.5.1 OBJECTIVES

- 5.5.1.1 Work with concessionaires to enhance the conservation experience of their customers and build support for conservation.
- 5.5.1.2 Work with regional tourism organisations, other promotional groups and businesses (particularly in the Coromandel, Waitomo and Pureora) to create and develop opportunities to promote conservation outcomes, products and services.
- 5.5.1.3 Seek opportunities to work with and build partnerships with businesses that are looking for ways to demonstrate their commitment to and engagement with conservation.
- 5.5.1.4 Work with relevant agencies to avoid duplication of regulatory controls on public conservation lands and waters.
- 5.5.1.5 Continue to work with relevant agencies to streamline and seek efficiencies in statutory processes.
- 5.5.1.6 Build productive business partnerships that deliver measurable conservation gains.
- 5.5.1.7 Increase engagement of the commercial sector in conservation.

5.5.2 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 5.5.2.1 Report on the conservation outcomes achieved due to conservation partnerships with businesses in Waikato.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 5.5.2.2 Report on the conservation outcomes achieved due to conservation partnerships with businesses in Waikato.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 5.5.2.3 Report on the conservation outcomes achieved due to conservation partnerships with businesses in Waikato.
-

6 The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato

The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato is the longest river in New Zealand at 452 km. It is of great significance to iwi and has high conservation value. The 14 456 km² Waikato River catchment extends from the upper tributaries of Lake Taupo (Taupomoana) and includes the Waipa River and its catchment. The main river flows from Lake Taupo (Taupomoana) through the Taupo, Rotorua, South Waikato and Waipa Districts, Hamilton City, and Waikato District to the Tasman Sea at Port Waikato.

The Waikato River is the ancestral river (tūpuna awa) to some iwi, representing the mana and the mauri of the people. It is central to tribal identity and to spiritual and physical well-being. For iwi, it is a living entity, encompassing its bed, banks and waters, streams, lakes, catchments and flood plains, flora and fauna, and metaphysical being. Iwi have a duty to past, present and future generations to protect the river.

The Waikato River has sustained tangata whenua for many generations as a place to live, a source for food and other resources, and a transport corridor. It represents a way of life, with much historical, spiritual and cultural significance for iwi and their mana.

The Waikato River has also shaped many wetland and river systems along its path, both past and present. The highly valued waterways and wetlands of the Hauraki Plains and lower Waikato basin are two examples. The Waikato River provides a range of habitats for native fauna and flora, supporting significant native fisheries and nationally threatened and at risk species. The river is also valued for the many recreational activities that occur along its length, such as boating, fishing and hunting.

The development and use of the Waikato River over time has led to degradation of its ecosystem and associated wetland systems. This has had significant adverse effects on native habitats, indigenous plants and animals, and cultural and spiritual values and the associated mana of iwi, including their ability to exercise kaitiakitanga in accordance with their tikanga and kawa. Effective and productive partnerships with iwi are the key to restoring and managing the river's ecosystems, habitats and species, which the Department has a role in managing and advocating for.

Iwi within Waikato that have a direct interest and special relationship with the Waikato River are Waikato-Tainui, Raukawa, Te Arawa River Iwi and Ngāti Tūwharetoa (collectively known as the Waikato River Iwi). Ngāti Maniapoto and Raukawa have a direct interest and special relationship with the Waipa River, which is a major tributary of the Waikato River.

The Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010 gave effect to the 2009 Deed of Settlement for the Raupatu claims of Waikato-Tainui concerning the Waikato River. The Deed of Settlement established co-governance and co-management arrangements over the river, with an overarching purpose to restore and protect its health and well-being for future generations.

The Ngāti Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010 gave effect to deeds of settlement entered into between the Crown and those iwi. This Act sets out the establishment and participation of each iwi in co-management of the Waikato River, and has the same overarching purpose as the above Act.

The Nga Wai o Maniapoto (Waipa River) Act 2012 (refer section 4.2) provides for co-governance and co-management between the Crown and Ngāti Maniapoto over the Upper Waipa River. This settlement is also linked to outcomes for the Waikato River under the above Treaty settlement legislation.

A primary component of the above Treaty settlement legislation is Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato—the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River (Appendix 14):

*Tōku awa koiora me ōna pikonga he kura tangihia o te mātāmuri.
The river of life, each curve more beautiful than the last.*

Our vision is for a future where a healthy Waikato River sustains abundant life and prosperous communities who, in turn, are all responsible for restoring and protecting the health and well-being of the Waikato River, and all it embraces, for generations to come.

The Vision and Strategy sets the management direction for the Waikato River and the Waipa River (refer Map 6). It is a statement of general policy and has the same status as a general policy in terms of the Conservation General Policy 2005, which this CMS implements and cannot be inconsistent with Appendix 14, which outlines the Vision and Strategy, demonstrates how this CMS implements the Department's responsibilities to achieve the Vision and Strategy.

The Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010 also established the Waikato River Authority, which is a statutory body under both that Act and the Ngāti Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010. The purpose of the Authority as set out in both Acts is to:

- set the primary direction through the Vision and Strategy to achieve the restoration and protection of the health and well-being of the Waikato River for current and future generations
- promote an integrated, holistic and coordinated approach to the implementation of the Vision and Strategy and the management of the Waikato River
- fund rehabilitation initiatives for the Waikato River in its role as trustee for the Waikato River Clean-up Trust.

Other components of the above legislation are the integrated river management plan for the Waikato River and the Upper Waikato River Integrated Management Plan, which apply to the rohe of Waikato-Tainui and the Waikato River Iwi respectively. These plans set the framework for co-management of the Waikato River and their purpose as stated in legislation which reads:

To achieve an integrated approach between Waikato-Tainui/the Trusts that prepare the plan, relevant departments, relevant local authorities, and appropriate agencies to the management of aquatic life, habitats, and natural resources within the Waikato River consistent with the overarching purpose of the settlement.

In addition, the Upper Waipa River integrated management plan under the Nga Wai o Maniapoto (Waipa River) Act 2012 (refer section 4.2) is also linked to outcomes for the Waikato River. As noted in the introduction to this CMS, the conservation components of these plans have statuses as both conservation management plans and freshwater fisheries management plans under the Conservation Act 1987, and must be jointly approved by the relevant iwi Trusts and the Minister of Conservation.

Other mechanisms related to the Waikato River and Waipa River settlement legislation are outlined below.

In carrying out their functions or exercising powers under the conservation legislation in relation to the Waikato River and its catchment, Departmental staff must have particular regard to iwi environmental plans³¹ to the extent to which their contents relate to the Department's functions or powers, or the Minister's functions or powers when exercised under delegation.

³¹ At the time of CMS approval, Waikato-Tainui, Ngāti Tūwharetoa and, Ngāti Maniapoto had an operative environmental management plan (refer section 4), and Raukawa and Ngāti Tahu-Ngāti Whaoa (Te Arawa River Iwi) were in the process of preparing environmental plans.

Another relevant programme is the Healthy Rivers: Plan for Change/Wai Ora: He Rautaki Whakapaipai project, between Waikato River iwi and Waikato Regional Council³².

The Minister and Director-General of Conservation entered into a Conservation Accord with Waikato-Tainui on 20 October 2008. The Accord gives effect to the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River in respect of lands, species and resources the Department manages on behalf of the Crown and the New Zealand public (refer Area A on Map 6). The Accord is based on the following principles, the first three being overriding principles:

- Te Mana o Te Awa—The spiritual authority, protective power and prestige of the Waikato River
- Mana Whakahaere—Authority and rights of control
- Co-management
- Health and well-being
- Integration
- Treaty of Waitangi
- Honour and integrity
- Conservation

The Director-General of Conservation and Waikato-Tainui jointly signed the Conservation Accord Implementation Strategy (CAIS) on 17 June 2011. The CAIS was developed cooperatively, and sets out 17 objectives and 14 mechanisms for implementing the three overriding principles of Te Mana o Te Awa, Mana Whakahaere and Co-management.

The Minister and Director-General of Conservation entered into Conservation Portfolio Accords both with Raukawa and Te Arawa River Iwi on 3 December 2010. As with the Waikato-Tainui Conservation Accord, these Accords³³ also give effect to the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River in respect of lands, species and resources the Department manages on behalf of the Crown and the New Zealand public (refer Area B on Map 6). Raukawa also has interest in the Waipa River (refer Area C on Map 6).

As recorded in section 4.2, the Minister and Director-General of Conservation have entered into a Conservation Portfolio Accord with Ngāti Maniapoto in respect of the Waipa River and its catchments (refer Area C on Map 6).

At the time of writing this CMS, Ngāti Tūwharetoa had not sought to develop mechanisms with respect to the Department's responsibilities and Ngāti Tūwharetoa's interests in the Waikato River within Waikato.

The Waikato River Clean-up Trust, administered by the Waikato River Authority, works towards the restoration and protection of the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River for present and future generations.

³² The Healthy Rivers: Plan for Change/Wai Ora: He Rautaki Whakapaipai project aims to help restore the Waikato and Waipa Rivers. Waikato River iwi and Waikato Regional Council are partners in the project as set out in the Waikato River and Waipa River settlement legislation (refer www.waikatoregion.govt.nz/healthyivers).

³³ The Raukawa Conservation Portfolio Accord also addresses conservation objectives beyond of the Waikato River (refer section 4: Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities).

Note: The contents of the Vision and Strategy, the Conservation (Portfolio) Accords and the CAIS were not open to submission or change through the review process for this CMS.

6.1 Waikato River Objectives

6.1.1 OBJECTIVES

- 6.1.1.1 Implement the directions and outcomes in the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River where it applies to the Department under conservation legislation.
 - 6.1.1.2 Work with Waikato River Iwi and Ngāti Maniapoto to achieve the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River.
 - 6.1.1.3 Recognise and work with Waikato River Iwi and Ngāti Maniapoto (where this applies) who have an interest in and a special relationship with the natural and historic resources, freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats of the Waikato River managed by the Department under conservation legislation.
 - 6.1.1.4 Uphold and promote the principles of the Waikato-Tainui, Raukawa, Te Arawa River Iwi and Ngāti Maniapoto Conservation (Portfolio) Accords in partnership with those iwi.
 - 6.1.1.5 Work with Ngāti Tūwharetoa iwi and their hapū to achieve future settlement outcomes pertaining to natural and historic resources of the Waikato River managed by the Department under conservation legislation where it applies to Waikato.
 - 6.1.1.6 Work with Waikato-Tainui to achieve the restoration and protection of the health and well-being of the Waikato River for future generations through the objectives and mechanisms in the CAIS.
 - 6.1.1.7 Ensure that all Department of Conservation staff in Waikato who undertake work within the Accord Areas (Areas A, B and C) understand the Department's responsibilities in respect of the implementation of the Waikato-Tainui, Raukawa, Te Arawa River Iwi and Ngāti Maniapoto Conservation (Portfolio) Accords.
 - 6.1.1.8 Work cooperatively with all parties in regard to requests for the Department's participation on the Waikato River Authority.
 - 6.1.1.9 Support Iwi and work with local authorities and communities particularly in the development and implementation of the river management plans, to achieve integrated management of the Waikato River.
 - 6.1.1.10 Have particular regard to iwi environmental plans in relation to the Waikato River and its catchment where required by Treaty legislation when carrying out functions or exercising powers under conservation legislation.
-

7 Hauraki Gulf Marine Park

The Hauraki Gulf Marine Park was established by special legislation (the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act) in February 2000 (refer Map 5). It covers an area of 1.2 million ha, and includes islands, and coastal and marine environments in Waikato and Auckland. The Marine Park is an innovative concept in New Zealand, protecting important areas within a lived-in, worked-in environment. Its purpose is to:

- recognise and protect in perpetuity the nationally and internationally significant natural and historic features and resources within the Marine Park
- protect in perpetuity and for the benefit, use and enjoyment of people, the natural and historic resources of the Marine Park
- recognise and have particular regard to the relationship of tangata whenua with the Gulf, its islands and coastal areas, and the natural and historic resources of the Marine Park
- protect and enhance the life-supporting capacity (soil, air, water and ecosystems) of the Gulf within the Marine Park.

The Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act provides for integrated management of the Gulf across 21 statutes, including the Conservation Act 1987, the Resource Management Act 1991 and the Fisheries Act 1996. The Hauraki Gulf Marine Park includes the following land within the Gulf, islands and coastal area:

- all conservation areas, wildlife refuges, wildlife sanctuaries, reserves, marine mammal sanctuaries and marine reserves held, managed or administered by the Department
- any reserve controlled or managed by an administering body under the Reserves Act 1977
- all of the common marine and coastal area within the Gulf other than foreshore and seabed held for defence purposes
- all seawater
- the Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana Wetland of International Importance under the Ramsar Convention (refer section 11).

Local authorities can add their reserves, regional parks, or any other open space or building managed to protect its natural or historic values to the Marine Park, while retaining ownership and control. Protected private or Māori land can also be included at the owner's request. Mātaitai or taiāpure local fisheries may also be included.

The Gulf has a natural richness, environmental quality, biological diversity and landscape that make it outstanding and distinctive in New Zealand. The islands of the Gulf are valued as the habitats of plants and animals, once common but now rare, and are often the only places in the world where these species occur naturally. The Marine Park also provides excellent recreation opportunities for residents and visitors.

There are seven marine reserves (one of which is found in Waikato) and more than 50 islands in the Marine Park, and huge numbers of seabirds and 22 species of marine mammals have been observed within it. Examples of islands in the Marine Park within Waikato are Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), the Mercury Islands, Motutapere Island and the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) (refer section 8). Thanks to pest control and eradication programmes, an increasing number of islands in the Marine Park are mammalian-pest-free sanctuaries, providing safe homes for many of New Zealand's rarest native species. They also provide an opportunity for visitors to connect with nature, and appreciate threatened and at risk species as well as the value of preserving and restoring island ecosystems.

There is growing recognition of the need to protect and enhance the unique values of the Marine Park, and to ensure that people have the opportunity to benefit from it and enjoy it now and in the future. Throughout the Marine Park, the Department, iwi, community trusts, agencies and organisations are working together to enhance its conservation values and to provide visitor opportunities.

The Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act also established the Hauraki Gulf Forum. The key functions of the Forum are to integrate and promote the sustainable management of the Gulf, its islands and catchments, and to recognise the relationship that tangata whenua have with those areas. Forum members comprise representatives of all local authorities adjoining the Gulf or its catchments, representatives of the Ministers of Conservation, Primary Industries and Māori Affairs, and six tangata whenua representatives.

The Forum's vision for the Gulf is of a place that is 'celebrated and treasured', which is 'thriving with fish and shellfish, kaimoana', which has 'a rich diversity of life' and which supports a 'sense of place, connection and identity' and a 'vibrant economy'.

The Forum prepares 3-yearly reports on the state of the Environment of the Hauraki Gulf. This report measures progress towards achieving the Forum's vision, including information on progress towards integrated management and responses to strategic and prioritised issues.

The most recent report in 2011³⁴ demonstrated that the Gulf has undergone incredible transformations over two human lifespans and concluded that most environmental indicators either show negative trends or remain at levels that are indicative of poor environmental condition. It also concluded that the work of the myriad of agencies involved in managing the Gulf needs to be integrated if many of the issues facing the Gulf are to be addressed and the environmental decline halted.

Accordingly the Forum is developing a marine spatial plan for the Hauraki Gulf. The overarching goal of the plan will be to restore and enhance the environmental health of the Gulf and enable appropriate use and development. The plan will provide non-statutory recommendations to be considered by statutory agencies for incorporation into their planning documents, including this CMS.

7.1 Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Objectives

7.1.1 OBJECTIVES

- 7.1.1.1 Implement sections 7 and 8 of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000 (which have the same effect as a statement of general policy by virtue of section 11 of the same Act), insofar as implementing the sections does not derogate from the provisions of the Conservation Act 1987.
- 7.1.1.2 Support the Hauraki Gulf Forum and particularly the development and implementation of a marine spatial plan, to promote and improve integrated conservation management within the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park.
- 7.1.1.3 Work with tangata whenua, councils, other organisations and the community to:
 - a) raise the profile of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park and increase awareness of its special values;

³⁴ Hauraki Gulf Forum 2011: State of our Gulf: Tikapa Moana—Hauraki Gulf State of the Environment Report 2011. Auckland Council, Auckland, New Zealand.

Part One

- b) identify potential opportunities to include new areas of land within the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park;
 - c) advocate for giving effect to the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park through policies and plans; and
 - d) build partner support for the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park based on shared values.
- 7.1.1.4 Work with councils and other organisations to ensure that the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000 is taken into account in statutory planning and decision-making processes.
- 7.1.1.5 Manage public conservation lands and waters within the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park to enhance conservation values and visitor opportunities in accordance with outcomes and policies in Part Two—Places and Policies in Part Three.
- 7.1.1.6 Provide information and interpretation, particularly at the Places in Part Two of this CMS, to enhance understanding and appreciation of the special values of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park.
-

Part Two—Places

This section addresses Places in Waikato (refer Map 8) that have been identified for the purposes of integrated conservation management (Conservation General Policy 2005) and which require some specific management direction. Each Place has a description, an outcome statement (outcome), policies and milestones:

- Outcome statements describe the future state of a ‘Place’, including its values and changes at that Place over the 10-year term of the CMS, and will be used when making decisions. This applies whether or not there is a specific policy for a Place.
- Policies describe the course of action or guiding principles to be used for conservation management and decision-making.
- Milestones are specific actions that are measurable steps towards achieving the objective or outcome statement.

Part Two must be read in conjunction with Parts One and/or the policies in Part Three. Where the outcomes and policies in Part Two are more specific than the objectives in Part One or the policies in Part Three, the provisions of Part Two prevail.

Sites not covered by a Part Two Place are of no lesser value or importance but require less-detailed management direction. Conservation management will be still undertaken at those sites in line with the vision, objectives, policies, milestones and related provisions in Parts One, Three and Four of this CMS.

The Places in Waikato are:

- 8 Hauraki Islands Place
- 9 Hauraki–Coromandel Peninsula Place
- 10 Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place
- 11 Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana Wetland Place
- 12 Freshwater Wetlands Place
- 13 Karioi to Whareorino Place
- 14 Waitomo Place
- 15 Pureora Place

8 Hauraki Islands Place

The Hauraki Islands Place comprises all offshore and near-shore islands (except Mahurangi Island (Goat Island), which is included in the Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place) that are administered by the Department within Waikato (refer Maps 8.1 and 8.1.1). The policy direction for this Place focuses on islands managed by the Department and the integrated management of conservation values on islands off the Coromandel Peninsula coastline, particularly the Whangamata Islands and Motukoruenga and Motukoranga Islands. The islands included in this Place, their legal status and the Department's island classification³⁵ are listed in Table 1. Additional information about these islands is provided in Appendix 3, including their administrative status, 10-year management classification goal and the presence/absence of introduced mammals. These islands are also part of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park (refer section 7).

Table 1: Islands within the Hauraki Islands Place and their 2011 island classification.

ISLAND	LEGAL STATUS	ISLAND CLASSIFICATION
Cuvier Island (Repanga Island)	Nature Reserve	Ecosystem Restoration
Motutapere Island	Scenic Reserve	Open Sanctuary
Rabbit Island	Stewardship Area (Government Purpose Reserve)	Open Sanctuary
Whanganui Island (in part—Marginal Strip only)	Conservation Area (Marginal Strip)	Not classified
Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua): Hongiora Island Nga Horo, Ruamahuaiti, Ruamahuanui and Middle Islands	Nature Reserve / Wildlife Sanctuary Nature Reserve / Wildlife Sanctuary	Minimum impact Ecosystem restoration
Mercury Islands: Green and Atiu or Middle Islands Red Mercury (Whakau) and Korapuki Islands Double (Moturehu) and Kawhitu or Stanley Islands	Scenic Reserve / Wildlife Sanctuary Scenic Reserve / Wildlife Sanctuary Nature Reserve	Minimum Impact Ecosystem Recovery Ecosystem Recovery

³⁵ As defined in: Department of Conservation 2010: The Island Strategy: guidelines for managing islands administered by the Department of Conservation. Ecosystems Management Group, Department of Conservation, Christchurch, New Zealand.

8.1 Description

The Hauraki Islands are significant sites for ecological restoration and threatened and at risk species conservation. Many have a history of human settlement and use, and restricted but increasing recreation opportunities. The islands can be divided into three groups:

- Island nature reserves and wildlife sanctuaries where public access is restricted and highly controlled to protect high-priority natural values and to enable ecological restoration (the Mercury Islands and the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua)).
- Islands where ecological restoration is the priority but opportunities are available for limited and controlled public access (Cuvier Island (Repanga Island)).
- Islands where public access is unrestricted and there is potential for increased recreation opportunities (Motutapere, Rabbit and Whanganui (in part) Islands).

Many of the Hauraki Islands are important sites for maintaining New Zealand's biological heritage and diversity. They are significant refuges for threatened and at risk species that were once widespread on mainland New Zealand, and several also support endemic species that are unique to those islands. They are also important sites for ecological restoration, as most of the islands have been modified by human activities. Several, however, remain largely undisturbed, and have intact and functioning ecosystems.

All islands within this Place (apart from Whanganui and Rabbit Islands) are free of introduced mammals. The Mercury Islands, Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) and Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) have been identified as priority ecosystem units by the Department, primarily because of the species diversity they support. The Mercury Islands and Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) represent the most ecologically intact islands. Atiu or Middle and Green Islands in the Mercury Island group have never been impacted by introduced mammals. Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), while relatively intact ecologically, has been subject to extensive human impacts, including farming, cultivation and long-term habitation.

Collectively, Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), the Mercury Islands and the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) support some of the greatest diversity of reptiles and seabirds found in New Zealand. Motutapere Island, while extensively modified, is almost completely covered in regenerating forest. Rabbit and Whanganui Islands are the most modified islands within this Place.

The Hauraki Islands provide a dramatic landscape that is visible from the Coromandel Peninsula coastline. Known as continental or land-bridge islands, these islands were connected to the mainland during periods of lower sea level, and most contain important geological features. Many of the islands have a history of seasonal or long-term human use and settlement. They are also important for scientific research, which is often focused on informing or improving conservation management.

Hauraki Whānui have a strong relationship with ngā motu (islands), which they have used for many purposes, including as safe havens and for burials. Islands also have been, and continue to be, a source of mahinga kai (resources). The Department intends to work with Hauraki Whānui, including the owners of the Whangamata Islands and Motukoruenga and Motukoranga Islands, to guide and support them in their efforts to protect and restore natural values and manage public access.

Not all of the Hauraki Islands are open for public access and use, and so recreation opportunities are limited. The Department has identified Rabbit and Motutapere Islands and public conservation land on Whanganui Island as sites that can accommodate recreation activity, as they are open for public access. Rabbit and Motutapere Islands also have the potential for increased community involvement in island restoration and species recovery, which may help improve awareness and appreciation of conservation issues in New Zealand. Other opportunities for the community to assist with island conservation and restoration could include vegetation restoration (e.g. planting and weeding), biosecurity surveillance (e.g. checking animal pest monitoring sites) and collection of rubbish along accessible sections of coastline.

Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), the Mercury Islands and the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) are accessible by permit only because their gazetted status as nature reserves and wildlife sanctuaries legally limits access. The Department manages these islands for the protection of high biodiversity values, which, due to their fragile environments or vulnerable biota, can only be appreciated from a distance by the public. Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) is an exception to this, as the Department considers that it could host low-impact and controlled nature tourism. Activities such as filming and off-site interpretation may help to enhance public appreciation of those Hauraki Islands that are inaccessible to the public.

The Hauraki Islands are generally accessed by watercraft. Limited aircraft access is also possible to Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), Rabbit Island, Motutapere Island and Whanganui Island. Aircraft landings are not appropriate on the Mercury Islands and the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) due to their fragile ecosystems and the disturbance caused by aircraft.

Keeping the islands free of introduced plant and animal pests is of paramount importance for managing and protecting the significant biodiversity values present. Other important management issues include fire (the Hauraki Islands have high fire risk due to weather patterns (frequent windy conditions), vegetation types and their isolation), demand for research, access, balancing the protection of biodiversity and historic and cultural heritage values and cooperative management of mahinga kai (resources).

The Waikato Island Biosecurity Plan (draft)³⁶ specifies the biosecurity processes for managing the risk of pest and disease invasion on the Hauraki Islands, with the exception of public conservation land on Whanganui Island. The plan sets out risk assessment processes and standards for island visits and pest incursion management.

8.1.1 Cuvier Island (Repanga Island)

Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) and its 13 associated rock stacks is the oldest and most isolated island in this Place. Free of introduced mammals since 1993, regenerating forest covers approximately 125 ha (66%) of the island. Tuatara, five species of lizard and about 20 bird species are found here, including tīeke/North Island saddleback (*Philesturnus carunculatus*), Pycroft's petrel (*Pterodroma pycrofti*) and several species that are no longer found on the mainland. The island is an important site for threatened and at risk species conservation. Archaeological evidence suggests intermittent pre-European occupation dating back to early journeys to and from Hawaiki. European history of the island is centred on the building and staffing of a lighthouse and later a World War II radar station. Several buildings and relics associated with this period of occupation are maintained by the Department for their

³⁶ Department of Conservation (draft): Waikato Island Biosecurity Plan. Hauraki Area Office, Department of Conservation, Thames, New Zealand (unpublished). 57 p.

historic value. The lighthouse is operational and fully automated. Access to the island is by permit only. Any nature tourism activity on Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) should be tightly controlled and complement restoration of the ecosystem and protection of historic sites and cultural values.

Mercury Islands

The Mercury Islands have largely intact ecosystems, and support unique and important threatened wildlife and flora. Threatened and At Risk species present include tuatara, Whitaker's skink (*Cyclodina whitakeri*), Suter's skink (*Oligosoma suteri*), robust skink (*Cyclodina alani*), Duvaucel's gecko (*Hoplodactylus duvaucelii*) and pāpā/Pacific gecko (*Hoplodactylus pacificus*), Mercury Islands tusked wētā (*Motuweta isolata*), pukupuku/little spotted kiwi (*Apteryx owenii*), tara/white-fronted tern (*Sterna striata*), tīeke/North Island saddleback and several species of seabird.

Atiu or Middle Island in particular has a high density of burrowing seabirds, tuatara, the Mercury Islands tusked wētā, ten species of lizards and a rare milk tree (*Streblus banksii*) forest.

Green Island and Atiu or Middle Island contain intact ecosystems that are extremely fragile due to the geology and density of seabird burrows, and thus are vulnerable to disturbance. Translocations between islands within this group have increased the security of some threatened and at risk species. Archaeological evidence suggests that these islands were a significant population centre for Māori until approximately 1820.

Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua)

The Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) are home to approximately 100 different species of plants, including several Threatened and At Risk species. They also support nationally important populations of oi/grey-faced petrel (northern muttonbird, *Pterodroma macroptera gouldi*), white-faced petrel (*Pelagodroma marina*) and tuatara. Of all the islands in this group, Hongiora has the most fragile ecosystem.

Archaeological evidence suggests only seasonal occupation by Māori, probably coinciding with the petrel breeding season and seasonal fishing opportunities. The Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) are of particular significance to Hauraki Whānui (Ngāti Hei, Ngāti Hako and Marutūahu), who gifted the islands to the Crown in 1969³⁷. The original owners continue their traditional harvest of grey-faced petrels alongside monitoring and independent research. These populations are managed by the Department in partnership with Hauraki Whānui. It is a priority to ensure that the cultural harvest is ecologically sustainable.

8.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Hauraki Islands Place

8.2.1 OUTCOME

The diverse and fragile ecosystems and habitats of the Hauraki Islands are healthy and functioning, and sustain viable populations of indigenous flora and fauna. All islands, with the exception of Whanganui Island, are free of introduced mammals. The natural character and unmodified landscapes of the Hauraki Islands remain intact.

³⁷ Under the Reserves and Other Lands Disposal Act 1970 (s6), the Aldermen Islands are recorded as being gifted to the Crown for inclusion in the Hauraki Gulf Maritime Park on 12 August 1969.

The Mercury Islands, Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) and Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) are treasured, significant ‘ecological lifeboats’. These islands are valued for their ecosystem integrity, the richness and diversity of fauna and flora, and their contribution to biodiversity conservation. They provide security for threatened and at risk species, are important sites for the reintroduction of ecologically appropriate threatened and at risk species, and support threatened species recovery programmes by acting as source sites for translocations to other locations.

The harvest of grey-faced petrel populations on the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) is ecologically sustainable and managed in collaboration with Ngāti Hei, Ngāti Hako and Marutūahu.

A small number of adventurous people enjoy controlled, low-impact nature tourism opportunities on Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), which complement the island’s biodiversity and historic heritage. Aircraft activity on the island is low, and aircraft and watercraft are used to access the island.

Scientific research continues to increase our understanding of island ecosystems and threatened species conservation, but is only permitted where the benefits of learning outweigh any adverse effects or risks to the islands’ ecosystems and species.

All visitors maintain island biosecurity and respect the sites they visit.

Cultural and historic heritage, including sites and stories of the Hauraki Islands of importance to Hauraki Whānui, is protected and enhanced. Hauraki Whānui are interested and involved in island management and are supported by the Department in the management of their own islands.

The restoration and maintenance of heritage values associated with the lighthouse settlement and World War II radar station on Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) is consistent with biodiversity values on the island.

Members of the public enjoy island recreation experiences on Motutapere and Rabbit Islands, and the north western coast of Whanganui Island. Visitors to these islands also enjoy small-scale camping opportunities with basic facilities and short walks, and expect to only occasionally encounter aircraft activity. The community assists with ecosystem restoration programmes on Motutapere and Rabbit Islands.

8.2.2 POLICIES

- 8.2.2.1 Develop restoration plans for the Mercury Islands and Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua).
- 8.2.2.2 Assess and identify areas where nature tourism activities, including public accommodation facilities, can occur on Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), in a way that is consistent with:
 - a) the outcome and policies for this Place;
 - b) the island’s nature reserve classification;
 - c) the island’s classification in the Department’s Island Strategy (2010),³⁸ or any subsequent strategy;
 - d) the Repanga/Cuvier Island Restoration Plan;³⁹

³⁸ Department of Conservation 2010: The Island Strategy: guidelines for managing islands administered by the Department of Conservation. Ecosystems Management Group, Department of Conservation, Christchurch, New Zealand.

³⁹ Department of Conservation 2010: Repanga/Cuvier Island Restoration Plan: 2010–2020. Waikato, Department of Conservation, Hamilton, New Zealand.

- e) the management and protection of heritage and cultural values; and
 - f) the protection of the interests of Maritime New Zealand.
- 8.2.2.3 Manage island biosecurity in accordance with the Waikato Island Biosecurity Plan (draft).
- 8.2.2.4 Continue to support the research of ecologically sustainable tītī/grey-faced petrel harvest on the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua), and manage the harvest in partnership with Ngāti Hei, Ngāti Hako and Marutūahu according to those research findings.
- 8.2.2.5 Promote public access and recreation opportunities on Rabbit, Motutapere and Whanganui Islands.
- 8.2.2.6 Work cooperatively with Maritime New Zealand in their management of the Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) lighthouse.
- 8.2.2.7 Increase public understanding and appreciation of the Hauraki Islands, particularly the Mercury Islands, Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) and Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), without the need to visit the islands; for example, by providing interpretation about island conservation on islands that are accessible to the public.
- 8.2.2.8 Consider access to the Hauraki Islands for scientific and educational research on a case-by-case basis, in accordance with the following criteria:
- a) the research is consistent with the outcome and policies for this Place;
 - b) the research is consistent with the land status of the island on which the research is proposed to occur;
 - c) the research meets the requirements of the Waikato Island Biosecurity Plan (draft);
 - d) the research is consistent with the Department's Island Strategy (November 2010), or any subsequent strategy, and the island classification of the island on which the research is proposed to occur;
 - e) in the case of the Mercury Islands and the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua):
 - i) the research cannot be undertaken on another island;
 - ii) the number of visits to islands classified as 'minimum impact', i.e. Hongiora Island (Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua)), and Green and Atiu or Middle Islands (Mercury Islands), is minimised to protect fragile ecological values;
 - f) benefits of the research to island ecosystems and species conservation outweigh any potential adverse effects; and
 - g) where there are more requests for permission to carry out research than an island can sustain, applications will be prioritised according to their contribution to island ecosystem and species conservation.
- 8.2.2.9 Should not allow general public access or commercial activities on the Mercury Islands, the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) and Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), except as provided by Policies 8.2.2.10 and 8.2.2.13 to 8.2.2.15 for this Place.
- 8.2.2.10 May allow filming in this Place, in accordance with Policies 16.11.1.1 to 16.11.1.3 in Part Three and provided that:
- a) the activity benefits and promotes the understanding of island conservation or supports an authorised activity;

- b) the activity is consistent with the outcome and policies for this Place;
 - c) the activity is consistent with the land status of the island on which the activity is proposed to occur;
 - d) the activity meets the requirements of the Waikato Island Biosecurity Plan (draft);
 - e) the activity is consistent with the Department's Island Strategy (November 2010), or any subsequent strategy, and the island classification of the island on which the activity is proposed to occur; and
 - f) benefits of the filming to island ecosystems and species conservation outweigh any potential adverse effects.
- 8.2.2.11 Provide support through the provision of technical advice to Hauraki Whānui about island restoration and management to facilitate restoration of islands under their ownership and management, including the Whangamata Islands and Motukoruenga and Motukoranga Islands.
- 8.2.2.12 Should not allow or build new structures on the Mercury Islands or the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua), except where structures are necessary to support island conservation management, and provided that:
- a) structures are temporary and minimised in number and size;
 - b) any adverse effects on island ecosystems and species are avoided or minimised;
 - c) the activity meets the requirements of the Waikato Island Biosecurity Plan (draft); and
 - d) the activity is consistent with the island's classification and the Department's Island Strategy (November 2010), or any subsequent strategy.
- 8.2.2.13 May allow new structures on Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) only in accordance with Policy 16.2.1.5 in Part Three and provided that:
- a) it is consistent with the outcome and policies for this Place;
 - b) the activity meets the requirements of the Waikato Island Biosecurity Plan (draft);
 - c) preference is given to the re-use of existing buildings over the construction of new structures; and
 - d) the heritage value of existing buildings is not adversely affected.
- 8.2.2.14 May allow limited guided nature tourism on Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) only in accordance with the following criteria, to protect high biodiversity values:
- a) the activity is directly related to the appreciation of conservation values of the island;
 - b) the activity contributes to island restoration and conservation activities on the island;
 - c) the activity is consistent with the Repanga/Cuvier Island Restoration Plan and the preservation of heritage sites and values on the island;
 - d) the activity meets the requirements of the Waikato Island Biosecurity Plan (draft);
 - e) the activity is consistent with the Department's Island Strategy (November 2010), or any subsequent strategy, and the island

classification of Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) (ecosystem restoration); and

- f) the following limits are met:
- i) a maximum of 40 people visit the island per day (including overnight stays);
 - ii) access by watercraft is for a maximum of 50 trips⁴⁰ per year, with no more than one boat visiting the island per day;
 - iii) access by aircraft is in accordance with Policy 8.2.2.15 for this Place.

8.2.2.15 May allow aircraft landings and take-offs on Cuvier (Repanga), Motutapere and Rabbit Islands, and public conservation land on Whanganui Island shown as Orange Zone on Map 4, only in accordance with Policies 16.3.5.1 and 16.3.5.1 and 16.3.5.5 to 16.3.5.8 in Part Three, and the following criteria, to protect biodiversity values and the recreation setting:

- a) no more than two landings per day per island, and a maximum of 50 landings in any year per island;
- b) landings and take-offs only occur on the designated helipad or landing site;
- c) the activity meets the requirements of the Waikato Island Biosecurity Plan (draft);
- d) over-flying of forest areas is discouraged; and
- e) aircraft landings on Cuvier Island are only permitted for island restoration and conservation activities authorised by concession, including guided nature tourism activities.

8.2.2.16 Should not allow aircraft landings and take-offs on the Mercury Islands or the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua), shown as Red Zone on Map 4, to protect significant biodiversity values and fragile ecosystems, in accordance with Policies 16.3.5.1, 16.3.5.2 and 16.3.5.7 in Part Three.

MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

8.2.2.17 Scheduled outputs identified in approved work programmes for the following priority ecosystem units located in this Place⁴¹: the Mercury Islands, the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) and Cuvier Island (Repanga Island).

8.2.2.18 The Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) restoration plan has been completed in line with priority ecosystem unit work programmes.

8.2.2.19 An assessment identifying where nature tourism activities can occur on Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) has been completed.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

8.2.2.20 The Mercury Islands restoration plan has been prepared in line with priority ecosystem unit work programmes.

⁴⁰ A trip equals one drop-off and/or pick-up from the island.

⁴¹ The Mercury Islands and Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) are also priority sites for the Mercury Islands tusked wētā and tīeke/North Island saddleback.

Part Two

- 8.2.2.21 Review of the Repanga/Cuvier Island Restoration Plan has been completed in line with priority ecosystem unit work programmes.
- 8.2.2.22 Heritage site assessments have been completed and site-based maintenance plans for heritage sites have been developed on islands with visitor access.
- 8.2.2.23 Report on progress made by the community in the restoration of Motutapere and Rabbit Islands has been completed.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 8.2.2.24 Review of the Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) Restoration Plan has been completed in line with priority ecosystem unit work programmes.
 - 8.2.2.25 Demonstrable progress has been made by the community in the restoration of Motutapere and Rabbit Islands.
-

9 Hauraki–Coromandel Peninsula Place

The Hauraki–Coromandel Peninsula Place comprises all public conservation land from the northern tip of Coromandel Peninsula to (but not including) the Karangahake Gorge (refer Maps 8.2 and 8.2.1). The Department administers 38% of the total land area on the Coromandel Peninsula, including the 72 000-ha Coromandel Forest Park. Management of the land has a direct influence on the environment and opportunities available to those who live and visit the Peninsula. The policy direction for this Place focuses on lands managed by the Department, and the protection of biodiversity values, outstanding natural landscapes and natural character, including integrated management with others of pressures originating off public conservation lands, particularly with respect to coastal development. This Place includes three discrete areas, each with specific management needs:

- Northern Coromandel
- Thames Coast, Kauaeranga Valley and Broken Hills
- Maratoto, Wentworth and Wharekirauponga

9.1 Description

The Hauraki–Coromandel Peninsula Place contains a large forest continuum with rare coastal forests, and is valued for its diverse native flora and fauna, scenic natural landscapes, rich history, ecosystem services, and wide range of recreation and tourism opportunities.

This Place is characterised by indigenous forest, wetlands, and ecologically diverse coastal and marine ecosystems. Indigenous forests cover a large part of the Peninsula and include almost contiguous tracts of mixed podocarp-broadleaf forest along the main Coromandel Range (east–west and north–south). Remnant kauri, coastal pōhutukawa forest, and mānuka (*Leptospermum scoparium*) and kānuka (*Kunzea ericoides*) shrubland feature in many areas. Coastal pōhutukawa forest is present along the coastline, including at Northern Coromandel, Waiomu Ecological Area, Onemana, Whiritoa and the Thames Coast. Priority forest ecosystem sites identified by the Department are found at Moehau, Papa Aroha, Horseshoe Bay, Whenuakite, Kapowai-Kauaeranga, Papakai and Otahu. Priority coastal dune ecosystems feature at many locations along the coast, including Waikawau Beach (Northern Coromandel) and Otama. Other important dune ecosystems occur at Port Jackson and Opoutere. The maintenance of ecological integrity and habitat connectivity, particularly in forest habitat, is a management priority for the Department.

The Coromandel Forest Park contains numerous waterways that feed into, and have a significant influence on, the quality of the many wetland and coastal-marine habitats. Coastal-marine areas are part of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park (refer section 7). Significant among these are Manaia Harbour, Cape Colville, the Fantail Bay coastline, Waikawau Estuary, Whitianga, Whangapoua and Wharekawa Harbours, Opoutere Spit, upper Coromandel, Tairua and Whangamata Harbours, and Opito Bay⁴². These ecosystems have significant ecological value and natural character, and their ecological health is linked strongly to the Coromandel Peninsula land mass, which includes large areas of public conservation land. Development pressure on coastal ecosystems and natural character is a significant issue on the Peninsula. River and

⁴² Lundquist, C.; Chiaroni, L.; Halliday, J.; and Williston, T. (2004): Identifying areas of conservation value in the Waikato coastal marine environment. NIWA client report: HAM2004-039. National Institute of Water and Atmospheric Research Ltd, Hamilton. 98 p.

harbour catchment management programmes led by Waikato Regional Council, and the Hauraki Gulf Marine Spatial Plan (refer sections 7 and 11), aim to improve the health of freshwater and coastal-marine ecosystems of the Peninsula.

Ecosystems across the Peninsula support a great diversity of flora and fauna, including many endemic and threatened and at risk species. They support invertebrates, bats, birds and lizards, and provide important habitat for native frogs. They sustain locally endemic reptile and invertebrate species, including, for example, the Threatened Coromandel striped gecko (*Hoplodactylus stephenis* var. *coromandel*) and Moehau stag beetle. The Threatened Coromandel brown kiwi is found across many forest and shrubland areas on the Peninsula, which is one of five strongholds for brown kiwi in New Zealand. Coastal ecosystems are important for many shorebird and wading bird species that breed and feed along the coast, including approximately 60% of the tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel population. Wetlands provide habitat for important birdlife, including the Threatened pāteke/brown teal and matuku/Australasian bittern (*Botaurus poiciloptilus*), and the At Risk mātātā/North Island fernbird (*Bowdleria punctata*). Streams provide habitat for a diverse native fish fauna, including the Threatened shortjaw kōkopu (*Galaxias postvectis*) and tuna/longfin eel (*Anguilla dieffenbachia*).

A wide range of threats are present, including introduced mammalian predators and herbivores, such as goats, pigs, possums, rats (*Rattus* spp.) and stoats (*Mustela erminea*). Wild deer are currently absent from the Peninsula, and the Department intends to keep the Peninsula free from wild deer. Threat management focuses on priority forest and coastal ecosystems, protection of threatened and at risk flora and fauna, and flood mitigation. Community projects assist the Department with protecting threatened species, such as pāteke/brown teal and Coromandel brown kiwi, and with ecosystem restoration. Hunters also contribute to goat and pig control, and commercial trappers contribute to possum control. The Department coordinates hunters and wild animal control efforts to target the protection of priority areas and values.

Diseases present a threat at this Place. In March 2014 kauri dieback disease (*Phytophthora taxon Agathis*, or PTA) was detected for the first time on the Peninsula in Whangapoua Forest/Hukarahi Conservation Area. The amphibian chytrid fungus (*Batrachochytrium dendrobatidis*) is present in the Archey's frog population. These threats are managed on a site-by-site basis, and the Department is reliant on other agencies, organisations, interested parties and the community for assistance with threat management due to the large land area it manages.

The indigenous forests along the Coromandel Range provide water and soil conservation, and are important carbon sinks and sources for domestic and agricultural water supplies. They retain runoff during high-intensity rain events, reducing downstream flooding, and contribute to reduced sedimentation and increased water quality in the Peninsula's harbours and estuaries. The Department partners with Waikato Regional Council on river catchment management projects across the Peninsula aimed at improving water quality and reducing the impacts of flooding. These include The Peninsula Project, Thames Coast Flood Protection Scheme and the Waihou Scheme (Southern Coromandel).

The landscape comprises landforms and geological features that are diverse and aesthetically attractive. A complex andesitic and rhyolitic geology forms the Moehau Range and main Coromandel Range. The Peninsula is also rich in gold-bearing quartz. Many significant geopreservation sites are found on the Peninsula, such as the Sugar Loaf Volcanic Sequence at Fletcher Bay. Impressive landmarks include Table Mountain, Castle Rock (Motutere) and Maumaupaki (Camels Back). The main Coromandel Range is a distinctive landscape feature with high natural character.

The Coromandel Peninsula is of great physical and spiritual significance to tangata whenua. Hauraki Whānui have strong connections with the Peninsula's coast, mountains and rivers. The Peninsula is described as 'Te Tara o Te Whai' (the jagged barb of the stingray). The Moehau and Coromandel Ranges are described as a great waka or figurative ama (outrigger), with its prow at Mt Te Aroha and stern at Mt Moehau.

Over 3000 pre-European historical sites and 700 post-European settlement historical sites have been recorded on the Peninsula. Sites include those associated with kauri logging, gold mining, early European occupation and some of the earliest known pre-European settlements. Twenty significant historic sites on the Peninsula are managed by the Department, including kauri dams, coastal pā and gold mining sites (Appendix 10). Some sites present safety issues and risks for visitors, and are managed according to those risks.

The Coromandel Peninsula has a long history of mining activities, particularly gold mining. Under the Crown Minerals Act 1991, mineral permit holders can only apply, except in specific circumstances, for access arrangements to public conservation land south of the Kopu-Hikuaia Road (State Highway 25A), excluding Otahu Ecological Area and Parakawai Geological Reserve.

Recreation opportunities include short, day and multi-day walks, camping, swimming, picnicking, fishing, mountain biking, horse riding, four-wheel driving/trail bike riding and hunting. Many opportunities are easily accessible because of their proximity to settlements and state highways. Visitor facilities include a mosaic of forest and coastal tracks, two public huts, and 19 campsites. The scenic landscape, history and natural values of the Peninsula are integral parts of the visitor experience.

Recreation opportunities are in high demand, and many sites and facilities that are managed by the Department are extremely popular, particularly in Northern Coromandel and the Kauaeranga Valley. The Department manages seven Gateway destinations in the Hauraki-Coromandel Peninsula Place (Appendix 11). Management will focus on these Gateway destinations, while the next priorities will be other recreation destinations in Northern Coromandel, and many of the Peninsula's popular scenic short walks, campsites, and peaceful backcountry and coastal settings.

The Department also provides for freedom camping opportunities, with restrictions and prohibitions in some locations, on public conservation land on the Peninsula. These are managed as part of the mix of recreation opportunities available to visitors. The Department intends to work with other interested parties to provide for and manage issues arising from freedom camping activity on the Peninsula.

Opportunities exist for external parties to provide and complement the Department's visitor services on public conservation lands, particularly where the Department is unable to keep up with demand. The Department intends to cater for recreation opportunities, particularly those in short supply such as horse riding, mountain biking and multi-day walks, by diversifying opportunities on existing track networks, and seeking assistance from the private sector and the community to create and maintain such opportunities. Thames Coromandel District Council is leading an initiative to increase and integrate recreation opportunities across the Peninsula, which may also facilitate opportunities to link recreation opportunities on public conservation lands with those on private and other public lands. Management of recreation opportunities could also include considering the closure of low-use tracks, or seeking community-led maintenance of those tracks, to enable opportunities to be provided elsewhere on the Peninsula. Any new recreation opportunities would need to satisfy the Department's standards for tracks and other facilities.

The Department manages concessions for a wide range of activities and public services on the Peninsula, including water supply, livestock grazing, network utilities, guiding, and other services supporting recreational users and tourists. A number of high-profile annual multi-sport events are also held on the Peninsula. Maintaining the natural and heritage values and the experiences these activities rely on is a key management priority. The Department's intention is to facilitate opportunities where this is consistent with natural, heritage and recreational values.

There is high interest and involvement by the community in biodiversity protection and restoration. Many groups contribute to conservation outcomes through community-led restoration projects at numerous locations, including Northern and Eastern Coromandel and the Thames Coast. These contributions include efforts to improve the health of forest, wetland and coastal ecosystems, and habitats, and to protect indigenous species, particularly Coromandel brown kiwi, pāteke/brown teal, native frogs, tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel, matuku/Australasian bittern and māātātā/North Island fernbird. New partnerships with the community and other organisations have the potential to add to these efforts to protect and restore biodiversity on the Peninsula.

The Coromandel Blueprint Project⁴³ provides a link between the Department's and local authorities' planning processes. The Department intends to continue working closely with local authorities on matters of common interest on the Peninsula.

Management challenges include reviewing the classification of public conservation land parcels to reflect conservation values; unauthorised structures, tracks and encroachment on public conservation land; and unauthorised motorised vehicle use.

9.1.1 Northern Coromandel

Northern Coromandel has a range of ecosystem types, including estuaries, wetlands, beach and dune systems, kānuka-mānuka shrubland, coastal pōhutukawa forest, and lowland to montane podocarp forest. An unbroken altitudinal forest sequence from coastal to subalpine vegetation encompasses much of Moehau.

Moehau and Waikawau Bay are priority ecosystem units for the Department. Moehau is a hotspot for plant diversity, while Waikawau Bay includes estuary, beach and sensitive dune ecosystems. Intensive threat management is focused at these sites and some work has commenced to restore the dune ecosystem. Community-based management contributes to predator control and wetland restoration at Waikawau Beach and other locations.

These ecosystems host an array of Threatened and At Risk fauna and flora. Forests support species such as North Island kākā tititipounamu/rifleman (*Acanthisitta chloris*), Archey's frog, Hochstetter's frog, Coromandel striped gecko and the endemic Moehau stag beetle. Coromandel brown kiwi are protected over a large area, including in the Department's Moehau Kiwi Sanctuary and several community-managed kiwi zones. The At Risk orchid *Prasophyllum hectori*, *Pittosporum virgatum* and 14 other locally rare plant species are present on Moehau. Threatened and At Risk coastal and wetland bird species include tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel, pohowera/banded dotterel (*Charadrius bicinctus*), taranui/Caspian tern (*Sterna caspia*), mohopereru/banded rail (*Rallus philippensis*) and matuku/Australasian bittern. Estuarine and wetland habitats are also a stronghold for the Threatened pāteke/brown teal—the largest population in the Waikato—and the brown teal louse (*Anaticola* sp.).

⁴³ This document was developed in collaboration with iwi and local authorities to facilitate integrated planning and management on the Peninsula. The Department is a signatory to the Coromandel Blueprint Project. It is a non-statutory document.

The Northern Coromandel landscape is scenic and characterised by volcanic landforms, bush-covered ridgelines, and a lack of intrusion by rural and urban development. The Moehau Range is an outstanding natural landscape, and the coastline from south of Port Jackson to Waikawau Bay contains highly valued coastal landscapes and seascapes. Fantail Bay, Port Jackson, Fletcher Bay, Stony Bay, Sandy Bay and Waikawau Bay Recreation Reserves adjoining the Moehau Range (Coromandel Forest Park) complete the continuum of protected forest and undeveloped scenery from mountain to sea. These reserves were purchased by the government in the 1970s to protect the area from coastal development, and to retain landscape and scenic values, and provide camping opportunities in places free from intensive development. Areas of farmland within these reserves are managed under licence to protect scenic, natural, cultural and recreational values. The Department intends to progressively retire land from grazing, while retaining a connection with the farming history of the area, and increase recreation infrastructure within these recreation reserves.

Northern Coromandel has important cultural heritage values and, along with Mt Moehau (892 m above sea level), is of great significance to Hauraki Whānui. The coastline surrounding Moehau contains evidence of almost continuous Māori occupation that extends back to approximately 1250–1300 AD, when the first Polynesian migrants are thought to have arrived in the area⁴⁴. Relics of European occupation associated with flax and timber milling, quarrying, boat building and farming are also present. Examples include a wool-storage building at Fletcher Bay, a musterer's hut, a World War II coastal watch station, an old homestead, and remnants of a mill and boat building sites at Stony Bay.

Recreation opportunities are based on the coastal setting and remoteness from population centres. Tracks include the Coromandel Walkway and the Muriwai Walk. A large proportion of visitors are overnight campers, with the traditional 'kiwi family' camping experience available at Waikawau Bay, Stony Bay, Fantail Bay, Fletcher Bay and Port Jackson. Waikawau Bay is the largest conservation campsite in the country and very popular during summer holidays. There is high demand for camping and walking opportunities close to and along the coast.

The Department's recreation focus for Northern Coromandel is to provide facilities that enhance coastal walking and traditional 'kiwi family' camping opportunities. This will centre on the Waikawau Bay, Stony Bay and Fletcher Bay Gateway destinations, and will include additional camping opportunities and a multi-day coastal walking and cycling experience from Fletcher Bay to Sandy Bay. Recreation opportunities will be directed away from the Moehau Ecological Area to protect important cultural and ecological values.

High visitation provides an opportunity to increase conservation awareness. Integration of ecological principles with farming operations within the coastal recreation reserves is a long-term goal to enhance landscape and natural values. This will involve ecological restoration, including retiring public conservation lands from grazing and replanting native vegetation, and enabling more recreation opportunities, as outlined above.

9.1.2 Thames Coast, Kauaeranga Valley and Broken Hills

The area comprising the Thames Coast, Kauaeranga Valley and Broken Hills contains coastal pōhutukawa, kauri, tawa (*Beilschmiedia tawa*) and podocarp forests, within

⁴⁴ Monin, P. 2012: Hauraki–Coromandel region. Te Ara—the Encyclopaedia of New Zealand. Updated 17 May 2012. www.teara.govt.nz/en/hauraki-coromandel-region

lowland and montane bioclimatic zones. Threatened and At Risk species include the dwarf greenhood orchid (*Pterostylis micromega*), *Dactylanthus taylorii*, the endemic Coromandel mountain daisy, Archey's frog, kārearea /New Zealand falcon and remnant populations of Coromandel brown kiwi. Shorebirds breed along the Thames Coast. Priority ecosystem units are Kapowai–Kauaeranga (the Kapowai Ecological Area and upper reaches of the Kauaeranga Valley) and Papakai Ecological Area. The intact forest catchments also provide important habitat for native fish. The Table Mountain andesite plateau and The Pinnacles are major landmarks of the Coromandel Range.

Along the Thames Coast, integrated flood protection, river catchment management and animal threat management improves soil and water values to reduce flood risks for coastal communities. This also benefits biodiversity and helps reduce sedimentation in the Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana. Kauri protection and kauri dieback disease advocacy is important along the Thames Coast. An active community contributes to threat management, including protection for Coromandel brown kiwi and tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel.

This area has a diverse logging and mining history, with much of the area having been extensively logged for kauri. Within the Kauaeranga Valley, there are numerous sites associated with kauri logging, including tramlines and several historically significant kauri dams at Christmas Creek and Dancing Creek. Gold mining history features at Broken Hills, the site of the historic gold mining settlement of Puketui. Heritage values along the Thames Coast include sites associated with logging, mining and colonial farm settlement.

The Kauaeranga River is known to Māori as Waiwhakaurunga. The Waiwhakaurunga headwater catchment is the primary source for the Kauaeranga River. There is potential for the Department and Hauraki Whānui to manage and interpret cultural values in partnership, particularly in the Kauaeranga Valley.

This area has the most extensive and accessible track network on the Peninsula. It offers a multitude of recreation opportunities, including numerous campsites and two public huts—Crosbies Hut and Pinnacles Hut, the latter being the largest Department - managed hut in the country. Recreation opportunities allow appreciation of natural values and kauri logging history in the Kauaeranga Valley, and gold mining history in Broken Hills. The Kauaeranga Valley, Kauaeranga Kauri Trail and the Broken Hills area are Gateway destinations that attract 150 000, 27 000 and 14 000 visitors each year, respectively.

The Department's Kauaeranga Visitor Centre has an important information and interpretation function, and is a key link between the public and the Department, with 47 000 people visiting each year. A strong environmental education focus in the Kauaeranga Valley is enhanced by the Visitor Centre and three education camps managed under concession.

There is potential to develop a 2- to 4-day tramp from the Thames Coast through the Kauaeranga Valley to Broken Hills if a third hut is installed between the Kauaeranga Valley and Broken Hills. Other potential opportunities include shared mountain biking and walking tracks, and provision for public accommodation (other than camping) in the Kauaeranga Valley. Assistance from the community, user groups and the private sector could help realise these opportunities.

9.1.3 Maratoto, Wentworth and Wharekairauponga

The moderately steep to rolling hill country of the Maratoto, Wentworth and Wharekairauponga valleys is covered with lowland to montane forest and scrub, and kauri forest. It provides a forest corridor between central Coromandel and the Kaimai

Range, maintaining soil and water quality, and protecting the catchment draining to east coast harbours, including Wharekawa, Otahu and Whangamata Harbours. Goats have been controlled since 1983 and the understorey is relatively intact; however, possums severely affect canopy condition.

Threatened species present include Archey's frog, peketaua/Hochstetter's frog, Coromandel brown kiwi, North Island kākā, kārearea/New Zealand falcon, pekapeka/long-tailed bat and tuna/longfin eel. The Otahu Ecological Area has been identified as a priority ecosystem site by the Department. Assistance with animal pest and wild animal management could result in significant improvement in forest health and help to secure threatened and at risk species that are present in the area. In addition to these ecological values, significant andesitic formations are found in Parakawai Geological Area in the eastern Wharekirauponga catchment.

Historic values centre on kauri logging, gold mining and early telegraph communication. Kauri logging and mining sites feature throughout the Wentworth, Maratoto and Wharekirauponga valleys. Examples include the actively managed Royal Standard Tramway at Wharekirauponga, and mining sites between Maratoto and Golden Cross. The Wires Track at Maratoto follows a historic telegraph route. The protection of significant historical features in this area is a priority and, where it is safe for visitors, their integration with recreation experiences will be important goals.

Recreation opportunities include camping, tramping, visiting historic mining and logging sites, picnicking and hunting. Four-wheel driving, horse riding, and trail bike and mountain bike tracks are available in the Maratoto area, but are currently limited elsewhere on the Peninsula. The track network links the Wentworth Valley to Maratoto and also Maratoto to Golden Cross. The popular Wentworth campsite offers a traditional camping experience and is managed under concession. It receives 13 500 visitors annually and, along with the Wentworth Falls Walk, is managed as a Gateway destination. Other recreation opportunities, such as mountain biking in exotic forest south of Whangamata and the Hauraki Rail Trail, complement those available in this area. Management issues are associated with four-wheel drive vehicle use, and include balancing use by motorised and non-motorised vehicles and other users, and formalising management of an unauthorised campsite in the upper Maratoto Valley/Tairua River catchment.

Recreation priorities include development of the Gateway destination sites, continued provision of opportunities associated with historic and natural values of the area, and maintaining four-wheel drive vehicle, mountain bike and horse riding opportunities that are limited elsewhere on the Peninsula. There is significant potential for the creation of a 'Great Walk' style multi-day tramp linking the Wharekirauponga and Wentworth tracks. Assistance from the community and the private sector would help realise this opportunity.

9.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Hauraki–Coromandel Peninsula Place

9.2.1 OUTCOME

The Hauraki–Coromandel Peninsula Place is recognised and valued for its biodiversity, scenic landscapes and rich heritage, and contributes to the well-being of local communities.

Priority forest, coastal and wetland ecosystems, and waterways on the Peninsula are restored to a healthy functioning state. Populations of threatened and at risk species are thriving. Locally treasured ecosystems are protected, and indigenous flora and

fauna are becoming more abundant. Connectivity between areas of indigenous forest is improved, and forests continue to provide high-quality drinking water and flood protection for local communities. These conservation priorities are achieved with contributions from a motivated community, and in collaboration with local authorities and other interested parties.

Animal pest and wild animal populations have reduced in abundance and are controlled and managed collaboratively with other agencies, hunters and the community. These efforts are focused at priority ecosystem and species sites, including where it is important for flood protection. In particular, pig, goat and possum populations are controlled with assistance from recreational and commercial hunters. The Hauraki–Coromandel Peninsula Place remains outside the range of feral deer. Invasive pest plants are maintained to low densities at priority sites.

Areas of the Coromandel Peninsula remain free of kauri dieback disease.

Within this Place, the mountainous backdrops, skylines and ridgelines along the Coromandel Range remain undeveloped. The scenic landscapes and natural character of the coast are protected with minimal or no structures apparent. At other locations on public conservation lands and waters, structures are in keeping with the natural form and scale of the surrounding landscape and natural vegetation cover.

Significant cultural and historic sites are protected. The Peninsula's diverse Māori and European history is integrated with visitor experiences, and users are aware of cultural sensitivities and the safety issues associated with visiting some sites.

Hauraki Whānui, including local marae, hapū and iwi, play an important role in the management of conservation values on the Peninsula, with Treaty settlements creating opportunities for collaborative management.

The Peninsula is a popular destination for domestic and international visitors, offering a spectrum of recreation opportunities consistent with conservation, including camping, picnicking, short walks to iconic features such as kauri forests, overnight tramping, mountain biking, horse riding, hunting and four-wheel driving. These recreation opportunities are inter-linked across the Peninsula as a result of integrated efforts between the Department, local authorities, tourism organisations, recreational user groups and the community.

Visitors take pleasure in the solitude and natural quiet of backcountry and remote areas, as well as the easily accessible opportunities to enjoy forest and coastal ecosystems and scenic landscapes along the coast. Visitors expect occasional encounters with aircraft, except at selected central, northern and coastal locations where they should expect to not encounter aircraft.

Visitors leave the Peninsula with lasting memories and an appreciation of its conservation and heritage values. User groups, the community and the private sector help maintain recreation opportunities, and take a lead in the creation and maintenance of some recreation opportunities and facilities.

Commercial activities complement natural, historic and amenity values. Low-impact guiding opportunities facilitate increased recreational use, particularly in the Kauaeranga Valley. Other concessions, including filming and adventure sporting events, do not exceed the carrying capacity of recreational facilities and have minimal impact on other users and natural values. The commercial use of ecosystem services and resources results in an overall conservation gain for natural, cultural and historic values on public conservation lands.

A motivated community builds on its contribution to biodiversity protection and the upkeep of recreation infrastructure and opportunities.

Northern Coromandel

Northern Coromandel is a popular destination where the sense of remoteness and natural values are protected and appreciated by visitors and the community.

Moehau (including the Moehau Kiwi Sanctuary) supports healthy ecosystems, with thriving populations of threatened and at risk plants and animals. Pest plants and animals are scarce. Continuous habitat corridors to the coast are maintained and expanding. Species reintroductions are consistent with the ecosystem values present.

Healthy beach, dune and wetland ecosystems, particularly at Waikawau Bay, support coastal bird and plant populations, with Threatened and At Risk species, including pāteke/brown teal and tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel, increasing in their range. The community contributes to successful kiwi zone management, species protection and ecosystem restoration.

The scenic journey along the isolated back roads of Northern Coromandel is part of the visitor experience. Rural areas within the recreation reserves are managed to enhance biodiversity, and scenic and recreational values, and the area of public conservation lands under grazing has reduced.

Visitors enjoy traditional 'kiwi family' camping, mountain biking and walks in peaceful, isolated settings. From Waikawau north to Cape Colville, they have no, or only very rare, encounters with aircraft. Waikawau Bay, Stony Bay and Fletcher Bay are Gateway destinations for camping and enjoying the outdoors. Visitors to Port Jackson and Fantail Bay enjoy a basic coastal camping experience. The Coromandel Walkway is popular for walking and mountain biking. Coastal camping, walking and cycling opportunities have increased with minimal impact on natural and heritage values. Large sporting events utilise popular coastal tracks outside periods of peak visitation.

There is little recreation activity on the Moehau Range, particularly Moehau Ecological Area, in keeping with ecosystem restoration priorities and Moehau's sacred value to Hauraki Whānui. Hauraki Whānui, including local marae, hapū and iwi, are closely involved with management of Moehau and the cultural heritage of Northern Coromandel, including interpretation and public appreciation of culturally significant sites and values.

Important heritage places in Northern Coromandel, including Fletcher Bay Wool Store and the Poley Bay Musterer's Hut, are preserved and link visitors to the past.

Thames Coast, Kauaeranga Valley and Broken Hills

The area comprising the Thames Coast, Kauaeranga Valley and Broken Hills is recognised for its biodiversity and heritage values, and as an outdoor recreation hub on the Peninsula.

The integrity of priority ecosystems at Kapowai-Kauaeranga and Papakai is maintained and enhanced, along with other indigenous forest and montane ecosystem values. Populations of Threatened and At Risk species, including the dwarf greenhood orchid, are thriving. The protection of remnant Coromandel brown kiwi populations and other regionally important species is led by the community. Goats and possums are maintained at low densities within the Thames Coast flood protection area, and elsewhere based on ecosystem priorities.

Significant logging and mining heritage sites, including the kauri dams in the Kauaeranga Valley and the mines at Broken Hills, are preserved. Culturally significant sites, particularly in the Kauaeranga Valley, are protected and their stories brought to life in partnership with Hauraki Whānui, including local marae, hapū and iwi, and the wider community. This diverse heritage is enjoyed and enhanced at sites through the integration of stories with recreational experiences.

The interconnected track network provides a multitude of experiences that attract a diverse range of people to enjoy the scenic and peaceful natural landscape and diverse history. This area attracts people who enjoy a variety of educational outdoor adventures. As a popular Gateway destination, the Kauaeranga Valley showcases kauri logging history and is the focal point for outdoor education opportunities on the Peninsula. The 80-bunk Pinnacles Hut and associated campsite is a hub for overnight trampers, while Crosbies Hut and campsite provides an overnight experience for small groups. Experienced backcountry users value unserviced areas between Tapu and Kaimarama.

Visitors to the Gateway destination at Broken Hills learn about the area's mining history while enjoying family-friendly activities and camping experiences in a bush and river setting. The opportunity to traverse the Coromandel Range via tracks and huts from the Thames Coast, through the Kauaeranga Valley to Broken Hills, is realised in partnership with interested parties. Hunting generally occurs away from areas or avoids times that are popular with visitors.

The community and user groups help to maintain the track network in this area. The creation and maintenance of recreation opportunities, such as mountain biking and new or refurbished public accommodation facilities, is facilitated in partnership with the community and private sector.

Maratoto, Wentworth and Wharekairauponga

The area comprising Maratoto, Wentworth and Wharekairauponga is recognised and highly valued for its natural and heritage values, and backcountry visitor setting.

The priority ecosystem at Otahu is maintained and restored, with forest health improving elsewhere, in partnership with other interested parties. Populations of Threatened and At Risk species (including Archey's frog) are protected with assistance from the community and interested parties. A community-led kiwi zone protects remnant Coromandel brown kiwi populations. Significant geological values are protected at Parakawai, and a native forest landscape prevails.

Important heritage artefacts associated with kauri logging, gold mining and telegraph communication, including the actively managed Royal Standard Tramway, are preserved and integrated with recreation experiences.

Visitors experience outdoor adventures with a sense of isolation, but accept some noise disturbance in the vicinity of four-wheel driving routes. Maratoto is the focal area for four-wheel driving and trail bike activities on the Peninsula. These are restricted to the existing track network and are managed in cooperation with users to minimise conflict between user groups. Four-wheel driving clubs maintain tracks and a basic campsite within the Maratoto area.

Mining history features at Wentworth and Wharekairauponga, with the Wentworth Valley Gateway destination (Wentworth Track and campsite) a focal point for walks and traditional camping in a bush setting. New recreation opportunities are developed in partnership with the community and interested parties, such as a new multi-day walk, which is open to the public.

9.2.2 POLICIES

- 9.2.2.1 Identify biodiversity restoration and protection priorities on the Peninsula that iwi, the community and other organisations can assist with or lead with guidance from the Department.

- 9.2.2.2 Advocate for, and work with landowners, iwi, local authorities and others to achieve the protection of the following conservation values off public conservation lands and waters:
- a) the indigenous forest corridor along the main Coromandel Range, including the Moehau Range, and mountain to sea indigenous vegetation sequences;
 - b) estuaries, harbours, fragile dune ecosystems and habitats of threatened and at risk species, particularly coastal and wetland species along the Coromandel Peninsula coastline;
 - c) migratory habitat and pathways for birds, especially shorebird, seabird and wetland bird species, and habitat used by bats, including airspace;
 - d) freshwater ecosystems, freshwater fish habitats and fish passage, particularly to maintain habitat connectivity and water quality from the coast to the headwaters of waterways that support threatened and at risk species; and
 - e) nationally and internationally significant geological features, landforms and landscapes adjoining or contiguous with public conservation lands and waters.
- 9.2.2.3 Contribute to the development of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Spatial Plan, and harbour and catchment management programmes led by Waikato Regional Council in collaboration with all involved and interested parties.
- 9.2.2.4 Undertake actions to contain the spread of kauri dieback disease in accordance with Policies 16.15.1.1–16.15.1.4 in Part Three.
- 9.2.2.5 Undertake advocacy to raise awareness of the threat of dogs to kiwi, and require as a condition on permits for dogs taken into kiwi habitat⁴⁵ to be kiwi aversion trained.
- 9.2.2.6 Manage the range of recreation activities available on the Peninsula within the existing track network of recreation infrastructure and in a manner that is consistent with conservation purposes, through (but not limited to):
- a) increasing shared use of existing tracks where compatible with track surfaces and design, natural and heritage values, and the recreation setting;
 - b) modifying routes to minimise conflict between user groups where shared use creates, or has the potential to create, conflict;
 - c) seeking assistance⁴⁶ from users, the community or other interested parties to maintain tracks and other recreation infrastructure;
 - d) considering provision of structures for use as emergency shelters, in collaboration with interested parties, where they meet the Department’s safety standards and local authority building requirements; and
 - e) consider closing some extremely low-use tracks and facilities where the same opportunity exists elsewhere on the Peninsula in consultation with interested parties, to enable other recreation opportunities to be maintained or new recreation opportunities to be

⁴⁵ At the time of writing this CMS, all dogs taken into kiwi habitat north of SH25A required kiwi aversion training; this, however, is subject to change.

⁴⁶ Through formal agreements.

developed where demand warrants the provision of new or improved tracks and facilities.

- 9.2.2.7 Liaise with recreational user groups and the public to identify opportunities for mountain biking, four-wheel driving and horse riding on formed routes, within and in addition to the existing road and track network managed by the Department, in accordance with Policies 16.3.2.6 (mountain bikes), 16.3.1.4 (motorised vehicles), 16.3.3.4 (electric power-assisted pedal cycles) and 16.4.2.2 (horses) in Part Three.
- 9.2.2.8 Engage with local authorities, tourism organisations, recreational users, the community and other interested organisations to identify linkages between recreation opportunities managed by the Department and opportunities elsewhere on the Peninsula, such as the Hauraki Rail Trail and multi-day walking opportunities.
- 9.2.2.9 Develop recreation opportunities and facilities that are sited in locations that are suitable and safe for the proposed activity, and avoid or minimise adverse effects on natural, cultural and historic values and other recreational users.
- 9.2.2.10 Maintain and expand camping opportunities in consultation with local authorities, including provision for freedom camping, in Northern Coromandel, the Kuaotunu Peninsula, the Thames Coast, Kauaeranga Valley and South Coromandel, and work collaboratively with the Thames-Coromandel District Council in the management of freedom camping, such as monitoring.
- 9.2.2.11 Liaise with local authorities to improve connectivity between recreation services on public conservation land and parks and reserves managed by district councils.
- 9.2.2.12 Manage and advocate for management of vehicle access to and along the coast to protect fragile dune ecosystems in accordance with Policies 16.3.1.6 and 16.3.1.7 in Part Three.
- 9.2.2.13 Structures should not be authorised on undeveloped public conservation land along and adjacent to the coast, to protect high natural character and scenic values, including (but not limited to) Opoutere, Onemana, Otama, New Chums and Waikawau Bay north to Cape Colville.
- 9.2.2.14 Should consider applications for access arrangements under the Crown Minerals Act 1991 in accordance with Policies 16.9.1.1 to 16.9.1.3 in Part Three and the following criteria:
- a) only where the activity seeks access to public conservation lands south of SH25A and Hikau Settlement Road, excluding the Otahu Ecological Area and Parakawai Geological Area⁴⁷;
 - b) the activity avoids priority ecosystem units and species populations; in particular, habitats important for the persistence of native frogs, Coromandel brown kiwi, native bats, and other Threatened and At Risk species;

⁴⁷ Refer section 61 of the Crown Minerals Act 1991 for activities where access arrangements can be considered on Schedule 4 lands.

- c) adverse effects on other natural values, including the indigenous forest corridor along the Coromandel Range, are avoided, remedied or mitigated; and
 - d) significant geological features, landforms and landscapes and cultural sites are protected.
- 9.2.2.15 May allow sporting events provided that:
- a) adverse effects on natural, cultural and historic values and other users are avoided or minimised,
 - b) actions are taken to prevent the spread of kauri dieback disease and other potential biosecurity threats;
 - c) existing tracks and facilities are used;
 - d) habitats that are important for the conservation of native frogs, Coromandel brown kiwi, native bats and other Threatened and At Risk fauna are avoided; and
 - e) if the events are at the following locations, they only occur between 16 February to 13 December (inclusive), excluding public holiday weekends, in any year:
 - i) Coromandel Walkway;
 - ii) Muriwai Walk;
 - iii) Tracks on the Wentworth to Maratoto crossing;
 - iv) Kauaeranga Kauri Trail;
 - v) Designated Department of Conservation campsites; and
 - f) opportunities for conservation advocacy to participants are explored
- 9.2.2.16 Where sporting events and filming activities are authorised, the Department may:
- a) monitor the impact of the event or activity;
 - b) require specific measures to be taken to protect sites and values of high conservation value, including to prevent the establishment of kauri dieback disease and other potential biosecurity threats; and
 - c) require that locations be excluded from the event or activity if potential adverse effects on other users or the facilities are considered to be unacceptable.
- 9.2.2.17 Should not allow aircraft landings and take-offs on public conservation land within this Place, shown as Red Zone on Map 4, in accordance with Policies 16.3.5.1 and 16.3.5.2 in Part Three.
- 9.2.2.18 May allow aircraft landings and take-offs on other public conservation land in this Place, shown as Yellow Zone on Map 4, only in accordance with Policies 16.3.5.1, 16.3.5.3, 16.3.5.6, 16.3.5.7 and 16.3.5.8 in Part Three.
- 9.2.2.19 Should only allow independent mountain biking, and may allow guided mountain biking or mountain bike events, at the following locations, in accordance with Policies 16.3.2.1, 16.3.2.2, 16.3.2.5 and 16.3.2.7 to 16.3.2.9 in Part Three:
- a) Stony Bay Mountain Bike Track;
 - b) Coromandel Walkway;
 - c) Hotoritori Mountain Bike Track and Junction Track;
 - d) Hotoritori (horse) Track;
 - e) Wires Road;

- f) Whangamata Track; and
 - g) Waipaheke Track.
- 9.2.2.20 Should only allow the use of horses in this Place at the following locations, in accordance with Policies 16.4.2.2 and 16.4.2.3 in Part Three:
- a) Hotoritori (horse) Track;
 - b) Wires Road; and
 - c) Whangamata Track.
- 9.2.2.21 Should only allow the use of motorised vehicles at the following locations, in accordance with Policies 16.3.1.1, 16.3.1.2, 16.3.1.4, 16.3.1.5, 16.3.1.8 and 16.3.1.9 in Part Three:
- a) Wires Road;
 - b) Whangamata Track (four-wheel drive vehicles only);
 - c) Loop Track (Maratoto) (expert four-wheel drive vehicles only);
 - d) Waipaheke Track (motorcycles only); and
 - e) the unnamed track adjacent to Stadia Stream in Coromandel Forest Park⁴⁸.
- 9.2.2.22 May allow the unauthorised private hut at Waiwawa to be retained and phased in for public use, only in accordance with the private accommodation policies in Part Three and provided that:
- a) the upgrade and maintenance of the hut is undertaken and led by user groups or other interested parties in consultation with the Department;
 - b) the hut is upgraded and maintained to the Department's safety standards and local authority building requirements; and
 - c) any upgrade and maintenance required to meet b) above is completed and the hut is available for public use within 5 years of the CMS becoming operative.
- If the above actions do not occur within the timeframe stated above the Department may take actions to remove the hut in accordance with Policy 16.5.1.7 in Part Three.
- 9.2.2.23 Seek the reclassification of the following public conservation lands to a land status that reflects the values present:
- a) incorporate stewardship areas adjoining Coromandel Forest Park into that Park; and
 - b) change the road status of land within the Fantail Bay campsite to recreation reserve, in agreement with Thames Coromandel District Council.
- 9.2.2.24 Investigate and seek closure of unformed legal roads adjacent to or traversing public conservation land where this would facilitate the protection of natural, cultural or historic values and enhance recreation experiences, in consultation with local authorities, the New Zealand Walking Access Commission and the community.

⁴⁸ Access is only allowed along the first 400 m of this track via a locked gate for New Zealand Four Wheel Drive Association member events.

Part Two

- 9.2.2.25 Identify and progressively resolve encroachment of unauthorised activities and structures, including grazing and access ways such as tracks and roads, on public conservation lands within this Place.
- 9.2.2.26 Review freedom camping opportunities at the Otama Recreation Reserve car park in consultation with interested parties, including whether to restrict or prohibit freedom camping at this site.

Northern Coromandel

- 9.2.2.27 Consider expanding recreation opportunities in Northern Coromandel in collaboration with the community and interested parties, including (but not limited to):
 - a) a multi-day coastal walking and cycling experience from Fletcher Bay to Sandy Bay;
 - b) a small number of powered campervan sites at Waikawau Bay campsite; and
 - c) improving recreational access to, and recreational opportunities on, farmed public conservation land from Fantail Bay to Waikawau Bay that is consistent with conservation values, farm management activities and licence agreements.
- 9.2.2.28 Increase conservation interpretation material and the delivery of education programmes at popular campsites and tracks.
- 9.2.2.29 Retire public conservation lands from grazing and restore forest cover, including along the coast, waterway corridors and on erosion-prone land, within Waikawau Bay, Stony Bay, Sandy Bay, Fletcher Bay and Port Jackson Recreation Reserves, in accordance with planned restoration programmes and in conjunction with licensees and other interested parties and when licences are due for review or renewal.
- 9.2.2.30 Consider restricting freedom camping at Sandy Bay and Waiaro (McDonalds Recreation Reserve) to a small number of sites for certified self-contained vehicles only, in consultation with interested parties.
- 9.2.2.31 Review freedom camping opportunities on public conservation lands at Goat Bay in consultation with interested parties, including whether to restrict or prohibit freedom camping at this site, and ensure management of freedom camping is consistent with the Goat Bay Farm grazing licence.

Thames Coast, Kauaeranga Valley and Broken Hills

- 9.2.2.32 Promote outdoor educational facilities and programmes in the Kauaeranga Valley, including the Department's Visitor Centre and its meeting facility, as valued education resources for schools and the community.
- 9.2.2.33 Consider expanding camping opportunities in this area in collaboration with interested parties, including (but not limited to) providing a small number of powered sites for certified self-contained vehicles only, adjacent to the Kauaeranga Visitor Centre.
- 9.2.2.34 Consider restricting freedom camping at Waikawau Recreation Reserve (Thames Coast) to a small number of sites for certified self-contained vehicles only, in consultation with interested parties.
- 9.2.2.35 Liaise with the education camp trusts to facilitate increased use and promotion of existing built accommodation facilities available in the Kauaeranga Valley, and consider opportunities that could increase the

availability of these facilities to the general public when concessions are reviewed.

- 9.2.2.36 May authorise the construction of a new hut on the Hihi-Motutapere-Kaitarakihi Track network and public accommodation facilities in the Kauaeranga Valley in consultation with interested parties, and in accordance with Policy 16.2.1.5 in Part Three, provided that:
- a) in the case of the Kauaeranga Valley, priority is given to the upgrade of existing built accommodation facilities over the construction of new public accommodation facilities;
 - b) structures are of a scale and design that are in keeping with the surrounding landscape and anticipated use; and
 - c) it is available for public use at all times as if it was a Department of Conservation hut.
- 9.2.2.37 Shared use of tracks may include trial periods to assess any impact on natural and heritage values and other users.

Maratoto, Wentworth and Wharekairauponga

- 9.2.2.38 Liaise with recreational users and other interested parties to facilitate their assistance with monitoring and management of motorised vehicle, horse riding and mountain biking activities at Maratoto.
- 9.2.2.39 Consider expanding camping opportunities in this area in collaboration with interested parties.
- 9.2.2.40 Consider restricting freedom camping at the Maratoto car park and the Quarry Road car park (Wharekairauponga) to a small number of self-contained freedom camping opportunities.
- 9.2.2.41 May authorise development of a multi-day walking opportunity and associated public accommodation facilities encompassing the Wentworth and Wharekairauponga Valleys in consultation with interested parties, and in accordance with Policy 16.2.1.5 in Part Three, provided that:
- a) it protects significant ecological, geological and historic values;
 - b) the existing track network is used;
 - c) any adverse effects are minimised;
 - d) any structures and link tracks are of a scale and design that are in keeping with the surrounding landscape and anticipated use; and
 - e) any accommodation is available for public use at all times as if it was a Department of Conservation hut.

9.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 9.2.3.1 Scheduled outputs identified in approved work programmes for the following priority ecosystem units located in this Place: Waikawau Beach.
- 9.2.3.2 Scheduled outputs for nationally Threatened and At Risk species in this Place for which a work programme is underway: P āteke /brown teal and dwarf greenhood orchid.
- 9.2.3.3 Restoration programmes for public conservation lands identified for retirement from grazing in Northern Coromandel (Fantail Bay to Waikawau

Bay) have been developed and land retirement and restoration has commenced.

9.2.3.4 Interpretation planning and experiential development assessments have been completed for Gateway destinations.

9.2.3.5 Report on the success of the Department's contribution to catchment management programmes undertaken in conjunction with Waikato Regional Council.

9.2.3.6 Revoke the Coromandel Land Management Plan 2002.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

9.2.3.7 Outcomes from experiential development assessments and interpretation planning have been implemented at Gateway destinations.

9.2.3.8 The feasibility of reintroducing North Island kōkako to Moehau in Northern Coromandel has been investigated.

9.2.3.9 Review of mountain biking, horse riding and four-wheel driving opportunities on the Coromandel Peninsula.

9.2.3.10 All public conservation lands identified for retirement from grazing in Northern Coromandel have been retired from grazing and restoration is being implemented in accordance with planned restoration programmes.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

9.2.3.11 North Island kōkako have been reintroduced to Moehau in Northern Coromandel (if feasible).

9.2.3.12 Changes to mountain biking, horse riding and four-wheel driving opportunities have been implemented.

9.2.3.13 Changes to the classification of public conservation lands identified in policy 9.2.2.23.

10 Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place

The Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place comprises all public conservation lands and waters from Whitianga Rock Scenic and Historic Reserve to Hot Water Beach Recreation Reserve, including Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve⁴⁹ and Mahurangi Island (Goat Island) (refer Maps 8.3 and 8.3.1). Policy direction for this Place includes advocacy priorities for the protection of natural character, biodiversity and landscape values off public conservation land. The public conservation lands and waters within the Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place are as follows:

- Whitianga Rock Scenic and Historic Reserve
- Diggers Hill Scenic Reserve
- Purangi River Marginal Strips
- Cook Bluff Marginal Strip
- Cook Bluff Scenic Reserve
- Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve
- Mahurangi Island Recreation Reserve
- Te Pare Point Historic Reserve
- Te Pupuha Recreation Reserve
- Hot Water Beach Recreation Reserve
- Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve
- Wigmore Historic Reserve

10.1 Description

The Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place is valued for its scenic coastal landscape, important estuarine and dune ecosystems, cultural heritage, and protected marine ecosystem, as well as land-, island- and water-based recreation and tourism opportunities. It includes the only marine reserve in Waikato and the popular tourist destination of Cathedral Cove, which is one of the most highly visited public conservation sites in Waikato.

The coastal landscape of this Place is characterised by rocky headlands, steep cliffs, and a rocky/platform foreshore with boulder and sandy beaches, and the occasional dune system. The rugged cliff tops provide impressive viewpoints and scenic backdrops. These natural features blend with views of coastal settlements, rural land, historical landmarks, native vegetation and relatively undeveloped areas of coastline. Many sections of the coastline have high visual appeal, stretches of which are protected by the sequence of coastal reserves in this Place. The coastline from Te Pare Point to Hot Water Beach is particularly dramatic and features blowhole formations. The maintenance and improvement of indigenous vegetation cover would enhance the area's natural character and scenic values.

The coastal ecosystems support the Threatened tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel, tōrea pango/variable oystercatcher (*Haematopus unicolor*), taranui/Caspian tern and pohowera/banded dotterel. The marine reserve environment contains a mosaic of habitats that support diverse marine life, including plants, crustaceans, molluscs, more than 50 fish species, 80 algae, and 140 mobile and sedentary invertebrate species.

⁴⁹ 'Whanganui A Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve' is the legal gazetted name of this Marine Reserve.

The Whitianga Rock, Cook Bluff and Cathedral Cove reserves support remnant coastal forest and scrub habitats. Te Pupuha Recreation Reserve is largely covered with mixed native shrubland, while a nationally significant coastal dune ecosystem is found within Hot Water Beach Recreation Reserve. The Purangi Estuary, which drains into Cooks Bay, supports significant mānawa/mangrove (*Avicennia marina*) forests and is one of the least modified estuaries on the Coromandel Peninsula. Diggers Hill Scenic Reserve, which is covered in remnant coastal forest, adjoins the estuary.

This Place has a diverse history of Māori and European occupation. Many historic sites, including pā sites, middens, pits and terraces, are evident on coastal reserve headlands. The abundance of kaimoana, combined with a subtropical climate, made the area a desirable place for settlement by Māori. Well-preserved pā sites and sites linked to landings and activities of Captain Cook feature at Whitianga Rock, Cook Bluff/Cooks Bay and Te Pare Point, and a further six archaeological sites are also present along Hot Water Beach. Walking tracks provide access to two pā sites that are actively managed by the Department, on Te Pare Point Historic Reserve and Whitianga Rock Scenic and Historic Reserve, with interpretation also provided. Early farming settlement and coastal World War II watch stations also feature in the European history of the area at Wigmore Historic Reserve, Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve and Mahurangi Island (Goat Island). Protection of those historic places in Appendix 10 is a management priority.

This Place is of great significance to Hauraki Whānui, particularly Ngāti Hei, who have direct links to historic pā sites that are managed by the Department. The sustainability and protection of kaimoana and traditional, cultural and historic values, both spiritual and physical, are important to Hauraki Whānui.

Land- and water-based recreation opportunities are wide ranging and include sunbathing, swimming, snorkelling, scuba-diving, marine mammal viewing, fishing (outside the Marine Reserve), boating and kayaking, walking, picnicking and enjoying the natural beauty and, in some locations, the sense of isolation of the coastline. Coastal walking tracks are a feature, and there is scope for additional opportunities within the existing reserve network, and for improved linkages with reserves administered by Thames-Coromandel District Council. Balancing the demands from increasing visitor pressure with maintenance of the values on which these experiences are based is a key management issue for this Place.

Most commercial activity at this Place occurs in Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve and the Marine Reserve. Activities include the sale and hire of goods and services to the public in the Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve, guided walking and kayaking tours, and boat tours to Cathedral Cove. Filming is popular within this Place, especially at Cathedral Cove, and marine mammal viewing is undertaken in the Marine Reserve.

The Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place and surrounding area experiences high levels of visitor use over the summer months. Whitianga has been identified as the Peninsula's settlement hub in the Coromandel Peninsula Blueprint Plan. This is likely to increase demand for coastal subdivision and development in surrounding areas, which, in turn, has the potential to impact on the significant conservation values and highly valued coastal scenery in this Place.

The popularity of this Place, particularly Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve, Cook Bluff Scenic Reserve and on Mahurangi Island (Goat Island) Recreation Reserve, puts considerable demand on facilities while also providing opportunity for commercial activities. However, if not carefully managed, this has the potential to have adverse effects on the natural values and the recreation settings that have made this Place so popular. The management issues in this Place are complex and in some instances linked to management responsibilities of other agencies, particularly Thames

Coromandel District Council. High visitor numbers and, at times, overloading of facilities, particularly at Cathedral Cove, have resulted in flow-on impacts into the local community, such as traffic congestion and illegal parking. The most important issues for the Department include: the integrated provision and management of recreation opportunities and facilities across this Place; establishing the social and environmental carrying capacity limits of, and levels of service provision needed at, highly visited sites; and limits and controls on commercial activity. The Department intends to work closely with local authorities, Hauraki Whānui, tourism agencies and the local community to resolve these issues, including the assessment and further development of options for the provision and management of recreation opportunities, recreation facilities and commercial activities in this Place. This may result in an amendment to this CMS in the future.

Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve and Cook Bluff Scenic Reserve

Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve is a very popular destination and features strongly in international tourism marketing campaigns. In 2011/12, 140 000 visitors used the car park and track system (excluding those accessing the reserve by boat)⁵⁰. Peak visitation occurs between December and March, with relatively low numbers during winter. Infrastructure and services, managed by the Department and local authorities, are placed under significant pressure during the peak visitation period. The recreation facilities within the reserve are managed as an Icon destination, which also includes the track on Mahurangi Island (Goat Island).

The undeveloped and outstanding coastal scenery is the main attraction for visitors to the reserve and adjacent Cook Bluff Scenic Reserve. Cathedral Cove and Mares Leg Cove include a natural amphitheatre, the iconic archway, golden sand beaches, and significant geomorphological and coastal landscape features. The underlying geology of the reserve means that it is prone to erosion, and instability of rock material in the archway and along coastal cliffs has, at times, posed a significant risk to public safety. Good vegetation cover across the reserve is important to ensure stability, and the restoration of native vegetation cover, via a planned restoration programme, would also enhance the natural character of the reserve.

The walking track from Hahei Beach to Cathedral Cove is the only land access to the bays and coves within the reserve, and is an integral part of the visitor experience. Large crowds at Cathedral Cove and Mares Leg Cove during peak periods can at times alter the visitor experience. Gemstone Bay, Stingray Bay and bays northwest of Cathedral Cove (the latter being accessible by water only) have lower visitation and provide a more peaceful setting for visitors. The reserve also provides land access to the adjacent Marine Reserve. Maintaining this range of visitor experiences is a management priority. The high visitation also presents an opportunity to increase understanding through interpretation of the natural, cultural and historic values of the reserve and adjacent Marine Reserve. Historic values at Cathedral Cove include a pā site above the archway.

To manage the effects of reserve use, the Department intends to control commercial activities and closely manage recreational use within the reserves. This will include extending the reserve boundary to Mean Low Water Springs, investigating options for creating a commercial hub at the car park, including consideration of car parking requirements (with the possibility of charging for parking), and managing the number and spread of visitors across the reserve to protect the natural setting and visitor experience, particularly during periods of peak visitation. Specific mechanisms include

⁵⁰ Unpublished data, Department of Conservation.

the provision of visitor facilities to support the projected level of use, the creation of designated coastal landing sites and the control of some activities, including commercial passenger services (e.g. water taxis), kayak tours, and the sale and hire of goods and services to the public. The Department may also seek mechanisms to control private watercraft use and other commercial activities, should these have adverse effects on the conservation values and visitor experiences of the reserves. As outlined above the Department intends to work with others to inform the management of these reserves.

Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve

Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve provides long-term legal protection for important intertidal, subtidal and deep water ecosystems and habitats. The Department manages this area of the sea and foreshore to preserve marine habitats in their natural state for scientific study and education. It is also part of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park (refer section 7). All marine life, the seabed and the foreshore are protected, and annual biological monitoring informs management about the health of the marine ecosystem. The Marine Reserve is accessed from Hahei Beach and Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve, which provides an opportunity to showcase the marine environment in a location that is popular with domestic and international visitors. In particular, the Gemstone Bay snorkel trail provides a recreation and educational opportunity for visitors to experience and learn about the marine ecosystem. Adjacent terrestrial reserves and associated indigenous vegetation cover provide an important buffer between farmland and the Marine Reserve.

Illegal fishing, user conflicts (especially between motorised and non-motorised water-based activities in the Marine Reserve) and the large number of people enjoying the reserve during the peak visitor season are key issues. Minimising conflict between water users is a focus for management; however, the absence of legal authority to control commercial and water-based activities in the Marine Reserve does limit the mechanisms available for management by the Department. The Te Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve Committee, which includes community, tangata whenua, technical and Waikato Conservation Board representation, advises the Department on issues concerning the Marine Reserve. The long-term viability of the Marine Reserve requires the cooperation and support of all users, including commercial operators.

Mahurangi Island Recreation Reserve

Mahurangi Island (Goat Island) is highly modified as a result of previous farming activity. Vegetation cover includes regenerating and replanted coastal indigenous forest, and areas of grassland and kōti/gorse (*Ulex europaeus*). It supports remnant coastal forest, recovering scrub habitat, the Threatened fireweed *Senecio scaberulus* and tara/white-fronted tern, and is free of introduced mammals. The At Risk Mahoenui giant wētā and giant-flowered broom (*Charmichaelia williamsii*) have been established on the island. The legal status of Mahurangi Island Recreation Reserve and its island classification as an Open (island) Sanctuary⁵¹ allows for controlled recreation and nature tourism opportunities. Opportunities include kayaking, day visits and walking. There is the potential for small group tours, and other nature tourism opportunities. Public access to the island could be provided by a regular water taxi service. The community currently helps the Department with conservation management on the

⁵¹ Department of Conservation 2010: The Island Strategy: guidelines for managing islands administered by the Department of Conservation. Ecosystems Management Group, Department of Conservation, Christchurch, New Zealand.

island and there is significant potential for increased community assistance with island restoration. Mahurangi Island (Goat Island) is also an ideal site for interpreting island biodiversity values in Waikato and the Department's approach to island management in general (refer section 8).

Hot Water Beach Recreation Reserve

Situated north of the Hot Water Beach township, Hot Water Beach Recreation Reserve was created to facilitate public access to the beach, and to protect the sand dunes and undeveloped scenic backdrop. The coastline south of the reserve, which incorporates the Hot Water Beach thermal springs, is administered by Thames-Coromandel District Council. The scenic and fragile system within the reserve is a priority ecosystem site for the Department, and the foreshore hosts coastal bird populations, including the Threatened tūhuriwhatu/New Zealand dotterel. Public access to the beach and foreshore is currently provided on land adjacent to the reserve that is administered by Thames-Coromandel District Council. Unauthorised motorised vehicle use (four-wheel drives and all terrain vehicles (ATVs)) has the potential to have a significant impact on biodiversity and landscape values. Protecting and restoring the sensitive dune ecosystem and maintaining an undeveloped coastal landscape for public enjoyment are key management priorities for this area. The legal status of the reserve as a recreation reserve does not reflect the high priority biodiversity and scenic values present. Therefore, a change in status to scenic reserve will be sought.

10.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place

10.2.1 OUTCOME

The inherent natural values, natural character and dramatic coastal landscape of the Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place are protected and restored and remain a draw card for national and international visitors and locals alike.

Priority threatened and at risk coastal and wetland bird populations and other threatened and at risk species are thriving. The ecological health of marine, island, coastal, estuarine and dune ecosystems within this Place is improving. Increased indigenous vegetation cover enhances ecosystem integrity, wildlife habitat and natural character, and contributes to improved land stability.

There is a vegetated buffer zone between the coastal-marine ecosystems and adjacent farmland.

The community, alongside the Department, makes a significant contribution to ecosystem conservation and the restoration of native vegetation cover.

The natural character of estuaries of the foreshore and the margins of the coastal reserves is maintained and enhanced, with minimal built structures present.

European and Māori history and cultural heritage is preserved, showcasing Māori settlement and early European arrival.

Visitors enjoy a diversity of land- and water-based recreation experiences, including accessible short walks, camping, swimming, snorkelling, scuba diving and kayaking. These experiences connect people with the values present, and they leave with fond memories and a greater appreciation of the Place. The number of people encountered varies depending on the time of year and site visited.

Visitors rarely encounter aircraft on public conservation lands and waters, particularly during the peak visitor season.

The Department collaborates with Hauraki Whānui, including local marae, hapū and iwi, the community and local authorities to achieve integrated management of the natural, cultural and historic values of this Place.

Commercial activity is consistent with and does not detract from the landscape, natural, historic, cultural and recreational values of the Place. Conflicts between user groups or activities are avoided.

Whitianga Rock and Te Pare Point

As part of the landscape, the headland pā sites at Whitianga Rock and Te Pare Point are preserved through the retention of vegetation cover and complementary restoration of indigenous vegetation. Visitors to Te Pare Point experience a walk that is sympathetic to the cultural landscape, enjoy uninterrupted views of the coastline and leave with an appreciation of the site's historic significance to Hauraki Whānui. Walking tracks at and between Whitianga Rock and Cooks Beach are integrated with walks managed by Thames-Coromandel District Council, along which is interpretation of European and Māori heritage associated with Captain Cook and Māori occupation.

Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve and Cook Bluff Scenic Reserve

The natural values, outstanding coastal landscapes and natural features of these reserves are protected, and cherished by Hauraki Whānui, visitors, the local community and concessionaires. Cathedral Cove remains a popular destination in this Place. Access is by walking tracks, or by boat through the Marine Reserve. The track system is managed as an Icon destination, and weaves through restored native vegetation to the coast. Track design facilitates access and helps to reduce the frequency of visitor encounters. People are aware of the presence of significant natural hazards. Visitors to Cathedral Cove and Mares Leg Cove expect to encounter other visitors, including land- and water-based guided tours, motorised and non-motorised watercraft, and independent visitors, especially during the peak visitor season. Gemstone Bay, Stingray Bay and the coastline to the northwest of Cathedral Cove (Cook Bluff Scenic Reserve) offer a quieter, more secluded experience, with fewer people and an absence of commercial activity, apart from the occasional tour group. Commercial activity within the reserve and along the foreshore does not detract from the natural values that prevail, and has a minimal impact on the natural setting and the experiences of others.

Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve

Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve is maintained or restored to a natural state as far as possible. Marine life is thriving, and research and monitoring has led to increased knowledge about the status of the marine ecosystem and species. The Marine Reserve is a popular hub for water-based recreation within this Place and is recognised as a best practice model for marine education. Users respect biodiversity values within the reserve, and conflict between users is minimal. People visit the reserve to experience and learn about marine ecosystems. Land-based access and interpretation is provided from Hahei Beach and Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve, and the Gemstone Bay snorkel trail connects visitors to the marine ecosystem. The community, iwi, visitors and concessionaires benefit from the Department's cooperative approach to reserve management that reduces user conflict and minimises adverse effects on marine values and the adjacent Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve.

Mahurangi Island Recreation Reserve

Mahurangi Island (Goat Island) is a biodiversity 'showcase' island destination, on which recreation and conservation occur in close proximity to each other. Free of

introduced mammals, the island supports healthy populations of threatened and at risk birds, plants and wētā, and is an important site for the reintroduction of other threatened and at risk flora and fauna. Biosecurity ensures that the risks of pest incursions are minimised. Restored indigenous forest and scrub habitats cover a large proportion of the island. The public enjoys a small range of island recreation experiences, through day visits focused on walking opportunities in a peaceful, secluded setting. Simple, quality facilities are provided to support these experiences and facilitate access onto the island. The island walking track immerses visitors in the natural, historic and cultural values of the island. The island is also a focal point for interpreting conservation management on other Hauraki Islands. As a centre for conservation volunteer opportunities, biodiversity values on the island are enhanced through restoration programmes, with assistance from the community. Small-scale guided nature tourism and commercial water taxi services enable visitors to access and enjoy an ‘island experience’ and contribute to island restoration.

Hot Water Beach Recreation Reserve

The undulating dune landscape and priority ecosystem provides an intact natural and scenic backdrop to Hot Water Beach. This important ecosystem is healthy and functioning with improved natural character. The tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel population is thriving. Visitors enjoy and appreciate the undeveloped natural coastal landscape and peaceful setting, and respect and learn about the dune ecosystem as part of this experience. Infrastructure necessary to protect public safety is located in a small, highly modified area at the southern end of the reserve, to protect natural and scenic values.

10.2.2

POLICIES

- 10.2.2.1 Advocate for, and work with landowners, iwi, local authorities and others to achieve, the protection of the following conservation values within and adjacent to this Place:
- a) the highly valued scenic coastal landscapes, geological features and landforms, including natural character, that underpin the experiences and popularity of this Place;
 - b) coastal ecosystems, including dune systems, beaches and estuaries, and those ecosystems that provide habitat for threatened and at risk species, particularly shorebirds and wetland birds;
 - c) the maintenance of indigenous vegetation cover that contributes to biodiversity, natural character and land stability; and
 - d) marine ecosystems and species in the Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve.
- 10.2.2.2 Work cooperatively and in collaboration with Thames-Coromandel District Council to facilitate integrated management of recreation opportunities and associated infrastructure between sites administered by the Council and the Department.
- 10.2.2.3 Further develop the relationship with Hauraki Whānui, including local marae, hapū and iwi, to enhance their special connection with this Place, particularly with respect to sites of cultural significance and their role as kaitiaki.
- 10.2.2.4 Should not allow the construction of built accommodation within this Place, to protect the natural character and dramatic coastal landscape of this Place.

- 10.2.2.5 Minimise the placement of structures on Te Pupuha Recreation Reserve, and ensure any structures are small scale and blend into the landscape to protect its scenic values, particularly when viewed from the sea.
- 10.2.2.6 May allow aircraft take-offs and landings in this Place, shown as Orange Zone on Map 4, only in accordance with the criteria listed in Policies 16.3.5.1, 16.3.5.5, 16.3.5.6 and 16.3.5.8 in Part Three, and provided that:
- a) there is a maximum of 20 landings in any year across the Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place Orange Zone;
 - b) the activity only occurs on week days between 1 March and 30 November (inclusive) in any year, excluding public holidays; and
 - c) landing and take-off (including hovering) sites are identified during the assessment process.
- 10.2.2.7 Integrate and manage the provision of recreation opportunities and limits and controls on commercial activities in this Place, consistent with the social and environmental carrying capacity of public conservation lands in this Place, particularly Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve, Cook Bluff Scenic Reserve and on Mahurangi Island (Goat Island). To achieve this, undertake a process for this Place, in close consultation with Hauraki Whānui, local authorities, the community, tourism organisations and other interested parties, to establish: (1) carrying capacities; (2) the range and spatial allocation of recreation opportunities and facilities; and (3) limits and controls on commercial activities (in addition to those specified in the following policies). Should any limits or controls specified in the policies in this Place require review, then a publicly notified partial review of, or amendment to, this CMS will be undertaken to amend the controls and limits set in those Policies.

Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve and Cook Bluff Scenic Reserve

- 10.2.2.8 Work cooperatively with Thames-Coromandel District Council, tourism organisations, Hauraki Whānui, adjacent landowners and the local community to facilitate the Department's management of infrastructure, services and the visitor experience at Cathedral Cove.
- 10.2.2.9 Extend the seaward boundary of Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve and Cook Bluff Scenic Reserve to Mean Low Water Springs.
- 10.2.2.10 Consider further restrictions on freedom camping at Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve in consultation with interested parties.
- 10.2.2.11 Manage activities and water-based access in Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve and Cook Bluff Scenic Reserve in accordance with Policies 10.2.2.12-10.2.2.21 for this Place, and subject to Policy 10.2.2.7 for this Place, to reconcile conflicting user demands and to protect natural scenic values and the visitor setting.
- 10.2.2.12 Should confine all commercial watercraft landings and commercial kayak tour landings to the designated Coastal Landing Sites at Cathedral Cove and Mares Leg Cove, as shown on Map 8.3.1, to minimise the disruptions to people using the beach. The Mares Leg Cove Coastal Landing Site should be used as an alternative landing site only when conditions are not safe to land at the Cathedral Cove Coastal Landing Site.
- 10.2.2.13 Should not provide or permit any landing structures for watercraft within the reserves to maintain the coastline as a place of unmodified natural beauty.

- 10.2.2.14 Limit commercial watercraft landings and passenger services (number of concessions, frequency of visits, location and number of landing sites, vessel sizes, and party sizes/number of passenger movements) to ensure that actual or potential adverse effects are avoided, remedied or mitigated so as to protect reserve values and other users (including their experience). Set limits through the process specified in Policy 10.2.2.7.
- 10.2.2.15 Limit commercial kayak landings (number of concessions, frequency of visits, location and number of landing sites, number of kayaks, and party sizes) to ensure that actual or potential adverse effects are avoided, remedied or mitigated so to protect reserve values and other users (including their experience). Set limits through the process specified in Policy 10.2.2.7.
- 10.2.2.16 May seek a bylaw to manage the use of private watercraft within the reserves, such as the number of watercraft landing on beaches, to minimise disruption to people using the beach.
- 10.2.2.17 Should not allow private or commercial use of motorised vehicles (including hybrid land/watercraft) on beaches within the reserves, except as provided for by Policies 10.2.2.12 and 10.2.2.14 for this Place, to minimise disruption to people using the beach.
- 10.2.2.18 Minimise the provision of visitor facilities and other structures along coastal sections of the Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve by concentrating visitor facilities and structures at the reserve car park, and ensuring that those facilities are set back from the coastal margin, to protect the coastline of the reserve as a place of unmodified natural beauty and the scenic viewing opportunities from the reserve car park.
- 10.2.2.19 May allow the commercial provision of visitor information and the sale and hire of goods or services only in accordance with the following criteria, to protect the unmodified natural beauty of the coastline and the visitor setting:
- a) the activity (including mobile vendors) only occurs within or directly adjacent to the reserve car park;
 - b) it complements the visitor experience by being directly related to the public use and enjoyment of Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve and Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve;
 - c) it does not detract from the natural setting;
 - d) it is at a scale that is in keeping with the capacity of the reserve car park;
 - e) preference is given to operators offering a scheduled service to the public; and
 - f) it is assessed in terms of Policy 10.2.2.20 for this Place where the activity involves construction of temporary or permanent structures.
- 10.2.2.20 May allow structures, such as the development of a combined café-type facility and visitor information centre only in accordance with Policies 10.2.2.18 and 16.2.1.5 in Part Three and the following criteria, to protect the unmodified natural beauty of the coastline and the visitor setting within the reserve:
- a) any structures are located within or immediately adjacent to the reserve car park, and sited away from the coastal margin of the car park; and

- b) any structures are sympathetically designed to minimise adverse effects on the surrounding landscape and natural values.
- 10.2.2.21 May allow other activities and events, including organised sports events and filming, only in accordance to the following criteria, to protect the unmodified natural beauty of the coastline and the visitor setting within the reserves:
- a) the activity occurs between 1 March and 30 November (inclusive) of any year, excluding public holidays and weekends⁵²;
 - b) in the case of events that by design or purpose must occur during weekends, they only occur on weekends during the period specified in subsection 'a' of this Policy, excluding public holiday weekends;
 - c) adverse effects on the experience of other visitors, including visual and physical intrusion to the reserve, are minimised;
 - d) the public's right to freedom of entry and access is unconstrained unless it is necessary for their protection in using the reserves;
 - e) adverse effects on natural, cultural and historic values of the reserve are minimised; and
 - f) in the case of filming, the activity is also considered in accordance with the criteria in Policies 16.11.1.1 to 16.11.1.3 in Part Three.

Whanganui-a-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve

- 10.2.2.22 Develop, implement and promote a 'share with care' code of conduct for users of the Marine Reserve, in collaboration with the community, commercial operators, iwi and local authorities, and promote adherence to it by all users of the Marine Reserve.
- 10.2.2.23 Support and facilitate a cooperative working relationship with Te Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve Committee.
- 10.2.2.24 Monitor the compliance of activities undertaken in the Marine Reserve and prosecute alleged offences.
- 10.2.2.25 Promote marine conservation within the reserve via conservation events such as Sea Week.

Mahurangi Island Recreation Reserve

- 10.2.2.26 Manage activities and access in accordance with Policies 10.2.2.27–10.2.2.32 for this Place, to protect biodiversity values and the visitor setting on Mahurangi Island (Goat Island).
- 10.2.2.27 All commercial watercraft pick-ups/drop-offs and commercial kayak tour landings should occur in the designated Coastal Landing Site on Mahurangi Island (Goat Island), as shown on Map 8.3.1, to protect biodiversity values and the visitor setting.
- 10.2.2.28 Provide a landing platform or similar structure for public and commercial use in collaboration with concessionaires and other interested parties at the Coastal Landing Site on Mahurangi Island (Goat Island), to facilitate and

⁵² Consideration outside this time period may be given where the proposed activity is demonstrated to have low impact on conservation/reserve and recreation values, is for a short duration and does not coincide with the busiest times of the day for visitor use and enjoyment.

manage access to Mahurangi Island (Goat Island) and thus protect biodiversity values.

- 10.2.2.29 May allow limited guided nature tourism on Mahurangi Island (Goat Island) only in accordance with the following criteria, to protect biodiversity values:
- a) the activity is directly related to the appreciation of conservation values of the island;
 - b) the activity contributes to island restoration and conservation activities on the island;
 - c) the activity meets the requirements of the Waikato Island Biosecurity Plan (draft);
 - d) the activity is consistent with the Department's Island Strategy (November 2010), or any subsequent strategy, and the island classification for Mahurangi Island (Goat Island) (Open Sanctuary);
 - e) access for commercial activities is by motorised watercraft (e.g. a water taxi service) or kayak only:
 - i) watercraft are able, and of an appropriate size, to moor alongside a small platform;
 - ii) preference is given to operators offering a scheduled service to the public; and
 - iii) public access to the island by watercraft and kayaks is unrestricted by commercial activity;
 - f) a maximum of 55 people visit the island per day with concessionaires.
- 10.2.2.30 May allow the maximum daily limits specified in Policy 10.2.2.29 for this Place to be exceeded for the purposes of transporting volunteers to the island for conservation restoration activities or for holding conservation events.
- 10.2.2.31 Manage island biosecurity in accordance with the Waikato Island Biosecurity Plan (draft).
- 10.2.2.32 Should not allow camping or overnight stays on Mahurangi Island (Goat Island).
- 10.2.2.33 Develop recreational facilities in a manner that does not negatively impact on biodiversity values and restoration.
- 10.2.2.34 Promote recreation and volunteer opportunities on Mahurangi Island (Goat Island).

Hot Water Beach Recreation Reserve

- 10.2.2.35 Manage public access and vehicle use to protect the fragile dune ecosystem and shorebirds in accordance with Policies 16.3.1.6 and 16.3.1.7 in Part Three.
- 10.2.2.36 Investigate reclassification of the reserve to scenic reserve status, to afford more appropriate legal protection to the scenic landscape, sensitive dune ecosystem and threatened and at risk species present.
- 10.2.2.37 Should not allow development, including structures, in Hot Water Beach Recreation Reserve, except as provided for in Policy 10.2.2.38 for this Place, to protect biodiversity values and the intact natural and scenic backdrop.
- 10.2.2.38 May allow limited structures within the designated area at the south end of the Hot Water Beach Recreation Reserve, as shown on Map 8.3.1, to protect

biodiversity and scenic values only in accordance with Policy 16.2.1.5 in Part Three and provided that:

- a) any structure and associated activity is for the purpose of providing an essential service for public safety only;
- b) any structure blends in with the surrounding landscape, is single storey and not visible from the beach, except for that part of a structure which is essential for public safety surveillance of the beach (e.g. an observation tower);
- c) the footprint of any structure and associated activities, including vehicle access, is minimised; and
- d) any structure is located on a modified site dominated by exotic vegetation, and the site landscaped in a manner that restores and enhances ecological values and indigenous species present on the reserve.

10.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 10.2.3.1 Scheduled outputs identified in approved work programmes for the priority ecosystem units located in this Place.
- 10.2.3.2 Scheduled outputs for nationally threatened and at risk species in this Place outside priority ecosystem units for which a work programme is underway (if any).
- 10.2.3.3 A 'share with care' code of conduct for Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve has been developed and promoted.
- 10.2.3.4 Experiential development assessments have been completed for the Icon destination within Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve and Mahurangi Island Recreation Reserve and other popular visitor destinations within this Place.
- 10.2.3.5 Outcomes resulting from the actions identified in Policy 10.2.2.7 have been integrated into operational work programmes and implementation is in progress.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 10.2.3.6 Outcomes resulting from the actions identified in Policy 10.2.2.7 have been integrated into operational work programmes and implemented.
- 10.2.3.7 Visitor monitoring data (qualitative and quantitative) have been analysed and reviewed for land- and water-based activities on public conservation lands in this Place and the Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve.
- 10.2.3.8 Hot Water Beach Recreation Reserve reclassification.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 10.2.3.9 Cathedral Cove Recreation Reserve 10-year vegetation restoration plan has been implemented.
 - 10.2.3.10 The success of outcomes resulting from the actions identified in Policy 10.2.2.7, and the implementation of those outcomes has been reviewed and recommendations implemented.
-

11 Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana Wetland Place

The Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana Wetland Place encompasses the coastal and intertidal wetland of the southern Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana and adjoining public conservation land administered by the Department (refer Map 8.4). Policy direction for this Place focuses on sites managed by the Department and the protection of significant conservation values across the Place, including the integrated management of pressures and threats originating from surrounding catchments and the marine environment. This Place traverses the areas managed under this CMS and the Auckland CMS. Both strategies guide the Department's management responsibilities in this Place.

11.1 Description

The Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana Wetland (hereafter referred to as 'the Wetland') is listed as a Wetland of International Importance under the Ramsar Convention (refer Appendix 16). It is important as an over-wintering site for internationally significant birdlife. The Place also supports threatened and at risk native species, provides important ecosystem services, contains rare landforms, has a rich cultural history, and provides passive recreation opportunities and cultural food resources.

The Wetland covers approximately 7800 ha of intertidal flats and margins on the southern and western shores of the Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana. A large proportion comprises foreshore and seabed within the coastal-marine area that is administered by Waikato Regional Council through the Waikato Regional Coastal Plan. The remaining land areas are in a mix of private and public ownership, with the Department and Hauraki District Council administering pockets of public land along the coastal margin. The Wetland is also part of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park (refer section 7), and close to several regional parks to the west and the Coromandel Forest Park to the east.

Not only is the Wetland one of four coastal Wetlands of International Importance in New Zealand, but it is also one of New Zealand's three most important coastal sites for wading birds, and is identified as an area of significant conservation value in the Waikato Regional Coastal Plan. As an interface between terrestrial, freshwater and marine environments, the Wetland is vulnerable to pressures from both marine and land use activities. The health of the Wetland is inextricably linked to the health of the Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana, the Hauraki Gulf and waterways draining surrounding catchments, including the Hunua Ranges, Coromandel Range and, particularly, the Hauraki Plains. Pressures include eutrophication, sedimentation, contamination, habitat loss, unauthorised livestock grazing, human disturbance and invasive species⁵³; in particular, introduced sedges, spartina and saltwater paspalum (*Paspalum vaginatum*).

The highly productive intertidal flats of the Wetland include features such as shallow estuarine water, mud and sand flats, shellfish beds, sand bars, river mouths, mānawa/mangrove forest, salt marsh and freshwater swamp. Terrestrial margins are comprised of shell banks and grass flats, with the area between Miranda and Kaiāua being one of the world's best examples of a chenier plain, a rare and internationally significant geological landform. Approximately 132 bird species have been recorded within the Wetland, 43 of which are migratory.

Tidal flats, and their margins, provide internationally important feeding and breeding habitat for waterfowl, including game birds and shorebirds, and feeding habitat for approximately 35 000 migratory wading birds. This includes up to 11 000 birds from

⁵³ Brownell, B. 2008: Muddy Feet Phase II: Firth of Thames Ramsar Site gap analysis working paper. Tikapa Kahawai Coastal/Marine Advisory Service, Kaiāua, New Zealand.

the East Asian-Australasian Flyway, a migratory route between the Northern and Southern Hemispheres that terminates at the Wetland. Key species include kuaka/bar-tailed godwit, huahou/lesser or red knot and sharp-tailed sandpiper (*Calidris acuminata*). Threatened and at risk New Zealand migrants such as the ngutuparore/wrybill, South Island pied oystercatcher, pohowera/banded dotterel and poaka/pied stilt (*Himantopus himantopus*) over-winter in the area. Marine habitats within the Wetland and the wider Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana support a diverse fish fauna, including pātiki/flounder (*Rhombosolea plebeian*), rays, sharks and tuna/eels, and marine mammals, such as orca and several other species of whale and dolphin. Marine mammal strandings have occurred on the western foreshore of the Wetland, making this location of particular significance to iwi.

Estuarine wetland habitats support Threatened and At Risk non-migratory species, including matuku/Australasian bittern, mohopereru/banded rail and mātātā/North Island fernbird; and shell banks provide important breeding habitat for the Threatened tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel. Bird and skink species also rely on terrestrial habitats along the wetland margin. In situ protection of birdlife, and habitat degradation within and surrounding the Wetland are important inter-agency management issues. The New Zealand Government is a signatory to the East Asian-Australasian Flyway Partnership, an international partnership aimed at protecting migratory birds and their habitats along this migratory route.

Mānawa/mangrove forests and salt marsh communities provide nursery habitat for fish and support birdlife. Mānawa/mangroves also buffer coastal-marine habitats from the effects of land-based activities such as sedimentation and nutrient run-off. However, increased sediment has led to the expansion of mānawa/mangroves into the roosting and feeding habitats of wading birds, and is thought to be linked to declining trends in several wading species, including ngutuparore/wrybill, pohowera/banded dotterel, curlew sandpiper (*Calidris ferruginea*) and turnstone (*Arenaria interpres*)⁵⁴.

The Wetland and wider Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana provide important ecosystem services by trapping sediment and preventing coastal erosion. These areas have been highly modified by an array of land use practices (e.g. intensive agriculture, mining, landfill development and flood control management) and are particularly vulnerable to the ongoing effects of land use activities on the Hauraki Plains. The Piako and Waihou Rivers deposit significant sediment and nutrient loads into the Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana. Other potential stressors to the Wetland site include sediment contamination linked to historical mining, and wastewater discharges into rivers and the Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana. Aquaculture also has the potential to impact water quality and feeding habitats within the Wetland if it is not managed to ensure conservation values are maintained and protected. Other activities that also have potential to impact on the Wetland and birdlife are illegal vehicle use, freedom camping, the harvesting of shells from the foreshore, effluent and litter pollution, harassment of wildlife by uncontrolled dogs and cats, and disturbance of wildlife by paragliding activities.

Māori traditionally use the Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana as a site for gathering shellfish, fishing and catching waterfowl. There are also significant historic waka voyaging routes throughout the Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana. Many culturally important sites such as pā, kāinga (unfortified villages), middens, terraces, pits and wāhi tapu are dotted along the Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana coast and found within the Wetland. The Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana, including the Wetland, is of great significance to Hauraki Whānui, and maintaining the health of the Wetland, protecting

⁵⁴ Hauraki Gulf Forum 2011: State of our Gulf: Tikapa Moana—Hauraki Gulf State of the Environment Report 2011. Auckland Council, Auckland, New Zealand.

culturally significant sites and recognition of the role of Hauraki Whānui as kaitiaki are key issues for iwi.

Both commercial and recreational fishing take place in the Firth of Thames/Tikapapa Moana, with tuna/shortfin eel (*Anguilla australis*) and pātiki/flounder targeted in or near the Wetland. Recreation activities associated with the Wetland are coastal walking, bird watching, fishing and recreational game bird hunting adjacent to the Piako and Waihou River mouths. Freedom camping also occurs at one location. Basic tracks provide access to bird viewing hides at Miranda and north of Miranda along the coastal margin. The Miranda Naturalists' Trust operates its own shorebird education centre at Miranda, and the Trust, along with the New Zealand Ornithological Society and other interested organisations, plays a lead role in increasing understanding and awareness of the wetland ecosystem and birdlife. Activities led by these organisations include advocacy, protection of birdlife, ecological research and bird surveys. Improved access and on-site interpretation would enhance public use and appreciation of the Wetland.

A proposed continuation of the Hauraki Rail Trail from Kopu to Kaiāua following the margins of the Wetland site is supported in principle by the Department. It has the potential to increase recreational use and enjoyment of this area, and to enhance access to the recreation opportunities at Miranda. The development and management of new recreation and commercial opportunities, including access to the coast within the Wetland, construction of structures, and provision of services and goods to the public, would need to be carefully managed to minimise any adverse effects on birdlife, the wetland ecosystem and the peaceful, undeveloped setting. Inter-agency cooperation and a collaborative approach to managing pressures and threats to this coastal wetland are particularly important given the Wetland's international status and the influence of surrounding catchments and the wider marine environment on its ecological integrity. The Department is committed to working with iwi, other agencies and organisations, landowners, and communities to meet the protection and priority management needs of this Place.

Four programmes important to the long-term preservation of this Place are outlined below:

1. River and harbour catchment management, programmes led by Waikato Regional Council, particularly the Kaimai-Mamaku catchment, Waihou River and Piako River schemes, to reduce sedimentation and nutrient inputs to the Wetland from the Hauraki Plains.
2. The Living Waters initiative in partnership with Fonterra aimed at improving shorebird roosting habitats and reducing sedimentation and nutrient inputs to the Wetland from catchments between Miranda and Kaiāua.
3. The Hauraki Gulf Marine Spatial Plan, which is being led by Auckland Council and Waikato Regional Council in collaboration with iwi, the Department, local authorities, Ministry for Primary Industries and other stakeholders to achieve integrated planning and management of the Hauraki Gulf, including the Wetland.
4. The Hauraki Gulf Forum, which was set up to facilitate integrated management of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park.

Management actions for the Wetland include integrated catchment management to reduce sedimentation and nutrient inputs, particularly from the Hauraki Plains; formal protection of the Wetland; and on-site management to restore and protect important habitats and birdlife, and to remove in situ or adjacent sources of ecosystem degradation and pollution. In addition, ongoing research to improve understanding of the implications of catchment-wide impacts is needed to inform management.

11.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana Wetland Place

11.2.1 OUTCOME

The internationally important Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana Wetland is legally protected, ecosystem health is improving, and bird and marine life are flourishing. Conservation management of this Place is well coordinated and a success story for coastal wetland and marine ecosystem conservation. The area of legally protected land along the coastal margin of the Wetland has increased.

The Wetland hosts a diverse array of healthy wading bird, shorebird and wetland bird populations including migratory species reliant on the Wetland as a migratory flyway site. Threatened and At Risk species, such as the ngutuparore/wrybill and tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel, are increasing in their range. The diversity of wetland habitats present is protected and maintained. Coordinated and collaborative research and monitoring ensures that the coastal ecosystem and the impact of sediment and nutrient inputs are better understood.

The mauri of the Wetland and its value as a 'food basket' is enhanced by all who share responsibility for it. Culturally significant sites and values are protected collaboratively. The coastal wetland ecosystem and birdlife are respected by all visitors to the Wetland and adjacent reserves.

Indigenous vegetation communities and natural character has been restored in collaboration with iwi, territorial authorities, the community and other interested parties at priority sites along the coast. Sedimentation, and nutrient and contaminant inputs to the Wetland are significantly reduced. Decreased sedimentation means that mānawa/mangrove forests are no longer expanding into intertidal areas. The maintenance of ecosystem services, including flood mitigation and sediment containment, has a neutral effect on ecosystem functioning and priority bird habitat.

Invasive pest plants are controlled to low densities at priority sites. Low-impact grazing is used as a tool to manage pest plants on public conservation land in a way that benefits ecological values. Introduced mammalian predators are controlled to low densities by the community to protect indigenous bird populations.

Recreation opportunities are provided in collaboration with local authorities, iwi, interested organisations and landowners. As a well-visited nature tourism destination, the Wetland is a place where people experience vast intertidal flats that are teeming with wading birds in a peaceful, undeveloped setting. Some noise disturbance is experienced adjacent to the Piako and Waihou river mouths during the game bird hunting season. Visitors access the wetland foreshore by foot and only at defined locations to protect the sensitive ecosystem and bird and marine life. Bird hides, viewpoints and strategically placed interpretation along coastal tracks enhance these experiences while maintaining the natural setting. On-site interpretation is integrated with information provided at the Miranda Shorebird Centre and highlights the values of the site, such as birdlife, the coastal wetland ecosystem, cultural values and the chenier plain. Other structures, such as maimai, blend in with the natural character of the Wetland.

Local authorities, iwi, the Department, interested organisations and landowners work collaboratively to manage pressures and threats to the Wetland, particularly those originating from the Hauraki Plains catchment, and areas within and adjacent to the Wetland.

11.2.2 POLICIES

- 11.2.2.1 Advocate for, and work with landowners, iwi, local authorities and others to achieve, a reduction in catchment-wide adverse effects on the Wetland, particularly with respect to:
- a) minimising sediment and nutrient inputs; and
 - b) protecting wildlife habitat, botanical values, hydrological processes and the ecological integrity of the Wetland.
- 11.2.2.2 Advocate for the prevention of aircraft activity within, adjacent to and above the Wetland, particularly low-flying aircraft including paragliding and aerobatics, during important migratory periods, including from early September to the end of March each year⁵⁵ for wading birds.
- 11.2.2.3 Advocate for and work collaboratively with iwi, local authorities, the Hauraki Gulf Forum, the Ministry for Primary Industries and other agencies and interested parties to achieve protection of the Wetland and bird and marine life from adverse effects associated with marine-based activities (such as, but not limited to, fishing and aquaculture) in the Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana.
- 11.2.2.4 Contribute to the development of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Spatial Plan, and harbour and river catchment management programmes led by Auckland Council and Waikato Regional Council in collaboration with all involved and interested parties.
- 11.2.2.5 Work with local authorities, and other interested parties, to facilitate cooperative management of activities on reserves within and adjacent to the Wetland to protect habitat and ecosystem values in respect of:
- a) freedom camping;
 - b) animal pest, including dog and cat, control;
 - c) litter and pollution management;
 - d) shell harvesting on the foreshore and chenier plain;
 - e) vehicle use; and
 - f) pest plant control.
- 11.2.2.6 Support the activities of the Miranda Naturalists' Trust in collaboration with iwi, local authorities, the Hauraki Gulf Forum, and other agencies and other interested parties, and where consistent with the Department's responsibilities.
- 11.2.2.7 Implement New Zealand's obligations to protect the Wetland as a Wetland of International Importance under the Ramsar Convention, and migratory wading bird habitat under the East Asian-Australasian Flyway Partnership in collaboration with iwi, local authorities, the Hauraki Gulf Forum, Ministry for Primary Industries and other interested parties, and in accordance with Policies 16.2.1.6 and 16.2.1.7 in Part Three.
- 11.2.2.8 Secure legal protection of land within and adjacent to the Wetland to protect habitat and ecosystem values, including where such opportunities arise, extension of protected land along the wetland coastal margin.

⁵⁵ The exact date of arrival and departure of migratory birds will vary from year to year.

- 11.2.2.9 Should not authorise grazing in the Orongo Conservation Area and marginal strip (Waitakaruru) adjoining the Wetland to avoid nutrient run-off, and seek to fence these areas to prevent stock trespass.
- 11.2.2.10 In conjunction with Waikato Regional Council, control spartina and investigate options for controlling saltwater paspalum in the Wetland.
- 11.2.2.11 Minimise visitor facilities and structures on public conservation land within this Place, and work with iwi, local authorities, other agencies and interested parties to achieve this at other locations within or adjacent to the Wetland. Any structures on public conservation land should be small in scale, preferably single storey, and designed in a manner that is in keeping with the surrounding landscape and does not detract from the peaceful, undeveloped nature of the Place.
- 11.2.2.12 Should not authorise built accommodation and the hire and sale of goods and services on public conservation land within this Place, in order to protect the peaceful, undeveloped nature of this Place.
- 11.2.2.13 Consider proposals for new recreation opportunities on public conservation land, consistent with the protection of indigenous natural resources and historic and cultural heritage, and work with others to facilitate recreation opportunities, in accordance with the following criteria:
- a) adverse effects on ecosystems, wildlife habitat and protected species, particularly birdlife, are avoided or minimised;
 - b) track and facility development is avoided at ecologically sensitive sites including important bird feeding, breeding and roosting habitats, inter-tidal areas and beaches;
 - c) access to beaches is by foot only, and is managed to minimise disturbance to birdlife and other sensitive values; and
 - d) understanding and appreciation of the Wetland is enhanced.
- 11.2.2.14 Should not authorise motorised vehicle access on public conservation land within this Place, except where authorised as part of a grazing concession, to prevent damage to geological and ecological values, and disturbance to migratory and resident birds and their habitats.
- 11.2.2.15 Should not authorise aircraft landings and take-offs on public conservation land within this Place, shown as Red Zone on Map 4, in accordance with Policies 16.3.5.1, 16.3.5.2 and 16.3.5.7 in Part Three, to prevent disturbance to migratory and resident birds, and adverse effects on the visitor experience.

11.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 11.2.3.1 Three-yearly report on progress and achievements to Ramsar Secretariat.
- 11.2.3.2 Report to East Asian-Australasian Flyway Partnership.
- 11.2.3.3 The Department has contributed to the implementation of the spartina control programme, and options for saltwater paspalum control have been investigated, in conjunction with Waikato Regional Council.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 11.2.3.4 Report on progress in achieving outcomes from the Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Marine Spatial Plan process as it relates to the Wetland and the Department's role in this process.

11.2.3.5 Report to East Asian-Australasian Flyway Partnership.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

11.2.3.6 Spartina has been reduced to a very low density or eradicated, and agreed control options for saltwater paspalum implemented, in conjunction with Waikato Regional Council.

11.2.3.7 Report to East Asian-Australasian Flyway Partnership.

11.2.3.8 Three-yearly report on progress and achievements to Ramsar Secretariat has been completed, and demonstrates the Wetland is well managed and continues to support a range of important species and functioning ecosystems.

12 Freshwater Wetlands Place

The Freshwater Wetlands Place includes the freshwater wetlands of the lower Waikato, Waipa and Hauraki Plains on lands administered by the Department of Conservation (refer Maps 8.5 and 8.5.1, Table 2). The policy direction for this Place focuses both on sites managed by the Department and the integrated management of catchment pressures affecting the values of these freshwater wetlands.

Table 2: Key wetlands administered by the Department of Conservation in the Waikato, Waipa and Hauraki Districts.

<p>LOWER WAIKATO WETLANDS AND LAKES: Whangamarino Wetland Lakes Rotongaro, Rotongaroiti, Okowhao, Kimihia, Hakanoa and Whangape, and Awaroa Swamp Lake Ohinewai, Lake Rotokawau and associated reserve, and Horsham Downs Lakes (Hotoananga Pikopiko, Areare, Komakorau (C), Kaituna (B) and Hurrells (E)) Opuatia</p>	<p>WETLAND TYPE: Peat bog, mineralised swamp, river Lake and marginal swamps Peat lake, peatland, some mineralised swamp Mineralised swamp</p>
<p>HAURAKI PLAINS WETLANDS AND LAKES: Torehape Peat Dome Kopuatai Peat Dome and adjoining wetland reserves and marginal strips</p>	<p>Peat bog, marginal swamps Peatbog, river margins, mineralised swamps</p>
<p>WAIPA PEAT LAKES AND WETLANDS: Lakes Koromatua, Rotopotaka, Serpentine (Rotopiko), Rotomanuka, Ruatuna and Ngarotoiti Moanatuatua peat bog</p>	<p>Peat lake and margins Peat bog</p>

Adapted from Champion, P.D. 1997: An overview of the Lower Waikato/Hauraki Plains Wetlands and issues relating to their management. Prepared for the Department of Conservation. NIWA Consultancy Report DOC80216, Hamilton, New Zealand.

12.1 Description

The Freshwater Wetlands Place is important for its nationally and internationally significant wetlands, nationally threatened and endemic indigenous flora and fauna, unique vegetation, peat land and peat lake formations, game bird populations, historic, cultural and recreational values, and ecosystem services. This Place has special importance with respect to the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River (refer to section 6).

The abundance and diversity of freshwater ecosystems in the Waikato is unparalleled in New Zealand. Important wetland systems within Waikato are the lower Waikato wetlands, the Waipa peat lakes and wetlands, and the Hauraki Plains wetlands (Table 2). These wetland systems contain peat domes, bogs and lakes, mineralised swamps and lakes, and rivers. They evolved in response to changes in the course of the Waikato River and sediment deposits as a result of volcanic activity at Taupo. The vulnerability and continued reduction in the extent of wetland ecosystems in the Waikato is a significant issue for wetland conservation.

Priority sites for wetland ecosystem conservation within this Place are the Kopuatai Peat Dome, Torehape Peat Dome, Whangamarino Wetland, Awaroa Swamp, Lake Rotongaro, Lake Rotongaroiti, Moanatuatua peat bog, Lake Rotomanuka, Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko), Lake Ohinewai, Lake Rotokawau, and the three Horsham Downs Lakes: Hotoananga, Pikopiko and Areare (Appendix 4). Three other national

priority wetland sites are located on private land. The Department intends to seek opportunities to restore these wetlands and other wetlands in this Place in collaboration with interested parties.

Collectively, the freshwater wetlands in this Place are a stronghold for threatened and at risk plants and rare aquatic plant communities in the Waikato. These include plants that are specifically adapted to peat wetlands, such as the Threatened swamp helmet orchid (*Anzybas carsei*) and At Risk giant cane rush (*Sporadanthus ferrugineus*). Highly valued native bird populations are also present, including the Threatened weweia/New Zealand dabchick (*Poliocephalus rufopectus*) and matuku/Australasian bittern, and At Risk mohopereru/banded rail, pūweto/spotless crane (*Porzana tabuensis*) and mātātā/North Island fernbird. These freshwater wetlands also provide important habitat for black mudfish (*Neochanna diversus*) (At Risk) and migratory fish, including galaxiids, and tuna/shortfin and longfin eels (Threatened). Extensive game bird populations are also present, and some wetlands support high invertebrate endemism.

Wetlands provide a number of important ecosystem services, including flood protection (water retention and increased low flows), nutrient filtering and sediment trapping. Peat bogs/domes are also important carbon sinks, as peat formation sequesters carbon. Large areas of Whangamarino Wetland and the Kopuatai Peat Dome make a significant contribution to flood protection. While artificial flood control schemes are beneficial to adjacent communities, they influence hydrological processes in ways that can adversely affect wetland ecology.

Threats to freshwater wetland ecosystems include nutrient and sediment inputs, invasive pest plants, introduced fish, introduced predators and herbivores, peat mining and shrinkage, fire, and modification of hydrological processes (e.g. drainage, flood control, water abstraction and power generation). While peat mining is generally an extractive activity, reducing the height of peat bogs using specialised peat harvesting methods and restoring peat bog plant communities⁵⁶ can, in some circumstances, help reinstate the natural functioning of peat bogs. Such restoration techniques may also assist with the restoration of some peat bogs in this Place, e.g. Moanatuatua and Torehape.

Other management issues include fostering habitat restoration (e.g. boundary fencing, retirement of wetland margins), flora and fauna monitoring, biosecurity, unauthorised recreation structures (e.g. huts) and illegal grazing/stock trespass.

The lower Waikato wetlands and lakes are extremely important to Waikato-Tainui, particularly because of their important function and association with the health and well-being of the Waikato River. The indigenous plant and animal species found within and around wetlands are valuable cultural resources, are considered kaitiaki and are indicators of ecosystem health.

Historically, tangata whenua used wetlands extensively as sources of food and plant materials and rongoā (medicines), as transport corridors, and as places to store and preserve taonga, and to harden tools and weapons. Fishing/eeling camps, resource-gathering sites and pā were located in and around many wetland areas. Historic sites that are managed by the Department are the Falls Road Pā in Whangamarino Wetland and the nearby Meremere Redoubt and Pā, and the Whangamarino Redoubt and Te Teo Teo Pā, which both lie outside the wetland.

⁵⁶ Schipper, L.; Clarkson, B.; Vojvodic-Vukovic, M.; Webster, R. 2002: Restoring cut-over restiad peat bogs: a factorial experiment of nutrients, seed and cultivation. *Ecological Engineering* 19: 29–40.

The value that Waikato-Tainui hold for the Waikato River and the associated outcomes under Treaty settlement legislation, including the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River and the Waikato River Conservation Accord, are closely linked to the wetland systems in this Place and throughout Waikato (refer section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato). Whangamarino Wetland and Kopuatai Peat Dome are also of significance to Hauraki Whānui. Flora and native fisheries continue to be important cultural resources that are sourced from wetlands.

The freshwater wetlands in this Place provide a range of recreation opportunities, including game bird hunting, walking, wildlife viewing, fishing (angling and bow hunting) and water-based activities such as kayaking. These opportunities are not extensively available, and public access to many wetlands is limited. Game bird hunting is popular, particularly at Whangamarino, Kopuatai and many of the lakes in this Place. Improving general public access to the majority of lakes and wetlands on public conservation land, together with developing new recreation opportunities (e.g. kayak trails, walking tracks) would facilitate increased recreational participation. These types of recreation activities are also generally, but not always, consistent with other wetland values, and this needs to be considered as part of management programmes. Improved interpretation of the ecology, history and cultural importance of wetlands could also assist this.

Game bird hunting in wetlands throughout Waikato has resulted in the construction of maimai (hunting stands), ponds and some private huts (maimai or temporary hunting shelters converted into huts for private use, commonly referred to as 'duck huts'). Many ponds and private huts have been modified and constructed illegally (without authorisation). Since 2002, some private huts in Whangamarino and Kopuatai were managed under the Waikato Private Structures Policy (2002), which formerly facilitated their use subject to limited tenure authorisation and specific standards. This Policy has been superseded by the Conservation General Policy (2005). Therefore, the use of authorised private huts within Waikato is managed in accordance with the Conservation General Policy; that is, public use is continued or phased in, or alternatively, the Department will seek their removal (Part Three section 16.5 refers). The Department will also seek the removal of unauthorised private huts. Maimai and other temporary hunting stands with no provision for overnight accommodation or supporting facilities that meet the requirements of Policy 16.2.1.5 may continue to be authorised at the discretion of the Department.

High-priority wetland values, such as peat bogs, peat lakes and kahikatea swamps, are the focus for wetland management. Beyond this, the Department is committed to protecting priority values within the other priority wetland sites already identified, and working with marae, hapū and iwi, local authorities, communities, and other organisations to meet other wetland protection and management needs.

The integrated management of catchment pressures is particularly important given the influence that surrounding catchments have on wetland quality. The Department works with local authorities, landowners, iwi, Auckland/Waikato Fish and Game, business and local communities in this regard. Agreements and actions important to achieving integrated management and restoration of the wetlands in this Place and their catchments, which the Department leads and/or contributes to, include the following:

- The Waipa Peat Lakes and Wetlands Accord 2002.
- The Waikato District Lakes and Wetlands Memorandum of Agreement 2011.
- The Waikato River Conservation Accord between Waikato-Tainui and the Department.

- Catchment and Significant Natural Area programmes led by Waikato Regional Council.
- Partnerships with business and other agencies, such as the Living Water partnership between the Department and Fonterra.
- Local initiatives and actions by landowners and the community to improve wetland health and functioning.

Community restoration projects are associated with many of Waikato's freshwater wetlands. These involve marae, hapū and iwi, the public, landowners and organisations, and contribute to riparian planting, pest plant management, and flora and fauna monitoring. Building on these efforts will be important for long-term wetland conservation.

Hauraki Plains Wetlands and Lakes

Important features of the Hauraki Plains wetland system are the Kopuatai Peat Dome, Torehape Peat Dome, and the Piako, Waihou, Miranda and Waitoa Rivers. This wetland system provides diverse wetland habitats for threatened and at risk plants and wildlife, particularly rare plant communities, native fish and birdlife.

Kopuatai

Kopuatai Peat Dome is recognised under the Ramsar Convention as a Wetland of International Importance for its botanical values. At 9300 ha, Kopuatai is the most intact and largest peat dome/restiad bog in the Southern Hemisphere. The peat dome is surrounded by mineralised wetland, and Kopuatai is important for maintaining genetic and ecological diversity. It supports diverse birdlife, native fish and Threatened plants, including the endemic orchid *Calochilus robertsonii*, the giant wire rush (*Sporadanthus ferrugineus*) and bog clubmoss (*Lycopodiella serpentina*), as well as black mudfish and the native moth *Houdinia flexilissima*.

This wetland contains plant fossils and other evidence of geological processes, including coal formation, sea level fluctuation and climate change, which are of landscape and geological significance, and important for scientific research. The wetland and associated waterways are part of the Piako Flood Protection Scheme, and Kopuatai is used as a ponding area as part of this scheme. Public access to the core peat bog is carefully managed to minimise impact on this sensitive ecosystem, and game bird hunting is popular within the mineralised wetlands surrounding the peat bog. Protection of the peat bog and associated values is the highest priority for Kopuatai, while maintenance of ecological and hydrological processes, flood control management, animal pest and wild animal and pest plant control, livestock exclusion, and riparian planting/habitat enhancement are other important management issues.

Torehape

The Department administers 654 ha of the Torehape Peat Dome on the Hauraki Plains (the Torehape Wetland Management Reserve). Although modified, this peat dome provides important habitat for native flora and fauna including the At Risk māātātā/North Island fernbird. Land use practices adjacent to the reserve include farming and peat mining. Management issues are similar to Kopuatai and include maintenance and restoration of the peat bog ecosystem (including hydrological processes) and wetland habitats, livestock exclusion and pest plant and animal pest and wild animal control. The Department may consider the use of specialist peat mining and re-vegetation methods as a restoration technique for Torehape.

Lower Waikato Wetlands and Lakes

The lower Waikato wetlands include Whangamarino Wetland, the lower Waikato, Maramarua and Whangamarino Rivers, and a series of swamps and lakes between Mercer and Hamilton. The Department manages seven mineralised lakes, eight peat lakes and a number of other wetlands, including rare kahikatea swamp forest at Awaroa (Table 2). Most of the mineralised lakes and peat lakes are degraded. Management issues include management of water quality and hydrological processes, stock exclusion and plant and animal pest (including pest fish) and wild animal control and revegetation. Working collaboratively with others will be important to the successful management of these wetlands. In particular, the commencement of new restoration efforts and continuation of existing projects will improve the ecological integrity and habitat quality of these wetlands.

Whangamarino Wetland

Recognised under the Ramsar Convention as a Wetland of International Importance for its outstanding wetland bird populations, the 7290 ha Whangamarino Wetland consists of a mosaic of wetland types, including peat bogs, fens, and mineralised swamps and rivers. It supports diverse plant life and wildlife, including an estimated 20% of the New Zealand population of matuku/Australasian bittern, unique native vegetation including the Threatened bog clubmoss and swamp helmet orchid, and the At Risk stout water milfoil (*Myriophyllum aquaticum*).

Whangamarino Wetland is part of the Department's national Arawai Kākāriki wetland restoration programme, which aims to maintain and enhance wetland ecosystems in an adaptive management framework. It is also of particular cultural significance to Waikato-Tainui hapū, and surrounding marae: Maurea, Horahora, Waikare, Matahuru, Taniwha-Tangoao and Okarea. Several adjoining wetland reserves are managed by the Auckland/Waikato Fish and Game Council, primarily for waterfowl habitat. This wetland is also an important fishery for native and introduced fish species.

The Whangamarino Historic Walkway and the Falls Road Pā provide viewpoints from which visitors can observe the wetland landscape, and present opportunities for interpretation of the history and the natural and cultural heritage of Whangamarino Wetland.

Protection of the peat bog and associated values is the highest priority for Whangamarino Wetland. Obtaining management responsibility for the beds of the Whangamarino and Maramarua Rivers that fall within the boundary of the wetland would enable better-integrated management of the wetland. The Department uses selective burning as a management tool in Whangamarino Wetland to protect the habitat of the Threatened swamp helmet orchid. Other key management issues are:

- protecting and maintaining water quality and hydrological processes (especially with respect to the impact of the Lower Waikato Flood Protection Scheme, which includes a large part of the wetland).
- controlling pest plants and animals.
- managing recreation opportunities that are consistent with ecosystem priorities, and working with the community, iwi and other agencies to encourage involvement in restoration of the wetland.
- adopting land management practices on private land that complement the management and restoration of this site.

Lakes Rotongaro and Rotongaroiti

Shallow eutrophic lakes on the Waikato River flood plain, Lakes Rotongaro and Rotongaroiti, provide good wetland habitat for waterfowl and waders. Management issues include restoration of wetland margins, pest plant control, stock exclusion and management of water quality and quantity.

Awaroa Swamp

A mineralised swamp in the margins of Lake Whangape, Awaroa Swamp supports remnant wetland forest, including stands of kahikatea. Management issues include revegetation, stock and deer exclusion and pest plant control.

Lake Ohinewai

Lake Ohinewai is a peat lake on the Waikato River flood plain that provides wetland habitat for wetland birds and waterfowl. Management issues are similar to the other lower Waikato wetlands.

Lake Rotokawau

Lake Rotokawau is a peat lake with areas of peat bog and semi-mineralised wetland. It supports populations of Threatened and At Risk species, including the threatened matuku/Australasian bittern and black mudfish, and peat plant communities. Management issues are similar to Lakes Rotoangaro and Rotongaroiti.

Lakes Areare, Hotoananga and Pikopiko

Lakes Hotoananga (9 ha), Pikopiko (6 ha) and Areare (40 ha) are shallow eutrophic peat lakes. They are part of a group of eight peat lakes known as the Horsham Downs Lakes, six of which are administered by the Department. These lakes provide habitats for a range of wetland species including waterfowl and waders. The surrounding catchment includes a mix of agricultural land use and lifestyle blocks. Lake Areare, the largest and deepest of these lakes, is a focal site for the Waikato District Lakes and Wetlands Memorandum of Agreement partnership and the Living Water partnership between the Department and Fonterra. Both programmes are working toward restoration of this important lake, and have a strong catchment focus. Lakes Hotoananga and Pikopiko are also priorities for restoration.

Waipa Peat Lakes and Wetlands

The Waipa peat lakes and wetlands are good examples of the wetland type, and are the largest group of peat lakes in the country. The Department manages six of the seventeen lakes (Table 2). Although these lakes are surrounded and have been modified by intensive agricultural land use, peat values are retained.

Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko)

Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko) is a small complex of three highly valued peat lakes that formed from a single lake when surrounding land was drained for agricultural use. Although modified, the lakes are important for the presence of relatively intact submerged and rare native vegetation communities, including the Threatened water brome (*Amphibromus fluitans*). Bird species present include the matuku/Australasian bittern, spotless crake and mātātā/North Island fernbird. These lakes have the highest water quality of all the Waipa peat lakes that are administered by the Department. Picnicking and walking opportunities are available at the East Lake, and the site also supports cultural harakeke/New Zealand flax (*Phormium tenax*) harvest by local marae, hapū and iwi.

Key management issues are pest plant invasion, impacts of introduced fish, integrated animal pest and wild animal control, peat shrinkage, water quality and achieving consistent management with the adjoining recreation reserve administered by Waipa District Council. Their proximity to State Highway 3 and several population centres presents an opportunity to improve awareness of wetland values. A national wetland interpretation centre showcasing New Zealand wetlands has been proposed at the East Lake and adjoining recreation reserve, and will be managed by the National Wetland Trust. A pest-proof fence has been constructed around the East Lake as part of this project. The Department is supportive of other efforts to protect and restore this lake complex, including catchment-based pest management.

Lakes Rotomanuka and Ruatuna

Lake Rotomanuka is another highly valued eutrophic peat lake, which consists of two lakes connected by mineralised swamp. It is the oldest and deepest peat lake in the Waikato, and supports important aquatic native plant communities, including the Threatened yellow bladderwort (*Urticularia australis*), and native fish populations. In places, the lake is surrounded by thick peat. The lake margin is accessible by foot, but recreation opportunities are limited. The management of introduced fish, pest plants, peat shrinkage, water levels and water quality, and restoration of vegetation, are priorities. Lake Rotomanuka is also a site in the Living Water partnership programme and a priority for restoration both under the Department's ecosystem prioritisation process and the Waipa District Lakes and Wetland Accord.

Lake Ruatuna is a shallow eutrophic peat lake with similar values and management issues as the other Waipa peat lakes, particularly Lake Rotomanuka. Lake Ruatuna is also a priority for restoration under the same partnerships and programmes as Lake Rotomanuka

Moanatuatua

The 74 ha Moanatuatua peat dome is the last remaining remnant peat bog within proximity to Hamilton and is surrounded by agricultural land use. It has high scientific values and supports a range of flora and fauna, including waterfowl, wading birds and black mudfish. Management issues include management of water levels, pest plants and impacts of surrounding land use. Moanatuatua is a priority site for restoration.

12.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Freshwater Wetlands Place

12.2.1 OUTCOME

The lower Waikato, Waipa and Hauraki Plains are recognised for their diversity and range of wetland habitats, and complex hydrological systems. The internationally significant wetlands of Kopuatai and Whangamarino are a success story, modelling best practice wetland protection and restoration, and, along with other priority and associated wetlands, are in a healthy functioning state.

Other wetlands are maintained and restored to ensure no further loss or degradation in collaboration with iwi, local authorities and other organisations. Populations of indigenous wetland flora and fauna, native fisheries, and nationally Threatened and At Risk species such as the matuku/Australasian bittern are thriving. Game bird populations are managed, in collaboration with Auckland/Waikato Fish and Game, to avoid adverse effects on indigenous ecosystems and species.

The restoration of wetland sites and partnerships between the Department and iwi and other agencies within the Waikato River catchment have contributed towards

achieving the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River—to restore its health and well-being for future generations. Positive working relationships with Waikato-Tainui and Hauraki Whānui foster the collaborative management of wetland values of common interest. Cultural practices and Waikato mātauranga o nga reporepo (local knowledge regarding wetlands) are recognised and supported. Kaitiakitanga is actively practised by hau kāinga⁵⁷ and is supported as part of wetland management and advocacy.

Animal threats in this Place are managed to improve ecosystem function and natural character in collaboration with local authorities, marae, hapū and iwi, communities and other interested parties. Pest fish are contracting in their range and have been eradicated from priority sites. The wetlands are free of pigs and deer, and stock is excluded from vulnerable areas. Other introduced mammals are reduced in abundance.

Research and monitoring inform the effective management of wetland species and ecosystems.

Integrated catchment management contributes to improved wetland functioning and health and is achieved through collaborative management agreements and restoration programmes between the Department, landowners, local authorities, marae, hapū and iwi, communities, and Auckland/Waikato Fish and Game Council.

Sedimentation and nutrient inputs to wetlands have reduced. Wetland margins on public conservation land provide a buffer between wetlands and surrounding land uses, and the extent of wetland buffers on privately owned wetland margins has increased. Hydrological processes are functioning well across all wetlands in this Place.

Highly valued sites that are associated with the cultural and historic use of wetlands, such as pā, are protected, and their stories are shared in collaboration with marae, hapū and iwi, and other agencies.

Wetlands are destinations that are highly valued by the local community and recreation activities are undertaken in harmony with ecological values. Visitors experience and enjoy wetlands through a range of passive and active recreational pursuits, including walking, game bird hunting and kayaking, and visiting well-interpreted sites. The visitor experiences a sense of appreciation for wetlands, and leaves with a greater understanding of wetland ecology, cultural values and history. Quality facilities and increased foot access to wetlands enhance these experiences. Wetlands provide peaceful settings, with only occasional intrusion from motorised watercraft or aircraft (such as immediately before and during the game bird hunting season, when the use of motorised watercraft may be more frequent).

Game bird hunting largely occurs away from the most popular recreation sites, with encounters most likely during the opening of the game bird hunting season. Structures are located unobtrusively in the landscape and are sited away from ecologically sensitive sites.

People understand and appreciate the unique values and ecosystem services associated with wetlands. They hold a sense of ownership for wetlands, and contribute to wetland management and restoration by leading local wetland restoration projects. Wetland care groups have been established for lakes that are priorities for restoration. Events celebrating wetland conservation, such as World Wetland Day, are well attended and facilitate increased participation in and understanding of wetland conservation.

⁵⁷ Meaning: home people of that place.

Kopuatai

Kopuatai is valued nationally as a natural landscape feature and internationally for its biodiversity values, which are protected and enhanced above other values and uses. Research has improved understanding about wetland ecosystem functioning, while minimising adverse effects on the sensitive peat bog. Recreation activities, particularly game bird hunting, are centred on mineralised wetland areas. Access to the wetland is provided at selected locations to protect the sensitive peat bog ecosystem. The management of hydrological systems, including flood control, has a positive or neutral effect on ecological values.

Torehape

Restoration of Torehape Peat Dome has commenced, including the re-establishment of vegetation communities and ecologically sustainable hydrological processes.

Whangamarino Wetland

Whangamarino Wetland is internationally significant and renowned for on-site wetland research-by-management and restoration. Wetland birdlife and native plant communities are diverse, well managed and increasing. The nationally important populations of the Threatened swamp helmet orchid and matuku/Australasian bittern are thriving. The management of hydrological systems, including for flood control, enhances or has a neutral effect on ecosystem functioning. Popular coarse fishing opportunities help to benefit wetland restoration, and culturally important fish and plant species, such as tuna/eel, are thriving.

Knowledge gained from the Arawai Kākāriki Wetland Restoration Programme has advanced the management and restoration of this wetland, and increased community involvement and understanding of wetland values. Visitors enjoy diverse recreation opportunities and improved access to the wetland, and information about wetland values is readily available. The locally treasured Te Teo Teo Pā and Meremere Pā are actively conserved, with Te Teo Teo Pā a part of the Whangamarino Historic Walkway. Visitors enjoy the wetland scenery and learn about its history and natural values at Te Teo Teo Pā and Falls Road Pā.

Lakes Rotongaro, Rotongaroiti, Ohinewai, Rotokawau, Areare, Hotoananga and Pikopiko, and Awaroa Swamp

The priority ecosystem units of Lakes Rotongaro, Rotongaroiti, Ohinewai, Rotokawau, Areare, Hotoananga and Pikopiko, and Awaroa Swamp are showcase sites for restoration of peat and mineralised wetlands on the Waikato River flood plain and the Hamilton Basin. Wetland and margin vegetation communities are recovering and birdlife and freshwater fish populations increasing. Pest plants and animal pests have greatly reduced. Water quality is improving as a result of collaborative catchment management programmes and restoration programmes, particularly at Lake Areare.

Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko)

Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko) is a national priority ecosystem unit for peat wetland and threatened plant conservation, and a striking natural landscape feature. Ecological integrity is improving, and Threatened and At Risk plant populations, including the water brome, are restored and native plant communities are recovering. Invasive plants, animal pests, and adverse effects from surrounding land use are significantly reduced, and introduced pest fish are eradicated in collaboration with interested parties. In particular, animal pests have been eradicated from East Lake and surrounds by the National Wetland Trust and other interested parties. Local iwi undertake ecologically sustainable cultural harvest of harakeke/New Zealand flax. Lake

Serpentine (Rotopiko) is an accessible place for experiencing and learning about wetlands. Recreational experiences centre on short walks, which have interpretation of wetland biodiversity and cultural values. The management of wetland values and recreation opportunities is coordinated with Waipa District Council and the National Wetland Trust. Any structures blend into the landscape.

Lakes Rotomanuka and Ruatuna

Lakes Rotomanuka and Ruatuna are healthy examples of peat lake ecosystems. Native fish and aquatic vegetation, including the nationally Threatened yellow bladderwort at Lake Rotomanuka, are increasing, and riparian vegetation communities have been restored through collaborative restoration efforts.

Moanatuatua

Restoration of Moanatuatua peat bog has commenced, including the re-establishment of vegetation communities and ecologically sustainable hydrological processes.

12.2.2

POLICIES

- 12.2.2.1 Implement the mechanisms outlined in the Waikato River Conservation Accord and its implementation strategy as they apply to this Place, in accordance with the objectives in section 6 (Part One) of this CMS, to achieve the Vision and Strategy to restore and protect the health and well-being of the Waikato River.
- 12.2.2.2 Advocate and work with landowners, local marae, hapū, iwi, local authorities and others, to reduce the impact of catchment-wide pressures on wetland values, particularly with respect to:
 - a) minimising sediment and nutrient inputs;
 - b) protecting hydrological processes, including water levels and process of inundation;
 - c) excluding stock from wetlands and lakes; and
 - d) controlling pest plants and animals.
- 12.2.2.3 Share information, identify priorities and collaborate on the management of wetlands in this Place with partners to the Waikato District Lakes and Wetlands Agreement and Waipa Peat Lakes and Wetlands Accord.
- 12.2.2.4 Develop ecosystem restoration programmes, in consultation with interested parties, for Whangamarino Wetland and Kopuatai, in line with ecosystem restoration priorities and obligations under the Ramsar Convention.
- 12.2.2.5 Develop ecosystem restoration programmes, in consultation with interested parties, for Lakes Rotongaro, Rotongaroiti, Ohinewai, Rotokawau, Areare, Hotoananga, Pikopiko, Rotomanuka and Ruatuna, Awaroa Swamp, Moanatuatua peat bog and Torehape Peat Dome, in line with ecosystem restoration priorities.
- 12.2.2.6 Review the Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko) restoration plan in collaboration with Waipa District Council, local marae, hapū, iwi and the National Wetland Trust.
- 12.2.2.7 Implement New Zealand's obligations to protect Whangamarino Wetland and Kopuatai as Wetlands of International Importance under the Ramsar Convention in accordance with Policy 16.2.1.6 in Part Three.

- 12.2.2.8 Identify priority wetland restoration projects that marae, hapū and iwi, communities, business, and other interested parties can collaborate with the Department on or lead.
- 12.2.2.9 Undertake a cultural assessment to identify significant cultural sites at wetlands in collaboration with local marae, hapū and iwi and provide for the protection, use, access to and enhancement of those sites, as specified in Treaty settlement legislation, the Waikato River Conservation Accord and Conservation Accord Implementation Strategy, and any other Treaty settlement mechanisms.
- 12.2.2.10 Undertake an assessment of taonga species within wetland sites in collaboration with local marae, hapū and iwi, to enable more effective planning for their management and protection.
- 12.2.2.11 Increase understanding and appreciation of wetlands in this Place in collaboration with local authorities, local marae, hapū, iwi, the National Wetland Trust and other interested parties.
- 12.2.2.12 Seek transfer of the administration responsibilities for the bed of the Whangamarino and Maramarua Rivers within Whangamarino Wetland from Land Information New Zealand to the Department, to enable their management as part of the wetland reserve.
- 12.2.2.13 Seek formal agreements or collaborative initiatives, such as Memoranda of Understanding (MOU), with Waikato Regional Council in relation to the management of wetland catchments, including flood control schemes on the Piako River and Lower Waikato River System, to improve the function and health of wetlands.
- 12.2.2.14 Retire public conservation land in and around the wetlands from grazing as concessions expire, and consider purchasing or seeking covenants on private land in and around the wetlands, to protect wetland ecosystems and values.
- 12.2.2.15 May allow the construction of ponds for the creation of game bird habitat in modified wetland areas, or areas dominated by invasive species, e.g. willow-dominated mineralised areas adjacent to peat bogs provided that it is consistent with the protection of wetland ecosystems (particularly peat bogs), allows wetlands to function in their natural state, and retains natural character.
- 12.2.2.16 Seek removal of all unauthorised structures, including private huts (duck huts) and encampments, from public conservation land within this Place, in accordance with Policies 16.5.1.2, 16.5.1.7, and 16.2.1.5 in Part Three.
- 12.2.2.17 Manage authorised⁵⁸ private accommodation, including authorised private huts (duck huts) and encampments, on public conservation land within this Place in accordance with Policies 16.5.1.1 to 16.5.1.7 in Part Three, and the following criteria:
- a) must be available for public use outside the game bird hunting season;
 - b) must comply with local authority building requirements;
 - c) must not be rebuilt if destroyed or falls into a substantial state of disrepair;

⁵⁸ In this case authorised means authorised at the time the CMS was publicly notified.

- d) must not build ancillary structures, such as storage sheds, adjacent to existing huts; and
 - e) removal of non-compliant structures and buildings.
- 12.2.2.18 Advocate for the exclusion of motorised watercraft use on Lakes Rotokawau, Ohinewai, Okowhao, Koromatua, Rotopotaka, Serpentine (Rotopiko), Rotomanuka, Ruatuna and Ngarotoiti, and the Horsham Downs Lakes (except Hurrells Lake—refer Policy 12.2.2.19) to protect wildlife habitat and indigenous species.
- 12.2.2.19 Should not allow motorised watercraft use on Lake Hakanoa Wildlife Refuge Reserve and Hurrells Lake Wildlife Refuge Reserve, to protect wildlife habitat and indigenous species.
- 12.2.2.20 May seek restrictions and conditions on the use of watercraft on public conservation lands and waters in this Place, to protect wildlife habitat and indigenous species.
- 12.2.2.21 Advocate for limited motorised watercraft use on other public conservation lands and waters in this Place and seek consideration of motorised watercraft use on the following basis:
- a) it is for recreation use only, including for the provision of support vessels at special events;
 - b) in the case of recreation access, it is for recreation access to sites that would otherwise be inaccessible by other means; and
 - c) wake and noise are minimised, particularly close to sensitive wildlife habitat.
- 12.2.2.22 Should not allow aircraft landings and take-offs within Moanatuatua Peat Scientific Reserve, shown as Red Zone on Map 4, in accordance with Policies 16.3.5.1 and 16.3.5.2 in Part Three, to protect the sensitive ecosystem values.
- 12.2.2.23 May allow aircraft landings and take-offs at other wetlands within this Place, as shown on Map 4, only in accordance with Policies 16.3.5.1, 16.3.5.3, 16.3.5.4, 16.3.5.6 and 16.3.5.8 in Part Three, with particular regard to maintaining the peaceful nature of the wetlands outside the game bird hunting season.
- 12.2.2.24 May allow peat mining at Moanatuatua Peat Scientific Reserve and Torehape Wetland Management Reserve for the purposes of wetland restoration, provided that:
- a) the activity is demonstrated to achieve wetland restoration outcomes for the site and is consistent with any restoration programme developed for Torehape or Moanatuatua peat bogs;
 - b) adverse effects on threatened and at risk species are avoided, mitigated or remedied;
 - c) the peat mining and restoration techniques used are scientifically proven to achieve restoration of the site;
 - d) natural hydrological processes are re-established; and
 - e) indigenous peat bog vegetation communities are reinstated, and subsequent monitoring demonstrates successful reestablishment of that vegetation community.

Whangamarino Wetland

- 12.2.2.25 Use selective burning as a management tool in Whangamarino Wetland, to protect the habitat of the Threatened swamp helmet orchid.

Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko)

- 12.2.2.26 Work cooperatively with Waipa District Council and the National Wetland Trust in respect of the National Wetland Centre initiative proposed for Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko).
- 12.2.2.27 Consider, in conjunction with Waipa District Council, reclassification of public conservation land and adjoining land administered by Waipa District Council at Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko) to create a uniform legal status across the wetland, e.g. wildlife management reserve, and implement any agreed changes to legal status to enable integrated management of the natural, cultural and recreational values of Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko).
- 12.2.2.28 May authorise structures in Lake Serpentine Wildlife Management Reserve for a National Wetland Centre, in accordance with the criteria in Policy 16.2.1.5 in Part Three, provided that:
- a) adverse effects on hydrological processes and wetland flora and fauna are avoided, mitigated or remedied;
 - b) structures, including buildings, are of a size, scale and design that is in keeping with the setting and surrounding landscape;
 - c) buildings are only located on modified areas; and
 - d) any goods and services provided in association with the National Wetland Centre relate to the appreciation of wetlands and the Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko), and complement the visitor experience.

12.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 12.2.3.1 Scheduled outputs identified in approved work programmes for the following priority ecosystem unit located in this Place: Whangamarino Wetland⁵⁹.
- 12.2.3.2 Scheduled outputs for nationally Threatened and At Risk species in this Place for which a work programme is underway: the moth (*Houdinia flexilissima*) and the bog clubmoss.
- 12.2.3.3 Ecosystem restoration programmes for Whangamarino Wetland, Kopuatai and Lakes Areare, Rotomanuka and Ruatuna have been developed in line with priority ecosystem unit work programmes and implementation has commenced.
- 12.2.3.4 Review of the Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko) Restoration Plan has been completed in line with priority ecosystem unit work programmes.
- 12.2.3.5 Three-yearly report to Ramsar Secretariat on progress and achievements at Whangamarino and Kopuatai wetlands.
- 12.2.3.6 At least one formal collaborative initiative, e.g. MOU, has been developed with iwi, communities or business for the restoration of wetlands, particularly at priority ecosystem units.

⁵⁹ The Whangamarino wetland is also a priority site for the swamp helmet orchid.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 12.2.3.7 Restoration programmes for Lakes Rotongaro, Rotongaroiti, Ohinewai, Rotokawau, Hotoananga and Pikopiko, Awaroa Swamp, Moanatuatua peat bog and Torehape Peat Dome, have been developed in line with priority ecosystem unit work programmes and implementation has commenced.
- 12.2.3.8 The transfer of riverbeds within Whangamarino Wetland from Land Information New Zealand to the Department has been gazetted.
- 12.2.3.9 Stock has been excluded from vulnerable areas of Whangamarino Wetland.
- 12.2.3.10 Introduced fish species (rudd (*Scardinius erythrophthalmus*), goldfish (*Carassius auratus*) and catfish (*Ameiurus nebulosus*)) have been controlled to low densities and/or eradicated from Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko).
- 12.2.3.11 Unauthorised structures and buildings (including unauthorised private accommodation) have been removed from this Place.
- 12.2.3.12 Additional formal collaborative initiatives, e.g. MOU, have been developed with iwi, communities or business for the restoration of wetlands, particularly at priority ecosystem units.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 12.2.3.13 Stock has been excluded from all riparian and other sensitive freshwater ecosystems on public conservation lands within this Place.
 - 12.2.3.14 Formed public foot access has been developed to inaccessible wetlands on public conservation land, particularly Lake Rotongaro and selected sites at Kopuatai.
 - 12.2.3.15 Restoration programmes have been implemented at Whangamarino, Kopuatai, and Lakes Areare, Rotomanuka, Ruatuna and Serpentine (Rotopiko), and programmes are in progress at other wetlands.
 - 12.2.3.16 Three-yearly report on progress and achievements to Ramsar Secretariat has been completed and demonstrates that Whangamarino Wetland and Kopuatai are well managed and continue to support a range of important species and functioning ecosystems.
-

13 Karioi to Whareorino Place

The Karioi to Whareorino Place covers an area from Raglan to Awakino, and encompasses Mt Karioi, Pirongia Mountain, Wairēinga/Bridal Veil Falls, Te Kauri Park, Tawarau Forest and the Herangi Range (refer Maps 8.6 and 8.6.1). The policy direction for this Place focuses on land managed by the Department, as well as integrated management of the values and pressures originating off public conservation lands.

This Place includes four discrete areas, each with specific management needs:

- Mt Karioi and Te Toto Gorge
- Wairēinga/Bridal Veil Falls
- Pirongia Mountain
- Te Kauri-Tawarau-Whareorino

13.1 Description

The Karioi to Whareorino Place is valued as a large, though fragmented, indigenous forest corridor. It harbours threatened and at risk flora and fauna, a diverse cultural history, and many recreation opportunities. This Place also has significant geological features and landscapes, including internationally renowned karst features and an outstanding coastal volcanic landscape.

This Place is characterised by widespread pastoral farming and rugged hill country catchments that drain to the west coast and inland Waikato. Large blocks of protected indigenous forest include Pirongia Forest Park, Tawarau Conservation Area and Whareorino Forest. The indigenous forest corridor is important for species dispersal, and provides a range of ecosystem services, particularly water and soil conservation, water supply, flood mitigation, and carbon sequestration. Indigenous forests in private ownership link protected areas along this forest corridor, the retention of which is a priority.

Ecosystem types include coastal broadleaf forest, podocarp-broadleaf forest, kauri, montane forest, subalpine bogs and karst systems. Mt Karioi and the Whareorino-Moeatoa area feature intact coastal to montane vegetation sequences to altitudes of 700–800 m. The Department has identified five priority ecosystem units within this Place—Mt Karioi, Pirongia Mountain, Te Kauri, Lake Koraha and Whareorino.

The native fauna includes a diverse forest avifauna, several species of lizard, the pekapeka/long-tailed bat, two species of native frogs, and invertebrates. Threatened plant species include *Dactylanthus taylorii*, *Hebe scopulorum* and species that are specifically adapted to karst environments. Waterways support significant native fisheries, including the At Risk tuna/longfin eel and shortjaw kōkopu. Several rivers and streams, notably Te Toto Stream, Waiharakeke Stream, and the Awakino, Awaroa and Tawarau Rivers, provide important habitats for native fish. Improving indigenous forest health and the integrity of priority ecosystems, and protecting important populations of threatened and at risk species are management priorities.

Possum and goat control is undertaken across many areas within this Place to maintain and improve forest health. Deer are another significant threat to forest health, and so preventing the establishment of wild populations is a priority. Targeted predator control is undertaken to protect threatened and at risk species, and commercial possum trapping and recreational hunting also contribute to animal threat management. Management challenges include sustaining threat management programmes, and preventing the illegal release of wild animals (particularly deer), illegal timber harvesting and unauthorised livestock grazing.

Many significant natural landforms, geological features and landscapes are present, including volcanic cones, karst and fossil deposits. These provide evidence of a varied geological history, and have high aesthetic, recreation and tourism value. Therefore, protecting these features is integral to the character of this Place.

This Place, along with the Waitomo Place, includes one of New Zealand's three major karst areas—Maniapoto karst, which extends south from Pirongia into northern Taranaki. Karst is generally under-represented on public conservation lands, particularly in the North Island and, consequently, the protection of karst features on private land was identified as a government priority in 2007⁶⁰. Many cave systems in this Place are found on private land, which places pressure on the use of caves located on public conservation land.

This Place has a diverse heritage and many significant cultural and historical sites, reflecting a long history of Māori occupation and subsequent colonial settlement. It crosses the rohe of both Waikato-Tainui and Ngāti Maniapoto, who hold strong cultural associations with the area. Archaeological values include numerous pā middens, urupā (burial sites), food pits and battle sites. The Department intends to build on positive working relationships with Waikato-Tainui and Ngāti Maniapoto to enhance cultural heritage management and protection. The Department manages one significant historic site within this Place, a European soldier's grave at Pirongia.

Recreation opportunities include tramping, walking, picnicking, fishing, climbing, caving, mountain biking and hunting. Supported by numerous facilities and tracks, walking and tramping are the most widely available activities. Cave tourism and exploration is centred at Waitomo (refer section 14: Waitomo Place).

Te Araroa—The Long Pathway traverses Pirongia Mountain and other public land to the south. Mountain biking, family-friendly recreation opportunities, short walks and accessible backcountry areas are in demand. Opportunities exist for external parties to provide and complement the Department's visitor services on public conservation lands, especially where the Department is unable to cater for the demands of particular activities. Management of recreational opportunities could also include seeking community-led maintenance of existing tracks to enable diversification, such as mountain biking, or opportunities to be provided elsewhere. The Department intends to manage opportunities and facilities in line with demand and use, and to minimise conflict between user groups.

Concession activity within this Place includes flora collection, controlled livestock grazing, aircraft landing, outdoor education events, one-off recreation events and scientific research.

Integrated catchment management is important for maintaining ecosystem health and associated ecosystem services, such as providing drinking water and minimising erosion. Possum and goat control delivered, initiated or supported by the Department, local authorities, iwi, other land managers and communities is conducted through most tracts of forest within the Karioi to Whareorino Place. Although the driver for the Department's work is primarily biodiversity related, the benefits extend to an improvement in or maintenance of ecosystem services these forests provide. Coordinated management efforts include animal pest and wild animal control

⁶⁰ Ministry for the Environment 2007: Protecting Our Places: information about the Statement of National Priorities for Protecting Rare and Threatened Biodiversity on Private Land. Publication number: ME 805. Ministry for the Environment, Wellington, New Zealand.

programmes, tree and riparian planting, species monitoring and surveying, and advocacy. Seeking the involvement of new parties, particularly in animal pest and wild animal control, will build on these collaborations.

The Department's advocacy priorities for this Place are the maintenance and protection of:

- priority ecosystems
- threatened and at risk species
- ecological corridors
- significant geological features, landforms and landscapes.

Mt Karioi and Te Toto Gorge

The ancient volcano of Mt Karioi (765 m above sea level) and the volcanic amphitheatres of Te Toto Gorge are important features of this coastal section of Pirongia Forest Park and the adjoining Te Toto Gorge Scenic Reserve. The coastal to montane vegetation sequence that covers most of this area includes rare coastal broadleaf forest and has been identified as a priority ecosystem site for the Department. These important forests provide the water supply for Raglan. Goat and possum control on public and private land has substantially improved forest condition, and the Threatened *Hebe speciosa* and Cook's scurvy grass (*Lepidium oleracium*) have been successfully reintroduced to Te Toto Gorge. Several community groups are leading an ecosystem restoration project that could expand into more areas of private and public land on Mt Karioi.

Mt Karioi and the Te Toto Gorge coastline form part of an outstanding coastal landscape of high scenic and aesthetic value. The Te Toto Gorge volcanic amphitheatre is a nationally significant geological feature. A telecommunication structure, which supports telecommunications and search and rescue, is present on Mt Karioi. Maintaining the natural form of these landscapes and geological features by keeping them free from any new structures is a priority.

Mt Karioi and Te Toto Gorge Scenic Reserve are significant cultural landscapes that are of great value to Waikato-Tainui. Mt Karioi is a culturally important tribal landmark and Te Toto Gorge, which was once an important occupation and agricultural area, includes many archaeological sites. Close working relationships with Waikato-Tainui are necessary to facilitate protection, management and interpretation of cultural sites and values.

Recreation opportunities centre on appreciation of the coastal scenery and forests. Facilities include a viewing platform overlooking Te Toto Gorge and the Karioi and Wairake Tracks on Mt Karioi. The Department would like to provide recreation and cultural interpretation opportunities within Te Toto Gorge Scenic Reserve, such as a coastal track. This would most likely occur outside Te Toto Gorge itself, however, to respect the cultural sensitivity of the area. Other potential opportunities include linking Mt Karioi with Raglan township and Mt Karioi with Papanui Point, in collaboration with interested parties.

Wairēinga/Bridal Veil Falls

The 220 ha Wairēinga Scenic Reserve is dissected by an escarpment that has a spectacular 55 m single-drop waterfall flowing over rock of volcanic origin. The reserve is covered with tawa-dominated forest and is important to Waikato tourism, attracting 60 000 visitors each year. Iwi have a close spiritual connection with Wairēinga, which is associated with spirits and kaitiaki known as patupaiarehe (fairies).

The waterfall is a significant geological and scenic feature, and supports unique and fragile ecological values. Habitats within the splash zone of the waterfall are very sensitive to disturbance from human activities. The Threatened orchid *Corybas* “Kaitarakihi” (*Corybas* aff. *rivularis*) is found only within the splash zone of the falls and other as yet undiscovered species could also be present. The Department is working with local authorities and landowners upstream of the reserve to improve water quality of the Pakoka River and water clarity at the falls.

The wheelchair-accessible track, viewing platforms and associated facilities enable a wide range of visitors to enjoy the waterfall, and hunters also use the reserve. The Department intends to minimise interactions and potential conflict between visitors and hunters. Abseiling off the escarpment has been a popular activity in the past; however, significant impacts on the fragile ecosystem led to closure of the reserve to this activity. The Department intends to keep Wairēinga closed to abseiling to protect it from the impacts of this activity and out of respect for cultural values.

The car park is located on a road reserve, which influences the size and scale of visitor facilities available. The Department works with Waikato District Council to maintain these visitor facilities. Given the high level of visitation, the car park also has potential for limited business opportunities.

Protection of the waterfall, its associated ecology and cultural associations, and provision for visitor access are management priorities for Wairēinga.

Pirongia Mountain

Pirongia Mountain (959 m above sea level) is a prominent volcanic cone that is covered with a forest sequence of lowland podocarp-broadleaf to montane forest. It is the highest volcano in the western Waikato and a nationally significant landform and landscape.

A large proportion of the forests on Pirongia have been identified as a priority ecosystem site by the Department. Notable flora includes rare kaikawaka/New Zealand cedar (*Libocedrus plumosa*) forest at higher altitudes and the Threatened *Dactylanthus taylorii*. The Threatened kārearea /New Zealand falcon and pekapeka/long-tailed bat are also present, along with At Risk tuna/longfin eel and shortjaw kōkopu, for which the Mangakara Stream is a stronghold. Threatened species that are no longer present include brown kiwi, North Island kōkako and whio/blue duck. Fencing and goat and possum control, which are carried out collaboratively with Waikato Regional Council, have improved forest condition. These forests provide the source for the Pirongia Village and Te Awamutu water supplies.

Pirongia Mountain was once an important hunting ground for Māori. It is a culturally important tribal landmark of great significance to Waikato-Tainui. The eastern slopes of the mountain are part of the Waipa River and Waikato River catchments, and are therefore subject to the Waikato River and Waipa River Treaty settlements (refer sections 4 and 6).

There is strong community involvement in conservation management at Pirongia Mountain. Community-led stream corridor restoration along the Kaniwhaniwha Stream and predator control on the mountain have contributed to improved ecosystem health and benefited fish and bird populations. The community is also involved with species monitoring and reintroductions. Extending community-led threat management and riparian revegetation beyond the park boundary could expand wildlife corridors and reduce habitat fragmentation.

Pirongia Mountain provides a range of recreation opportunities close to Hamilton City. These include short walks, day and overnight tramps, hunting, trout fishing, and

opportunities for family-orientated mountain biking and camping. Popular destinations include the Mangakara Walk, Nikau Walk, Kaniwhaniwha campsite and Pahautea Hut. The Pirongia Forest Park Lodge has a concession to operate an outdoor education facility that provides overnight accommodation within the Park. Te Araroa traverses the Park and provides additional walking opportunities, and the Pīpiwharauroa Trail (to the north of the Park), provides additional walking and cycling opportunities outside the Park.

The proximity of the Park to urban Waikato increases pressure on recreational facilities and demand for a wider range of opportunities. Therefore, the provision of easily accessible recreation opportunities that cater for a wide range of users is a priority for Pirongia. Options to facilitate this include the new 20-bunk Pahautea Hut opened in September 2014, replacing the previous 6-bunk hut, shared use of tracks between mountain bikers and walkers and seeking community contribution to create new recreation opportunities. Potential also exists to enhance recreational links with the Te Araroa—The Long Pathway route between Pirongia Mountain and Hamilton City, in collaboration with the Te Araroa Trust, New Zealand Walking Access Commission, landowners and local authorities.

Te Kauri–Tawarau–Whareorino

Te Kauri Park, Tawarau Forest and Whareorino Forest are forested conservation areas that dominate the western highlands of the King Country. The highest point is Maungamangero (806 m above sea level) in the Herangi Range of Whareorino Forest. Between these larger blocks of public conservation land is a mixture of farmland, smaller conservation areas, e.g. Awaroa, Hauturu and Taumatotara, and privately owned native forests. Collectively, these forests form a large proportion of the indigenous forest corridor spanning this Place. This area also includes a large part of the Maniapoto karst region.

Most conservation land in the area is covered in podocarp-broadleaf forest. A number of the forests on conservation land have important ecological features:

- Kauri-podocarp-broadleaf forest is at its southern limit in Te Kauri Park.
- Cold montane forest and subalpine cushion bog are found at higher altitudes in Whareorino Forest.
- Mild coastal forest occurs in the Moeatoa–Waikawau area.
- There is an intact coastal–montane sequence at Moeatoa–Whareorino.
- Karst has intact native forest cover at Tawarau Forest—the largest such area in the North Island.

Te Kauri, Whareorino and Moeatoa have been identified as priority ecosystem units by the Department.

The overall vegetation condition of the main forests has improved as a result of regular possum and goat control since the early 1990s. The slow spread of red deer (*Cervus elaphus*) populations is a key threat to these forests, however, and kauri dieback disease, while not present, is also a threat to the forests at Te Kauri Park. The fragmented nature of the conservation land and large tracts of private forest makes community support and collaborative approaches to animal pest and wild animal control particularly important for improving forest health and habitat connectivity in this area. Furthermore, having consistent legal status for this network of protected forest areas would aid management of priority values.

The native fauna includes nationally important populations of the Threatened Archey's frog and At Risk Hochstetter's frog at Whareorino, and pekapeka/long-tailed bat populations. The Threatened kārearea /New Zealand falcon, North Island kākā and

remnant populations of western brown kiwi are also present. The freshwater fish fauna of the area is very diverse, particularly in the Awakino catchment and the short coastal streams draining west from Whareorino. Many of these streams are in good condition and have few barriers to native fish movement. Threatened plants include the coastal forget-me-not *Myosotis petiolata* var. *pansa*, king fern (*Ptisana salicina*), and occasional *Dactylanthus taylorii*. The Awaroa hebe is found only on a few high limestone outcrops between Kawhia Harbour and Tawarau, and is endemic to the Waikato.

A number of remote karst features of geological significance occur through the area, complementing those in the Waitomo Place. These include caves, blind valleys, gorges, bluffs and sculpted rock outcrops, which host specially adapted flora and fauna. In Tawarau Forest, karst features are seldom visited and are a rare North Island example of relatively pristine caves with intact biological and physical catchments. Karst landscapes also occur on conservation land in the Taumatotara Range and Mahoe Forest. Lake Koraha is a unique example of a lake in a karst depression within an intact native forest catchment and has been identified as a priority ecosystem site for the Department. The Karst Management Guidelines (1999)⁶¹ set out the Department's broad policies and actions for the management and protection of karst values on public conservation land. This document will guide management of karst values within this Place and the Waitomo Place (refer section 14).

Tangata whenua have a special relationship with the land, including Te Kauri Park, karst areas and the Herangi Range. Collaborative partnerships with Ngāti Maniapoto Regional Management Committees, marae and hapū and Waikato-Tainui will help ensure appropriate management of cultural values and the protection of wāhi tapu.

Recreation activities in the area include hunting, backcountry tramping and trout fishing. Some mountain biking, wild caving and occasional kayaking (at Tawarau) also occur. The Tawarau River/Mangaohae Stream and Awakino River are valued for trout fishing. Day walk tramping occurs at Te Kauri and Tawarau, while south Whareorino Forest has a network of tracks and a 16-bunk hut at Leitch's Clearing. As a biosecurity measure to protect critically endangered native species, the Department may seek legal mechanisms to periodically restrict public access to northern Whareorino Forest to facilitate its management. Maintaining backcountry access, and providing walking, mountain biking and overnight opportunities are recreation priorities for this area. The Department will work with external parties, including the New Zealand Walking Access Commission, iwi, landowners, community groups and concessionaires, in the provision of recreation opportunities.

The Department has partnered with Waikato Regional Council to manage animal pests and wild animals in many forest catchments between Marokopa and Awakino, including Whareorino Forest. Community conservation initiatives are particularly active at Te Kauri Park, and other community initiatives include community possum control schemes and western brown kiwi surveys. Encouraging community-led conservation initiatives at other sites will be important for long-term conservation gains. The challenge arising is the small population base and having sufficient community resources to assist with conservation outcomes.

⁶¹ Department of Conservation 1999: Karst management guidelines: policies and actions. Department of Conservation, Wellington, New Zealand.

13.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Karioi to Whareorino Place

13.2.1 OUTCOME

The Karioi to Whareorino Place is treasured for its diverse forest ecosystems and habitats, mountain to sea landscapes, unique karst features, and diverse cultural history. It is cherished by communities and visitors alike.

The indigenous forest corridor spanning the length of this Place, including mountain to sea vegetation sequences, is retained, and forest health and connectivity is improving. Priority ecosystems, and threatened and at risk species are thriving. Streams and rivers are protected and enhanced in collaboration with the community; in particular, fish passage is maintained. Scientific research contributes to increased understanding of ecosystem function and threatened species management across this Place.

Catchment-scale animal pest and wild animal control protects ecological values at priority sites. Priority animal threats, particularly possums and goats, are managed to low densities in collaboration with local authorities, commercial and recreational hunters, and the community. Public conservation lands are free of deer and livestock are excluded from sensitive sites.

Natural character and distinctive forest, coastal, volcanic and karst landscapes prevail, and associated natural features are intact and appreciated.

Sites and stories of historical and cultural significance are brought to life. Māori cultural heritage is protected and interpreted at key sites in collaboration with local marae, hapū and iwi, and as a result of positive working relationships with Waikato-Tainui and Ngāti Maniapoto.

Visitors are attracted to the diverse recreation opportunities available. A range of accessible front and backcountry opportunities is available at Mt Karioi, Te Toto, Pirongia Mountain and Wairēinga/Bridal Veil Falls. Opportunities with basic facilities are found at more isolated destinations within this Place, such as Whareorino Forest. Visitors to the backcountry can generally access these areas by foot from nearby road ends and can expect only occasional encounters with aircraft. New recreation opportunities, such as mountain biking, service community needs and are developed in collaboration with user groups, local authorities, local marae, hapū and iwi, communities and concessionaires. Understanding and appreciation of natural and cultural heritage is integral to the visitor experience.

The Department advocates for integrated catchment management, and the protection of significant landscapes, landforms and features, and priority habitats and species. Development and resource use have minimal adverse effects on significant ecological, cultural and geological values.

Motivated communities and interested organisations play a significant role in achieving conservation priorities, including catchment-scale forest, stream corridor and marine restoration, and threatened species recovery. Concessionaire use complements natural and cultural values, enhances knowledge of these values, and contributes to the provision of additional visitor experiences and opportunities.

Mt Karioi and Te Toto Gorge

Mt Karioi and Te Toto Gorge are renowned volcanic landscapes with significant natural and cultural heritage values.

This priority coastal to montane forest sequence is thriving and Te Toto Gorge remains a safe haven for Threatened coastal plants such as Cook's scurvy grass. The Department is working alongside the community, local marae, hapū and iwi and other agencies to enhance the forest ecosystem and protect native wildlife on Mt Karioi. The mountain to sea landscape prevails, with the Karioi skyline and geological landforms free from new structures.

Cultural values prevail in Te Toto Gorge and the mauri of Karioi is enhanced.

Visitors enjoy undeveloped coastal scenery, cultural history, indigenous forest and volcanic landforms, and experience a peaceful forest setting on Karioi. Visitors can expect few or no encounters with aircraft at high elevations out of respect for cultural values, and only occasional encounters elsewhere. New recreation opportunities, possibly including a link track between Mt Karioi and Raglan township and Mt Karioi and Papanui Point, are developed in collaboration with local marae, hapū and iwi, the community, landowners and interested parties.

Wairēinga/Bridal Veil Falls

The popular tourist destination of Wairēinga is retained in its natural form and setting. Fragile ecological values at the falls are protected from adverse effects. Clear and clean water flows over the falls as a result of improved fencing of the reserve, sustainable land management practices and restoration of the river corridor upstream of the reserve. Cultural values and associations are respected and managed in close collaboration with local marae, hapū and iwi.

Visitors experience an accessible and easy bush walk to the falls. They expect few or no encounters with aircraft and infrequent encounters with hunters, who use alternative access to the reserve. Quality facilities provide safe viewing opportunities from above and below the falls. Abseiling does not occur within the reserve, to protect fragile threatened plants. A cultural journey is an integral part of the visitor experience. Visitor facilities and commercial activities at the car park are managed in partnership with Waikato District Council.

Pirongia Mountain

Pirongia Mountain is a renowned landmark where biodiversity values prevail and are flourishing, including the priority lowland to montane forest sequence and the Threatened *Dactylanthus taylorii* and pekapeka/long-tailed bat. Community-led threat management and riparian revegetation contribute to improved ecosystem functioning and protection of indigenous species. Native species, such as the Threatened North Island kōkako, are being returned through community-led reintroductions.

The forested landform of Pirongia and its panoramic skyline remain untouched and intact. The mauri and cultural associations of Pirongia are protected in partnership with local marae, hapū and iwi and local communities. The healthy Pirongia Forest catchment contributes to the restoration and maintenance of the Waipa and Waikato Rivers, and the achievement of the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River and the care and protection of the mana tuku iho o waiwai ā (the essence and well-being of the Waipa River).

Pirongia Mountain is well known for its many recreation opportunities and is a highlight along Te Araroa. People make the most of easily accessible short bush walks, and day and overnight tramps. Visitors enjoy natural quiet in backcountry areas of the Park, and at high elevations can expect few or no encounters with aircraft out of respect for cultural values. A larger Pahautea Hut means that more people, especially family and school groups, are enjoying overnights stays. Managed as a Gateway destination, the Kaniwhaniwha area is a multi-use area for family-friendly walking,

mountain biking and camping. Hunters access the Park using low-use tracks and are rarely encountered by visitors on popular tracks, such as the Mangakara Walk. Potential for new mountain biking and walking opportunities within and linking to the Park is realised in collaboration with users, interested agencies, the community and other interested organisations.

Te Kauri–Tawarau–Whareorino

Te Kauri–Tawarau–Whareorino is valued for its biodiversity and significant karst geology.

Important ecosystem features, such as karst, and priority ecosystem units at Te Kauri Park, Tawarau, Lake Koraha, and Whareorino are thriving. The montane to sea sequence of forests and waterways at Whareorino–Moeatoa are secure and improving in condition. Populations of the Threatened pekapeka/long-tailed bat and Archey’s frog, and the At Risk Hochstetter’s frog are increasing in their range. Unique and endemic karst flora is flourishing, especially the Threatened Awaroa hebe and forget-me-not (*Myosotis petiolata* var. *pansa*).

Te Kauri–Tawarau–Whareorino remains free of kauri dieback disease, and visitors and concessionaires are aware of and actively assist to avoid the introduction of this disease.

The natural form and skyline of the Herangi Range prevails. Karst systems in Tawarau Forest are preserved, with intact forest cover. Low visitor numbers mean that adverse effects on these sensitive cave systems are negligible.

Cultural taonga, values and sites, such as Te Kauri Park, karst and the Herangi Range, are protected and interpreted in collaboration with Waikato-Tainui, and Ngāti Maniapoto Regional Management Committees, marae and hapū.

Front country and backcountry recreation opportunities with few facilities feature at Tawarau and Whareorino. Tawarau Forest tracks provide a more isolated backcountry experience for Waitomo visitors, complementing the more accessible options along the Waitomo–Marokopa road. South Whareorino Forest is managed as a Backcountry visitor destination, with high natural quiet values where visitors can expect only rare encounters with aircraft. To protect biodiversity values, recreational pursuits are actively discouraged in northern Whareorino Forest, along with aircraft use. Te Kauri Park is an accessible front country visitor destination and remains a focal point for conservation education.

Local marae, hapū and iwi, Waikato Regional Council, landowners and the community are proactively involved in conservation initiatives throughout this area.

13.2.2 POLICIES

- 13.2.2.1 Advocate for, and work with landowners, iwi, local authorities and others to achieve the protection of the following conservation values off public conservation lands:
- a) the indigenous forest ecological corridor from north to south along the length of this Place, and the submontane to coastal vegetation sequences, particularly at Karioi and Whareorino–Moeatoa;
 - b) karst systems and associated species, ecosystems, landforms and geological features;
 - c) migratory pathways of birds, particularly shorebirds, and the habitats and airspace used by bats; and

- d) freshwater fish habitat and fish passage, particularly to maintain habitat connectivity and water quality from the coast to the headwaters of waterways that support threatened and at risk species.
- 13.2.2.2 Undertake and coordinate animal threat management and prevent the establishment of deer populations across this Place, in conjunction with Waikato Regional Council, local marae, hapū, iwi, landowners and other interested parties.
- 13.2.2.3 Should not authorise the construction of structures visible along the skyline and on the slopes of Mt Karioi, Pirongia Mountain and the Herangi Range, to protect these significant landscape features.
- 13.2.2.4 Liaise with recreational user groups and the public to identify opportunities for shared-use between walking and mountain bike use on the existing track network within this Place.
- 13.2.2.5 Facilitate the development and maintenance of tracks and facilities in the Place by recreational user groups and other interested parties, through formal agreements and/or the concessions process consistent with desired outcomes.
- 13.2.2.6 Provide guidance to communities on priorities for:
- a) ecosystem restoration;
 - b) threatened and at risk species protection, survey and reintroduction; and
 - c) conservation advocacy and participation.
- 13.2.2.7 Should not allow aircraft landings and take-offs at the following locations, shown as Red Zone on Map 4, in accordance with Policies 16.3.5.1 and 16.3.5.2 in Part Three:
- a) above 600 m on Pirongia Mountain and Mt Karioi, to protect cultural values;
 - b) Wairēinga Scenic Reserve, to protect the visitor setting; and
 - c) northern Whareorino Forest, to protect biodiversity values.
- 13.2.2.8 May allow aircraft landings and take-offs at other locations on public conservation land within this Place, shown as Yellow and Green Zones on Map 4, only in accordance with Policies 16.3.5.1, 16.3.5.3, 16.3.5.4, 16.3.5.6 and 16.3.5.8 in Part Three.

Mt Karioi and Te Toto Gorge

- 13.2.2.9 Identify, in close collaboration with local marae, hapū and iwi, culturally appropriate opportunities to facilitate public access, use and enjoyment of Te Toto Gorge Scenic Reserve, including options for a coastal track development between Raglan and Papanui Point, including links to Mt Karioi.
- 13.2.2.10 Minimise the provision of visitor facilities and new structures within Te Toto Gorge Scenic Reserve, to protect the undeveloped coastal landscape.

Wairēinga/Bridal Veil Falls

- 13.2.2.11 Develop alternative hunting access to the wider reserve in consultation with hunting clubs to minimise encounters with other visitors.
- 13.2.2.12 Seek a bylaw to control abseiling within Wairēinga Scenic Reserve to protect fragile ecological values from unacceptable adverse effects.

- 13.2.2.13 Work with Waikato District Council, local marae, hapū and iwi to facilitate the commercial provision of visitor information and the sale of goods and services in the car park; in particular, seek consideration of whether:
- a) the activities complement the visitor experience;
 - b) the scale and size of the activities, including structures, are of a scale and type that is in keeping with the capacity of the car park and adjoining public conservation land; and
 - c) there would be any adverse effects on ecological and cultural values on adjoining public conservation land.

Pirongia Mountain

- 13.2.2.14 Implement the mechanisms outlined in the Waipa River Conservation Accord and Waikato River Conservation Accord as they apply to Pirongia Mountain, in accordance with the objectives in sections 4 and 6 in Part One of this CMS, to achieve the Vision and Strategy to restore and protect the health and well-being of the Waikato River, and the care and protection of the mana tuku iho o waiwaiā (the essence and well-being of the Waipa River).
- 13.2.2.15 Should only allow independent use of mountain bikes on the Nikau Walk and at the Kaniwhaniwha campsite, in accordance with Policies 16.3.2.1, 16.3.2.2 and 16.3.2.7 to 16.3.2.9 in Part Three.
- 13.2.2.16 May allow guided mountain biking or mountain bike events on the Nikau Walk and at the Kaniwhaniwha campsite only in accordance with Policies 16.3.2.1, 16.3.2.2, 16.3.2.5 and 16.3.2.7 to 16.3.2.9 in Part Three and provided that:
- a) the designated mountain biking route is used;
 - b) it does not involve competitive mountain bike events; and
 - c) the activity is consistent with the track type (i.e. a grade two track is suitable for beginner riders, being predictable with no surprises) and provides a family-friendly mountain biking experience.

Te Kauri–Tawarau–Whareorino

- 13.2.2.17 Manage karst values in this Place, in accordance with Policies 14.2.2.4, 14.2.2.5, 14.2.2.6 and 14.2.2.9 to 14.2.2.16 in section 14: Waitomo Place.
- 13.2.2.18 Seek reclassification of public conservation land between Pirongia Forest Park and Whareorino Forest to achieve a consistent land classification and to provide for the protection of priority ecological values.
- 13.2.2.19 Work with landowners, local marae, hapū, iwi and local authorities to seek retention of a continuous network of forest through encouraging and assisting landowners to retain and achieve greater protection of their forests, such as through Queen Elizabeth II National Trust covenants.
- 13.2.2.20 Change the legal status of public conservation land in northern Whareorino Forest to control public access into this area and to protect ecological values.
- 13.2.2.21 Manage biosecurity in northern Whareorino Forest in accordance with biosecurity protocols developed to protect threatened and at risk fauna from disease threats.
- 13.2.2.22 Undertake actions to prevent the establishment of kauri dieback disease in accordance with Policies 16.15.1.1 to 16.15.1.4 in Part Three.

- 13.2.2.23 Should only allow independent use of mountain bikes on Leitch’s Track and Mahoenui Track (Whareorino Forest); and Speedies Road–Were Road Track and Apple Tree Road–Tawarau Falls Loop Track (Tawarau Forest) in accordance with Policies 16.3.2.1, 16.3.2.2 and 16.3.2.7 to 16.3.2.9 in Part Three and the following criteria:
- a) when using Leitch’s Track, mountain bikers observe biosecurity standards and avoid riding during the hours of darkness to protect nocturnal species; and
 - b) mountain bikers avoid riding the Mahoenui Track during August and September (the lambing season) in any year.
- 13.2.2.24 May allow guided mountain biking on Leitch’s Track, the Mahoenui Track (Whareorino Forest), Speedies Road–Were Road Track and the Apple Tree Road–Tawarau Falls Loop Track (Tawarau Forest) only in accordance with Policies 16.3.2.1, 16.3.2.2, 16.3.2.5 and 16.3.2.7 to 16.3.2.9 in Part Three and provided that:
- a) a maximum limit of ten people per group is set for Leitch’s and the Mahoenui Track;
 - b) the activity meets any biosecurity requirements to protect threatened and at risk species when using Leitch’s Track;
 - c) the activity, where required, only occurs during the hours of daylight on Leitch’s Track to protect nocturnal species; and
 - d) the activity only occurs on the Mahoenui Track from 1 October to 31 July (inclusive) in any year, to avoid the lambing season.

13.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 13.2.3.1 Scheduled outputs identified in approved work programmes for the priority ecosystem units located in this Place.
- 13.2.3.2 Scheduled outputs identified in approved work programmes for nationally threatened and at risk species in this Place outside priority ecosystem units for which a work programme is underway.
- 13.2.3.3 Best practice management standards for kauri dieback disease prevention have been implemented at Te Kauri Park.
- 13.2.3.4 Experiential development assessments have been completed for the Kaniwhaniwha Gateway destination and Wairēinga.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 13.2.3.5 Fencing of Wairēinga Scenic Reserve.
- 13.2.3.6 The classification of public conservation land within this Place has been reviewed, and the feasibility of applying a common legal status over the majority of public conservation land in this Place has been determined.
- 13.2.3.7 Assessment of coastal walking opportunities on public conservation land along the coast from Mt Karioi have been identified in conjunction with iwi, Waikato District Council and other interested parties, and their feasibility.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 13.2.3.8 Changes to classification of public conservation land identified for this Place have been completed, including a change of classification for northern Whareorino Forest.

14 Waitomo Place

The Waitomo Place covers the Waitomo Caves area and the visitor route to the west coast, as well as a number of karst sites in the surrounding area, including Waipuna Scenic Reserve, Hollow Hill Scenic Reserve, Grand Canyon Nature Reserve and Koropupu Scenic Reserve (refer Map 8.7).

14.1 Description

The Waitomo Place contains karst features that have internationally significant natural, cultural, recreational and tourism values. The features of this Place are:

- small fragmented reserves with uncommon remnant examples of forest overlying karst that contains uncommon, threatened and at risk species.
- a suite of well-visited sites from Waitomo Caves west to the coast that are important for tourism and provide many international visitors with their first New Zealand experience of public conservation land.
- caves and other karst landforms of significant natural value, including sites of national and international geological significance that provide the most important recreational caving opportunities in the North Island.
- relationships with tangata whenua and the community that are focused on karst management and tourism.

Mixed podocarp-hardwood forests covering karst were once extensive in this Place, but only small remnants now remain. These remnants are important North Island examples of intact surface and subsurface karst systems that have relatively healthy biochemical and geochemical processes from surface to cave. A number of Threatened species are present, such as the At Risk shrub *Teucrium parvifolium* and the cave-entrance fern *Asplenium cimmeriorum*. Kārearea/New Zealand falcons, a variety of cave-adapted invertebrates and pekapeka/long-tailed bats are also found in these small reserves, with Grand Canyon Nature Reserve hosting one of the largest known populations of pekapeka/long-tailed bats in New Zealand; a smaller population is located at Ruakuri Natural Bridge.

Pest plants and animal pests such as goats, possums and rats threaten these small reserves. At Ruakuri, goats have been removed, and there is a community partnership focused on possum and rat control. Pest plant control protects native plant species at Koropupu, while the exclusion of stock is important at all the small karst reserves.

Caves contain many treasured natural features, such as stalactites and stalagmites, sediment layers from past geological events, and a unique fauna. Many species that are now extinct or regionally absent have been identified from cave fossil deposits, including moa, kākāpō (*Strigops habroptila*), takahē (*Porphrio mantelli*), North Island weka (*Gallirallus australis*), frogs and lizards. Cave features, such as speleothems and sediment layers, are ancient and fragile, and damage is cumulative and usually irreversible. They are also sensitive to catchment-based changes, such as increased sedimentation and changes in water quality. Impacts can include:

- damage to vegetation, and surface and subsurface karst features
- changes to cave microclimates, hydrology and biochemical processes
- disturbance to fauna, and cultural and geological artefacts.

As for section 13: Karioi to Whareorino Place, the Department's Karst Management Guidelines will guide the management of karst values within this Place.

Partnership with iwi groups is important in the Waitomo Place. The caves and lands of the Waitomo area have special value to Ngāti Maniapoto and hapū of Hauāuru ki Uta. Caves embrace the concept of Te Kōpū o Te Whenua (the womb of the Earth Mother,

Papatūānuku). The karst landscape includes urupā (burial sites), pā and battle sites, and preserved Māori artefacts. Opapaka Pā and Ruakuri Caves and Bush Scenic Reserve are examples of sites managed by the Department that are important to local iwi.

The karst landscape provides an important set of visitor sites and recreation opportunities based on landforms and geological features of scenic and aesthetic value. The most popular activities are cave tours, recreational caving and walking. Away from the caves and popular visitor sites, the Waitomo Place includes other recreational activity sites, such as mountain bike trails developed by the local community at Waitomo Forest (Matakana Conservation Area). Te Araroa-The Long Pathway passes through Waitomo Village, and there is also some local rock climbing, hunting, fishing, walking and horse riding.

The Waitomo Glowworm Cave, Ruakuri Cave and Aranui Cave are internationally renowned visitor destinations. These 'show' caves provide an accessible, commercial cave experience for a large number of visitors. The Waitomo Glowworm Cave is managed in partnership by the Ruapuha Uekaha Hapu Trust and the Department of Conservation through a joint management committee. The majority of the cave was returned to the Trust under a negotiated Waitangi Tribunal claim settled in 1990. The cave has a lessee in place operating guided cave tours and the parties meet regularly to progress cave management. Tourism activities at Aranui Cave and sections of Ruakuri Cave on public conservation land also operate under lease/licence to the same concessionaire with similar management arrangements.

The Ruakuri Caves and Bush Scenic Reserve, which is a key site for walking and commercial caving opportunities, receives an estimated 100 000 visitors each year. Black water rafting at Ruakuri is an important part of the local tourism industry, as is the extremely popular Ruakuri Bush Walk. This walk and the Opapaka Pā Walk, in nearby Hangatiki Scenic Reserve, form part of a Gateway destination. The scenic Waitomo Walkway links the Waitomo village with Ruakuri Caves and Bush Scenic Reserve via the Waitomo Glowworm Cave. Further west towards the coast, the Mangapohue Natural Bridge attracts 25 000 people each year, complemented by the nearby Piripiri Cave and Marokopa Falls. Commercial tourist operations are a significant part of the socioeconomic makeup of the Waitomo area. Recreation and tourism opportunities on conservation land need to be carefully sited and managed to protect cultural, geological and ecological values, and to minimise impacts on other users.

Undeveloped or 'wild' caves in this Place are a nationally important recreational caving resource, especially for the North Island. Examples of recreational cave sites are Gardner's Gut Cave, Hollow Cave, Waipuna Cave, Reserve Cave and Puketiti Flower Cave. These wild caves are fragile and extremely vulnerable to the impacts of human activities, and so are carefully managed to minimise adverse effects. Management tools include controlled entry, route delineation, photo monitoring for change, and user group guidance, which includes a requirement for appropriate leadership skills (e.g. qualified guides and group leaders), and restrictions on group size, frequency of visits and visitor behaviours. Some caves have been damaged as a result of use, and the Department intends to undertake cave restoration in collaboration with cave users.

Catchment management is important for protecting and maintaining cave systems, particularly at the Waitomo Glowworm Cave. The Department contributes to the Waitomo Catchment Scheme, which aims to improve stream condition and reduce erosion in the catchment. Scheme activities include fencing to exclude stock, riparian planting, retirement of marginal land, animal pest and wild animal control (particularly goats) and slope stabilisation.

There are a number of sites where reclassification of land status would assist with the management of recreation activities and increase the protective status of fragile, wild cave sites. Other statutory land management investigations could include the renaming of Hangatiki Scenic Reserve (requested by local iwi).

Community and local organisations are a vital part of the conservation, recreation and tourism landscape at Waitomo. The Department works in conjunction with organisations such as the Waitomo Caves Discovery Centre, the Waitomo Catchment Trust Board, the New Zealand Speleological Society and local caving clubs, as well as the Waitomo District Council and the Te Araroa Trust to progress local conservation and recreation. Volunteer programmes are increasing, and there is opportunity for commercial sponsorship of conservation sites and values.

There is strong community interest in enabling the reintroduction of species that have disappeared from this Place (e.g. North Island weka, North Island kōkako and toutouwai/North Island robin), and to undertake animal pest and wild animal control to protect those species and improve ecosystem health. Another community initiative, which is supported in principle by the Department, is the creation of a walkway from Waitomo to the west coast across both private and public lands, utilising existing tracks and facilities, including the Ruakuri walk and tracks in Tawarau Forest (in the Karioi to Whareorino Place).

14.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Waitomo Place

14.2.1 OUTCOME

The Waitomo Place is recognised for its significant karst landscape, special ecosystems and species, cultural values, and tourism and recreation opportunities.

Ecosystem health is improving, especially at Ruakuri and Koropupu Scenic Reserves, and at Grand Canyon Nature Reserve. Stock is excluded and pigs, goats and deer are rarely present. Possums, rats and pest plants are controlled to low levels in partnership with the community, and threatened and at risk species are secure and expanding in their range. Native species have been reintroduced to sites, such as Ruakuri Scenic Reserve, and these initiatives are well-regarded examples of community-led biodiversity conservation.

Karst features and caves, and their associated ecology, and hydrological and geological processes and features, are protected in collaboration with local marae, hapū, iwi concessionaires, recreational caving groups and other visitors. In wild caves, user behaviour respects the caves and cave features, and adverse effects have declined to a point of minimal change. Restoration programmes are underway to remediate past adverse effects. The level of development within the 'show' caves remains unchanged. The impact of cave use has reduced and public safety has improved at Aranui Cave as a result of improvements to existing infrastructure. Coordinated catchment management contributes to cave well-being, with sediment levels continuing to decline and stream biodiversity improving.

Wild caves are visited by groups of a size and skill level that ensures cave conservation and safety, and are taken by experienced leaders. The management of 'show' cave use is a best practice model for karst conservation and internationally respected. Partnership with the Ruapuha Uekaha Hapu Trust in this regard continues to work effectively, based on a high level of trust and respect.

The Waitomo Place is a first-class visitor destination for karst experiences amongst native forest and pastoral hill country, and more people are enjoying the recreational activities on offer. High-quality visitor opportunities are available at Waitomo and

along the corridor west of Waitomo, where a range of scenic walks, viewpoints and cave opportunities show off classic forested karst landscapes, sculpted limestone outcrops (karren) and the subterranean world of caves.

The Waitomo Glowworm Cave is a tourism hub with highly visible commercial and retail activity. At other tourist sites, particularly Ruakuri, the natural setting prevails, with commercial activity visible only through minimal structures and occasional encounters with tour groups. Opapaka Pā and Ruakuri Walk are managed as a Gateway destination, and are connected by the Waitomo Walkway and its restored stream corridor. At highly visited tourism sites, visitors are likely to encounter others during busy times of the year, but have no encounters with aircraft. Visitors experience the 'show' caves as part of guided tours and expect to encounter other tour groups, while visitors to wild caves rarely or, in some cases, never encounter other groups.

Sites away from the main tourist route have basic facilities, and provide opportunities for walking and mountain biking. Visitors expect few encounters with other people and only occasional encounters with aircraft. Recreation opportunities are expanding and integrated with opportunities on private land in collaboration with local marae, hapū, iwi, interested agencies, the community and concessionaires, with minimal impact on karst, biodiversity, cultural and historic values, and other recreational users.

Cultural stories and history are brought to life at Opapaka and Ruakuri in partnership with local marae, hapū and iwi. Visitor appreciation of karst and biodiversity values is enhanced across the Place, particularly at Ruakuri, through the development of education programmes and interpretation in association with concessionaires.

This Place is respected by those who visit, live in and operate tourism ventures in the area. New opportunities linked to karst values are realised through partnerships with interested parties and concessionaires. Philanthropists, an active conservation volunteer programme, local marae, hapū, iwi and the community help to maintain and enhance conservation values.

14.2.2 POLICIES

- 14.2.2.1 Advocate for, and work with landowners, iwi, local authorities and others to achieve the protection of the following conservation values off public conservation lands and waters:
- a) karst systems, threatened and at risk species, priority ecosystems, significant geological features, landforms and landscapes;
 - b) indigenous forest areas, which are part of the ecological corridor within and adjoining public conservation lands;
 - c) bat habitat, including airspace; and
 - d) freshwater fish habitat and fish passage, particularly to maintain habitat connectivity and water quality of waterways that support threatened and at risk species.
- 14.2.2.2 Manage the suite of short-stop visitor sites from Opapaka Pā to Marokopa Falls as an integrated visitor experience centred on the appreciation of karst landforms and ecosystems.
- 14.2.2.3 Continue to build relationships with the Hauāuru ki Uta Regional Management Committee and other local marae, hapū and iwi, to facilitate the management of cultural values and sites of cultural significance, and ecosystem conservation.
- 14.2.2.4 Work cooperatively with local authorities, tourism organisations, other interested agencies and the local community to facilitate integrated

management of the visitor experience and the protection of karst, biodiversity, cultural and historic values within this Place.

- 14.2.2.5 Apply the policies and actions outlined in the Department's Karst Management Guidelines⁶² to the management of cave and karst areas located on public conservation lands within this Place, and in respect of advocacy for cave and karst areas on private land.
- 14.2.2.6 Review and update guidelines for recreational and commercial use of wild caves.
- 14.2.2.7 In partnership with Ruapuha Uekaha Hapu Trust, the Waitomo Glowworm Cave is managed in line with the lease agreement.
- 14.2.2.8 Manage the Aranui Cave and publicly owned sections of Ruakuri Cave in line with lease/licence agreements, and prescribe similar management arrangements and conditions for 'show' cave leases that expire during the term of this CMS.
- 14.2.2.9 Direct concessionaires, outdoor education groups and members of the public seeking a caving experience to appropriately robust caves, to protect fragile cave systems.
- 14.2.2.10 May authorise guided caving trips in wild caves provided that:
 - a) conservation values can be effectively protected by concession conditions and cave management techniques, including (but not limited to):
 - i) prescribed guide to client ratios;
 - ii) limits on group size, number of groups, and timing and frequency of visits;
 - iii) prescribed routes;
 - b) adverse effects on cultural and historic values of the site are minimised; and
 - c) adverse effects on other recreational users of the site are avoided, mitigated or remedied.
- 14.2.2.11 Should only allow structures within caves that are necessary for cave protection, are inert, have minimal intrusion on their natural setting and, in the case of the 'show' caves, are also for public safety, to protect cave ecosystems and processes.
- 14.2.2.12 Should only allow the use of artificial aids, including permanent anchors such as bolts, in caves where no other reasonable alternative exists, and where the mechanism is long-lasting, inert and placed in the safest position with the least impact, to protect cave ecosystems and processes.
- 14.2.2.13 Limit or prevent public access where this is necessary to protect caves and culturally significant sites, including wāhi tapu, from unacceptable adverse effects.
- 14.2.2.14 Seek additional legal mechanisms, including bylaws, regulations or changes to land status, to protect wild caves from unacceptable adverse effects.

⁶² Department of Conservation 1999: Karst management guidelines: policies and actions. Department of Conservation, Wellington, New Zealand.

Part Two

- 14.2.2.15 Liaise with the New Zealand Speleological Society, Australasian Cave and Karst Management Association and local caving groups concerning cave and karst management issues, to ensure that cave users:
- a) are aware of and actively seek to protect conservation values;
 - b) adhere to relevant behaviour guidelines, including the New Zealand Speleological Society's ethical guidelines; and
 - c) have appropriate skills, leadership and party sizes when visiting caves.
- 14.2.2.16 Monitor visitor adverse effects and experiences to ensure that karst biodiversity, cultural, historic and recreational values are not being compromised.
- 14.2.2.17 Contribute to and support activities of the Waitomo Catchment Scheme Trust.
- 14.2.2.18 Support the Waitomo Caves Discovery Centre in providing visitor information and conserving cave heritage.
- 14.2.2.19 Should only allow the use of horses and the use of ATVs on the Waitomo Forest access easement (Matakana Conservation Area), in accordance with Policies 16.3.1.1 to 16.3.1.5, 16.3.1.8, 16.3.1.9, 16.4.2.1 to 16.4.2.3 in Part Three.
- 14.2.2.20 Should only allow independent mountain biking, and may allow guided mountain biking or mountain bike events, on the Waitomo Forest access easement and other formed mountain bike tracks in Matakana Conservation Area (Waitomo Forest) in accordance with Policies 16.3.2.1, 16.3.2.2, 16.3.2.5, and 16.3.2.7 to 16.3.2.9 in Part Three.
- 14.2.2.21 Should not allow aircraft landings and take-offs at the following locations, shown as Red Zone on Map 4, due to the high visitor numbers and to protect the visitor setting, in accordance with Policies 16.3.5.1 and 16.3.5.2 in Part Three:
- a) Waitomo Caves Scenic Reserve;
 - b) Ruakuri Caves and Bush Scenic Reserve;
 - c) Ruakuri Conservation Area;
 - d) Uekaha Scenic Reserve;
 - e) Hangatiki Scenic Reserve;
 - f) Mangapohue Natural Bridge Scenic Reserve;
 - g) Piripiri Cave Scenic Reserve; and
 - h) Marokopa Falls Scenic Reserve.
- 14.2.2.22 Should not allow aircraft landings and take-offs at the Grand Canyon Nature Reserve, shown as Red Zone on Map 4, to protect high biodiversity values, in accordance with Policies 16.3.5.1 and 16.3.5.2 in Part Three.
- 14.2.2.23 May allow aircraft landings and take-offs on other public conservation land within this Place, shown as Green Zone on Map 4, only in accordance with Policies 16.3.5.1, 16.3.5.4, 16.3.5.6 and 16.3.5.8 in Part Three.

14.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 14.2.3.1 Scheduled outputs identified in approved work programmes for the priority ecosystem units located in this Place.
- 14.2.3.2 Scheduled outputs identified in approved work programmes for nationally threatened and at risk species in this Place that are outside priority ecosystem units for which a work programme is underway.
- 14.2.3.3 An experiential development assessment for the Ruakuri Caves and Bush Scenic Reserve and Opapaka Pā has been completed.
- 14.2.3.4 A review of cave user guidelines.
- 14.2.3.5 New interpretation has been developed and is in place at Local Treasure sites along the scenic drive west of Waitomo.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 14.2.3.6 Land classification has been reviewed and mechanisms have been identified for managing access, particularly to Hangatiki Scenic Reserve and Hollow Hill Scenic Reserve.
- 14.2.3.7 Pest plants have been reduced to a very low density at Koropupu Scenic Reserve and animal pest and wild animal threats to the plant *Teucrium parvifolium* have been removed from the same site.
- 14.2.3.8 Monitoring and restoration of vulnerable or damaged cave sites has commenced in conjunction with cave users.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 14.2.3.9 Any land classification changes and access restrictions identified for this Place, particularly for Hangatiki Scenic Reserve and Hollow Hill Scenic Reserve, have been implemented.
 - 14.2.3.10 Quantitative monitoring has been established for pekapeka/long-tailed bat populations at Grand Canyon and Ruakuri.
 - 14.2.3.11 Cave restoration and mitigation.
-

15 Pureora Place

The Pureora Place comprises approximately 85 000 ha of public conservation land between Otorohanga and Lake Taupo (Taupomoana), the majority of which is encompassed by Pureora Forest Park (refer Map 8.8). This Place also incorporates, for the purpose of integrated management, an ecological corridor of private land managed by the Department under agreement with the landowners.

15.1 Description

Pureora has witnessed conservation activism in the past, which is testament to its high conservation value. It is characterised by diverse ecosystems and landforms that reflect its geological history, and features a diverse cultural heritage, a wide range of recreation opportunities, including the Timber Trail cycleway, and the only gazetted recreational hunting area in Waikato.

The forests of Pureora are among the last remnants of the extensive podocarp forests that once covered much of the central North Island. These podocarp forests range from 400 to 1200 m above sea level and encompass a wide range of forest types and habitats. While lowland to mid-altitude podocarp forests dominate this Place, other important ecosystems are also present, including subalpine forest, remnant silver beech (*Lophozonia menzeisii*) forest, shrublands, grasslands, temperature inversion frost flat shrublands and wetlands/mires. Special features of these ecosystems include the Waipa Mires, Waihora Lagoon, Whenuakura Plains (frost flats) and 40- to 60-m-high podocarp trees. Several forest areas within this Place are not included in Pureora Forest Park; for example, Cowan Wildlife Refuge. The Department intends to incorporate all adjoining public conservation land into the Forest Park so that it can be managed under one consistent land status.

Pureora contains seven priority ecosystem units: Waipapa Ecological Area, Pikiariki Ecological Area, Pureora o Kahu (Mt Pureora) (including Waimonoa Ecological Area), Ratanunui Ecological Area, and the Upper Maramataha, Waihaha and Whangau Stream (including Whenuakura Plains). Other sites with renowned ecosystem values are Mangatutu and Nga Morehu Ecological Areas. In addition to managing these specific sites, maintenance of the connectivity of forest and wildlife habitats both on and off public conservation land by way of a vegetated corridor is a priority. The area between the northern and southern areas of Pureora Forest, which is important for long-term ecosystem health, will be particularly focused on during the life of this CMS.

Pureora's ecosystems, particularly the podocarp forests, provide habitat for nationally important populations of indigenous flora and fauna. The Threatened plant *Dactylanthus taylorii*, and the green mistletoe (*Ileostylus micranthus*) are found within the forest ecosystems. Wetlands host rare plants, including the At Risk stout water milfoil and Threatened water brome. The frost flat ecosystems also provide habitat for Threatened plants, including Turner's kōhūhū (*Pittosporum turneri*) and *Pimelea tomentosa*.

A key feature at Pureora is its indigenous wildlife, particularly the abundant birdlife, which includes many commonly seen bird species, such as kererū/New Zealand pigeon and toutouwai/North Island robin. The Threatened kārearea/New Zealand falcon, North Island brown kiwi, yellow-crowned kākārīki (*Cyanoramphus auriceps*) and whio/blue duck are present, along with stronghold populations of the Threatened North Island kākā and North Island kōkako. Also found here are Threatened pekapeka/long- and short-tailed bats, with the latter population being particularly significant for its association with *Dactylanthus taylorii*. The At Risk peketua/Hochstetter's frog is also present, along with a small reintroduced population of the Threatened Archey's frog. Toutouwai/North Island robin and kōkako

populations have been, and continue to be, source populations for translocations, demonstrating the success of conservation management in this Place.

The landscape of Pureora is characterised by the greywacke landforms of the Rangitoto and Hauhungaroa Ranges, and the volcanic cones of Pureora o Kahu (Mt Pureora) and Titiraupenga. The Hauhungaroa Range, Pureora o Kahu and Titiraupenga are identified as outstanding natural features and landscapes (refer Appendix 9). Forest cover was almost completely destroyed during the Taupo eruptions 1800 years ago, but significant features of this era are a preserved subfossil forest that was discovered in 1983, small beech forest remnants, and a number of internationally and nationally significant geological sites.

Significant threat management programmes targeting introduced animals and pest plants are implemented across a large portion of Pureora. Targeted weeds include heather (*Calluna vulgaris*), willow (*Salix* spp.) and *Pinus contorta*. Goats and possums are controlled over most of Pureora Forest Park, rats are controlled at selected locations to protect threatened wildlife, including Archey's frog and North Island kōkako, and stoats are controlled to protect whio/blue duck. TBfree New Zealand undertakes the majority of possum control for tuberculosis vector control; however, the progressive eradication of tuberculosis across this Place and the subsequent redirection of TBfree New Zealand possum control funding will have a significant impact on ecosystem health if the current level of possum control cannot be maintained. Community groups lead rat and possum control for North Island kōkako protection at Mangatutu, and assist with whio/blue duck protection in the western side of the Hauhungaroa Range.

Recreational hunters targeting pigs, goats and red deer are one of the largest user groups in Pureora. The Pureora Forest Park Hunting Competition is a popular annual event with recreational hunters. The 18 750-ha gazetted Pureora Recreational Hunting Area (RHA) encompasses the Rangitoto Range south to, and including, Waipapa (refer Map 8.8). Commercial wild animal recovery is managed to minimise conflict with recreational red deer hunting and is generally limited to outside the RHA. However, the Department may occasionally allow limited commercial wild animal recovery within the RHA where the impact of red deer is high and wild animal recovery is possible.

The RHA provides for recreational hunting as a means (but not exclusively) for controlling red deer and pigs. Red deer hunting opportunities are managed to achieve protection of priority ecosystem values, while enabling use and enjoyment of this valued hunting opportunity. Having an RHA that overlaps with key ecological management areas can create conflicting priorities. The Department intends to review the RHA, in consultation with hunters, to align recreational hunting opportunities with areas most suited to recreational hunting and the Department's priorities for ecosystem management. This review will be undertaken in line with requirements under section 28 of the Wild Animal Control Act 1977. Working with recreational hunting interests is an important part of managing hunting opportunities in the RHA and throughout Pureora.

Pureora provides a range of ecosystem services that benefit local and regional communities. The large areas of threat-managed forest act as a carbon sink, and also provide clean water, landscape stability and soil conservation, and reduce flooding and sediment generation. Pureora supports important populations of seed-dispersing indigenous bird species that facilitate the long-term survival of local and regional forest ecosystems.

Pureora has a diverse heritage, including a long history of Māori use and occupation, an era of native forest logging, and a legacy of conservation protests. Logging occurred

between the 1920s and 1980s, during which time there were several logging/milling settlements. Pureora Village in particular was a thriving settlement from 1950 to 1980. Historic treetop native logging protests in the 1970s contributed to an eventual end to native logging in the Park and in many other parts of New Zealand. Historic remnants from the native logging era are extensive, and feature relics such as tramways and haulers. The Department actively manages four historic sites in Pureora, the most significant of which is the Ongarue Tramway. Its associated spiral is recognised as a major feat of engineering in a forest setting.

Pureora has special significance to a number of local iwi interests, including Ngāti Maniapoto, Rereahu (affiliated to Ngāti Maniapoto), Ruakawa, Pouakani and Ngāti Tūwharetoa. Ngāti Maniapoto and Ruakawa have interests in the Upper Waipa River catchment in the Rangitoto Range. The peaks of Pureora o Kahu (Mt Pureora), Titiraupenga and Wharepūhunga are tribal landmarks, recognised as maunga tapu by several iwi. The cultural significance and management of Titiraupenga has been acknowledged as a specific component of Treaty settlements with Pouakani and Raukawa. Pureora o Kahu is a culturally significant landmark to Raukawa and Rereahu, and is also included as an overlay site in Treaty settlements for these iwi, with Wharepūhunga also having status as an overlay site for Raukawa.

Many of the waterways, such as the Waimiha, are also significant to iwi and Māori in the area, who have stories to complement their claim to mana whenua. Ngāti Maniapoto has reached a Treaty settlement for the Waipa River, the upper reaches of which are in northern sections of this Place, and parts of the Waipa River are also referred to in the Ngāti Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010. The health of the Waipa River catchment contributes to the restoration and maintenance of both the Waipa and Waikato Rivers, including the care and protection of the mana tuku iho o waiwaiā (the essence and well-being of the Waipa River) and the health and well-being of the Waikato River. The Raukawa Claims Settlement Act 2014 was passed in March 2014. An overlay classification over Wharepūhunga and Pureora acknowledges the statement made by Raukawa of their values relating to their cultural, historical, spiritual, and traditional association with the overlay area. It is anticipated that other Maniapoto iwi groups will resolve Treaty claims within this Place during the life of this CMS (refer sections 4 and 6 in Part One).

Pureora provides a suite of recreation opportunities that are easily accessible by the large urban population in the central and upper North Island. Recreation opportunities include hunting, bird watching, short- and medium-length walks, multi-day tramps, day and over-night mountain biking, four-wheel driving (including scenic touring and more challenging four-wheel driving opportunities), ATV use and horse riding. These opportunities are centred on an appreciation of natural and historic values and exploring Pureora's many roads and tracks. Features include:

- large, diverse and easily accessible native forest bird populations, including many species rarely seen elsewhere.
- large, intact remnant podocarp forests.
- sizeable areas of backcountry terrain in both north and south Pureora.
- the RHA in north Pureora.
- the easy grade Timber Trail cycleway between Pureora and Ongarue (opened in 2012).
- Te Araroa—The Long Pathway (which crosses the Hauhungaroa Range).
- the popular Kakaho campsite (managed as a Gateway destination).
- a wide range of short, day and overnight opportunities.

- a dedicated four-wheel driving area (maintained by four-wheel driving enthusiasts).
- a range of facilities, including four huts, several campsites, cabins in Pureora Village, and two outdoor education centres managed under concession.

Pureora Village is the arrival point for many visitors and is the ideal location for focusing visitor information services, as well as, potentially, additional public accommodation and camping opportunities, particularly with the village being a starting point for the Timber Trail. The Pa Harakeke Eco-cultural Centre and Maraeroa cycleway, which incorporates part of the Timber Trail, provides public accommodation and recreation opportunities on adjoining private land complementary to those offered by the Department. Recreationalists, including hunters, value natural quiet, particularly in backcountry and remote areas of the Park. Aircraft activity can impact on these values but also facilitate access into more remote areas, particularly for hunting and, more recently, heli-biking. Aircraft activity is managed to minimise the impact on the enjoyment of visitors to these areas.

The multi-day cycling and walking opportunities along the Timber Trail are anticipated to increase visitation and provide significant business opportunities for the community and tourism sector. By year 5 of this CMS, the Timber Trail is expected to have created considerable economic benefits, largely driven by the uptake of fully supported guided overnight or multi-day tours. These aspirations are reflected by the Timber Trail's status (along with the Piropiro campsite) as an Icon destination and a Historic Icon site under the Department's visitor destination management framework. The Department intends to carry out visitor satisfaction surveys to monitor visitor experiences, and to identify any conflicts between visitor groups or unanticipated management issues on the Trail.

Potential concession opportunities include supporting products and services, such as guided tours, transportation and public accommodation. The development of public accommodation in the vicinity of Piropiro campsite has been identified as important for realising tourism opportunities associated with the Timber Trail; however, maintaining the traditional camping experience at this location is also important to existing users.

The Department has identified a limited concession opportunity for guided all terrain vehicles (ATVs) on sections of the Timber Trail, as a trial over 2 years. This proposal would enable a wider range of people, particularly less able-bodied people, to experience historical features on the Timber Trail through guided ATV tours. This type of activity would also provide a new business opportunity. Limited and tightly controlled ATV tours on selected sections of the Timber Trail will be trialled for a period of 2 years. This will include restrictions on where and when the activity can occur and other limits such as group size and vehicle speed limits. During the trial, the Department would monitor visitor numbers, visitor satisfaction and physical impacts of ATV use along the Timber Trail. On conclusion of the trial, the Department would review the information obtained during the trial period and, particularly, consider any impacts on or conflicts between ATV use and walkers/mountain bikers, and any effects on the track and associated infrastructure, and ecological, cultural and historical values.

In addition to the Timber Trail, there is significant interest from the community for continued provision for four-wheel driving, horse riding and other mountain biking opportunities. There is potential for providing mountain bike access through Pureora Forest Park linking the Timber Trail with mountain biking opportunities at Lake Taupo (Taupomoana). The Department intends to work with interested parties to

assess this on the basis that user groups would lead and fund the opportunity. The Department has created horse riding and mountain biking zones and specifically identified sites at Piropiro where the community could develop separate tracks for mountain biking and horse riding in defined areas (refer Piropiro mountain bike recreation area on Map 8.8.2 and Piropiro horse riding recreation area on Map 8.8.3). The Department has also provided mountain bike access to backcountry tracks and intends to work with user groups to facilitate improvements to tracks linking to/from the Timber Trail within the mountain bike zone, and elsewhere in Pureora Forest Park. In addition, opportunities for four-wheel driving have been identified at Arataki (refer Map 8.8.1). At this location, there is an opportunity for use of existing four-wheel drive tracks within the defined area, provided those tracks are maintained by users. Any modification or development of tracks or roads for mountain bikes, horse riding and four-wheel driving would require necessary approvals. Key recreation management issues in Pureora are:

- minimising conflict between recreation activities, particularly at popular locations, e.g. campsites
- balancing provision for aerial access into backcountry areas with the protection of natural quiet (for all recreational users)
- maintaining traditional camping experiences that are valued by users alongside the development of the Timber Trail
- preventing unauthorised track and campsite formation
- making provision for motorised vehicle opportunities that are consistent with the visitor setting and values present
- ensuring that any development has minimal impacts on cultural and ecological values, and is consistent with historic and recreational values.

It is important that the Department works closely with user groups and those interested in providing services and facilities to support recreation opportunities.

Pureora benefits from significant volunteer contributions to conservation efforts, most notably in threat management, tree planting and campsite maintenance. There is potential for further contribution from the community in this regard and with respect to the provision of new recreation opportunities.

15.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Pureora Place

15.2.1 OUTCOME

Pureora is recognised as a place of ecological importance and as a nature tourism destination, with diverse cultural and historic values, and many backcountry recreation opportunities.

Priority ecosystem sites, including Waipapa, Pikiariki and Waihaha, are maintained and restored to a healthy functioning state. The integrity of other important ecosystems and indigenous forest corridors is improving in collaboration with local marae, hapū, iwi, the community, local authorities and other interested parties. Healthy forests contribute to the provision of clean water, soil conservation, and reduced flooding and sedimentation.

Populations of Threatened and At Risk species, including North Island kākā, North Island kōkako, native bats, *Dactylanthus taylorii* and native frogs, are maintained and expanding in their range. Interested parties lead and assist with protection of threatened and at risk species, including North Island kōkako and whio/blue duck.

Pureora's podocarp forests are recognised nationally as a source location for species translocations, which are undertaken in an ecologically sustainable manner. Research and monitoring provides improved knowledge of the status of species and ecosystems throughout Pureora. The podocarp ecosystem is a biodiversity showcase where visitors experience the wonder of being surrounded by towering trees and abundant native birdlife.

Threats are managed at priority sites, including priority ecosystems, in cooperation with local marae, hapū, iwi, the community and other agencies. New parties are assisting with animal pest and wild animal control to achieve broad-scale improvements in forest health across Pureora. Recreational and commercial hunters actively contribute to the control of red deer and pig populations, and the ecological adverse effects of red deer are better understood. Pureora remains free of all deer species apart from red deer. *Pinus contorta* has been removed, heather is at very low density, and willow has been removed from wetlands in the Waipapa Ecological Area and the mires of the Hauhungaroa Range.

The natural landscape, natural features and natural character of Pureora prevail. The natural form and skyline of the Rangitoto and Hauhungaroa Ranges, Pureora o Kahu (Mt Pureora) and Titiraupenga are protected features within this landscape. The Department advocates for the protection of ecological corridors, wildlife habitat, and significant natural features and landscapes that are contiguous with Pureora's ecosystems and landscapes.

Pureora's actively managed historic and cultural sites and values are preserved and enhanced. The stories of Pureora's timber logging history and culturally significant sites are brought to life and connect visitors to the past, including a range of historic sites and relics preserved in a forest setting.

A positive working relationship with all iwi that claim mana whenua in this Place fosters shared outcomes that benefit both iwi and conservation and build on established and new Treaty settlement partnerships. This includes recognition of cultural values, including sites and landforms of significance to iwi (wāhi tapu). In particular, the mauri of Titiraupenga, Pureora o Kahu and Wharepūhanga is enhanced, and healthy forests contribute to the maintenance and restoration of culturally significant waterways, such as the Ongarue and Waipa Rivers, and the Mangaparuhou and Waimiha Streams.

People visit Pureora to enjoy its diverse range of recreation opportunities in a mix of natural and rural settings. Pureora's natural values, rich cultural heritage and reputation as a place for adventure underlie visitor experiences. Recreational users capitalise on the extensive network of tracks, huts, campsites and roads to enjoy camping, multi-day tramping, mountain biking, bird watching and hunting expeditions. Family camping remains a traditional experience that is enjoyed particularly during the summer months. The popular Kakaho campsite is managed as a Gateway destination.

Access to backcountry and remote areas provide experienced users with opportunities to explore and hunt the hinterland of Pureora on foot and, in some locations, by vehicle, horse and mountain bike. Hunting remains a valued traditional activity, especially during 'the roar' in March and April, when other visitors are most likely to encounter deer hunters. A peaceful setting prevails within Pureora, and visitors expect only occasional encounters with aircraft, except during 'the roar' (March-April), when aircraft activity is more regular. Short bursts of activity may also be experienced occasionally during the summer for special events, such as heli-biking. Some disturbance to natural quiet is also expected close to roads, tracks and campsites that are accessible by motorised vehicles.

The Timber Trail cycleway has raised Pureora's profile as a destination for mountain biking and walking. It provides easy multi-day adventures for a wide range of people, showcasing Pureora's logging history and magnificent podocarp forest ecosystems. Mountain biking opportunities extend from the Timber Trail and link with other tracks in Pureora and the Great Lake Trail cycleway. Along with the Piropiro campsite, the Timber Trail is managed as an Icon destination and a Historic Icon site. More visitors enjoy traditional camping at Piropiro campsite, with ancillary services, such as public accommodation, sited away from the campsite. Use of the Timber Trail is supported by a range of services that are consistent with the recreational setting, landscape and natural values.

Pureora Village has become the focal point for visitor information and the starting point for many adventures. The Timber Trail has contributed to increased visitation and improved prosperity in the community. Visitors leave Pureora with a greater understanding and appreciation of its natural, cultural and historic values.

New recreation opportunities and the maintenance of existing opportunities, particularly mountain biking, four-wheel driving and horse riding, are facilitated in collaboration with recreational users and the community. Nature tourism, commercial recreation opportunities and community conservation initiatives at Pureora have grown in collaboration with local marae, hap ū, iwi, the public, local authorities, tourism agencies and business.

15.2.2

POLICIES

- 15.2.2.1 Implement Treaty settlement mechanisms that apply to this Place in partnership with iwi, including (but not limited to):
 - a) the Memorandum of Understanding with Pouakani;
 - b) the Partnership Agreement with Rereahu;
 - c) the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato (and Waipa) Rivers (Ngāti Maniapoto and Raukawa); and
 - d) the Waipa River Conservation Accord with Ngāti Maniapoto.
- 15.2.2.2 Collaborate with local marae, hap ū, iwi, the community and organisations to identify, protect and interpret, where appropriate, sites and stories of historical and cultural significance.
- 15.2.2.3 Advocate for, and work with adjoining landowners, iwi, local authorities and others, to maintain and improve habitats of threatened and at risk species, freshwater fish habitat (including fish passage) and priority ecosystems, including the public-private indigenous forest corridor from Mangatutu to Moerangi and through into the central plateau/Taupo area. Priorities include areas between the Rangitoto Range and Hauhungaroa Range, and areas that have high ecological values and that are potentially at the greatest risk of loss.
- 15.2.2.4 Identify biodiversity restoration and protection priorities that local marae, hap ū, iwi, the community and other organisations can assist with or lead at Pureora with guidance from the Department.
- 15.2.2.5 Coordinate animal pest and wild animal control activities with adjoining landowners, local authorities, TBfree New Zealand, local marae, hap ū, iwi, the community and hunters.

- 15.2.2.6 Support recreational hunting where it facilitates the protection of biodiversity values, through:
- a) establishing and structuring closer working relationships with hunting clubs;
 - b) continuing the Pureora Forest Park hunting competition; and
 - c) providing information about access, hunting etiquette, safety and wild animal hotspots.
- 15.2.2.7 Engage with recreational user groups, local marae, hapū, iwi, Te Araroa Trust, and other interested parties in respect of the use, maintenance and creation of recreational opportunities at Pureora, and the management of conflict between user groups, including:
- a) opportunities for recreational users to lead or assist with the maintenance and upgrade of tracks and other recreational facilities;
 - b) horse riding opportunities in the horse riding zone, including the Piropiro horse riding recreation area (refer Map 8.8.3, Table 3);
 - c) mountain biking opportunities in the mountain biking zone, including the Piropiro mountain bike recreation area and mountain biking opportunities linking to/from the Timber Trail, and in other areas of Pureora Forest (refer Map 8.8.2, Table 3);
 - d) exploring the possibility of linking the Timber Trail and the Great Lake Trail cycle trails along a corridor of public conservation land, including provision for interpretation about Lake Taupo (Taupomoana) and its catchments; and
 - e) backcountry tramping opportunities and Te Araroa-The Long Pathway; and
 - f) four-wheel driving opportunities at Ngaroma and Arataki (refer Map 8.8.1, Table 3).
- 15.2.2.8 Prevent the use of unauthorised encampments on public conservation land in Pureora and require their removal in accordance with section 16.5.
- 15.2.2.9 Manage the Timber Trail in consultation with local authorities, the tourism sector, local marae, hapū, iwi, the community, recreational users and other interested organisations.
- 15.2.2.10 Gather information to increase understanding about the density and associated ecological adverse effects of red deer and options for their management, in consultation with hunters and other interested parties.
- 15.2.2.11 Review, in consultation with hunting groups and other interested parties, the Pureora Recreational Hunting Area, in accordance with the Wild Animal Control Act 1977, including consideration of ecosystem management priorities and wild animal control responsibilities.
- 15.2.2.12 Should not authorise structures that are visible along the skyline and on the slopes of the Rangitoto Range, Titiraupeunga, Pureora-o-Kahu (Mt Pureora), and the Hauhungaroa Range, to protect these significant landscape features.
- 15.2.2.13 Consider providing a small number of powered sites for certified self-contained vehicles in Pureora Village, in collaboration with interested parties.

- 15.2.2.14 Seek a change in land status to include all adjoining public conservation land into Pureora Forest Park, including Cowan Wildlife Refuge, Pureora Conservation Area and Meyer Block Wildlife Refuge Reserve.
- 15.2.2.15 Monitor the visitor experience and visitor satisfaction on the Timber Trail to inform management.
- 15.2.2.16 May allow structures, including built public accommodation, in accordance with Policy 16.2.1.5 in Part Three, provided that:
- a) they are located in modified areas;
 - b) they avoid ecologically sensitive sites (except where the structure is directly linked to the appreciation of natural values, e.g. a forest tower, in which case adverse effects are avoided or minimised);
 - c) they are not located in designated campsites;
 - d) a cultural assessment supports the building of structures (if the structure is proposed within areas acknowledged by Treaty settlements); and
 - e) they are of a scale and design that is in keeping with the visitor setting and surrounding landscape.
- 15.2.2.17 May allow guided ATV tours on the Timber Trail cycleway as a limited concession opportunity, only in accordance with Policies 16.3.1.4, 16.3.1.8 and 16.3.1.9 in Part Three and provided:
- a) tours are limited to the sections of the Timber Trail from Angel's Rest to Piropiro campsite, and from the northern-most point of the Ellis and Burnand Tramway to the southern boundary of Pureora Forest Park⁶³ (refer Map 8.8);
 - b) tours occur only from 1 May to 31 October (inclusive) in any year, excluding public holiday weekends;
 - c) the following limits are met:
 - i) a maximum speed of 15 km/hr on the Trail and 5 km/hr on bridges;
 - ii) a maximum of five clients per tour⁶⁴, with a minimum ratio of one guide to five clients per tour;
 - iii) a maximum of five tours per day;
 - iv) a maximum of two operators undertaking guided ATV tours;
 - d) if monitoring at any time shows that any adverse effects of ATV tours are unacceptable then the activity may be further restricted or discontinued;
 - e) concessions are only granted initially for a 2-year period⁶⁵, and, on conclusion of a review of this activity after 2 years⁶⁶, either another concession for a longer term may be issued or no concession may be issued.

⁶³ Access agreements across private land are needed to enable access to this section of the Timber Trail.

⁶⁴ One tour equals a maximum of one return trip along the sections of the Timber Trail specified in a).

⁶⁵ Starting from the date the first concession is issued and concluding 2 years after that date.

⁶⁶ Monitoring for adverse effects on ecological, cultural and historic values, the track surface, and conflicts with other users of the Trail will be undertaken as part of the trial, and continuation of this activity will be determined on conclusion of the review.

- 15.2.2.18 Should only allow independent mountain biking, and may allow guided mountain biking or mountain bike events, at the locations shown on Map 8.8.2 and listed in Table 3, in accordance with Policies 16.3.2.1, 16.3.2.2, 16.3.2.5 and 16.3.2.7 to 16.3.2.9 in Part Three.
- 15.2.2.19 Should only allow independent mountain biking, as a 5-year trial from 2014 to 2018 (inclusive), on all formed and maintained tracks not listed in Table 3 for mountain bike access, except the Waihora Lagoon Track, Link Road to Mt Pureora Track, Toitoti Track, Rimu Track, Bog Inn Track and Totara Track, in accordance with Policies 16.3.2.1, 16.3.2.2, 16.3.2.5 and 16.3.2.7 to 16.3.2.9 in Part Three. Independent mountain biking may continue while an assessment of the trial is being carried out to determine whether mountain biking will be allowed to continue subject to any necessary controls.
- 15.2.2.20 Should only allow the use of horses at the locations shown on Map 8.8.3 and listed in Table 3, in accordance with Policies 16.4.2.2 and 16.4.2.3 in Part Three.
- 15.2.2.21 Should only allow the use of motorised vehicles at the locations shown on Map 8.8.1 and listed on Table 3, in accordance with Policies 16.3.1.1 to 16.3.1.5, and 16.3.1.8 and 16.3.1.9 in Part Three.
- 15.2.2.22 Should not allow aircraft landings and take-offs at the following locations, shown as Red Zone on Map 4, in accordance with Policies 16.3.5.1 and 16.3.5.2 in Part Three:
- a) Waipapa and Pikiariki, to protect the visitor setting and high biodiversity values; and
 - b) above 800 m on Titiraupenga and Pureora o Kahu, to protect cultural values.
- 15.2.2.23 May allow aircraft landings and take-offs on other public conservation land in this Place, shown as Orange Zone on Map 4, only in accordance with Policies 16.3.5.1, 16.3.5.5, 16.3.5.6 and 16.3.5.8 in Part Three, and provided that:
- a) there is a maximum of 150 landings in any year across the Pureora Place Orange Zone;
 - b) all aircraft activity occurs only between 10 am and 3 pm during the period 15 March to 30 April (inclusive) in any year;
 - c) take-offs and landings in the vicinity of Piropiro, Kakaho and Landing Road campsites only occur within the designated landing areas (not in the campsites);
 - d) no more than two landings per day occur at Piropiro, Kakaho and Landing Road campsite landing areas between 15 November and 14 March (inclusive), and during public holiday weekends and school holidays in any year, except for special events (e.g. recreational or educational events) that meet the criteria in Policy 16.3.5.6 in Part Three; and
 - e) vegetation is not removed to create take-off or landing sites.

15.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 15.2.3.1 Scheduled outputs identified in approved work programmes for the following priority ecosystem unit located in this Place: Pikiariki.
- 15.2.3.2 Scheduled outputs for nationally Threatened and At Risk species in this Place for which a work programme is underway: the water brome.
- 15.2.3.3 The Timber Trail visitor survey has been completed and 95% of visitors are satisfied with their experience on the Trail.
- 15.2.3.4 Report on efforts to maintain and restore locally treasured natural heritage (ecosystems and species) in the Pureora Place.
- 15.2.3.5 Provisions for guided ATV tours on sections of the Timber Trail have been reviewed and recommendations implemented.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 15.2.3.6 Willow has been removed from wetlands in the Waipapa Ecological Area and the mires of the Hauhungaroa Range.
- 15.2.3.7 *Pinus contorta* has been removed from public conservation land within the Pureora Place and heather has been reduced to a very low density.
- 15.2.3.8 Review of the Pureora Recreational Hunting Area.
- 15.2.3.9 Review of mountain bike access to backcountry tracks in Pureora has commenced.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 15.2.3.10 Public conservation land adjoining Pureora Forest Park has been added to the Park.
 - 15.2.3.11 Changes arising from the review of the Pureora Recreational Hunting Area have been implemented.
 - 15.2.3.12 Mountain bike access to backcountry tracks in Pureora has been reviewed and recommendations implemented.
-

Table 3: Mountain bike, horse and motorised vehicle access within in Pureora Place (refer Maps 8.8.1 to 8.8.3).

Location	Access type
Barryville Road Pikiariki Road Maramataha Road Totara Stream Road Waihora Road Titiraupenga Road Ngaroma Recreation Four-wheel Road Bismarck Road Swamp Road Waimonoa Road Endeans Road Ketemaringi Road Okauaka Road West Okahukura Road Link Road Bog Inn Road (in part) Kaka Road Select Loop Road Fletchers Road Kokomiko Road Tihoi Road Otamaroa Road Ranginui Mountain Road Owawenga Road Nursery Road Village Road Workshop Road Piropiro Road Perhams Avenue Centre of North Island Road Waimonoa Quarry Road	All motorised vehicles; Horses; Mountain bikes.
Plains Road Drum Bridge Road Arataki Road Okahukura Track Wildlife Hut Track Black Fern Track and Road 15 Maramataha Track Panhandle Track	ATVs; Horses; Mountain bikes.
Gully Road Judd Hauler Track Centre of North Island Track Ketemaringi Track Waione Tram Track Arataki Swing Bridge Track Forest Tower Walk Crawler Tractor Track The Timber Trail	Mountain bikes.

Location	Access type
Pureora Mountain Bike Zone	Mountain bikes, on formed tracks only. Any track development within the Piropiro mountain bike recreation area (Map 8.8.2) will be subject to approval in accordance with Policy 16.3.2.6 in Part Three.
Pureora Horse Riding Zone	Horses, on formed tracks only. Any track development within the Piropiro horse riding recreation area (Map 8.8.3) will be subject to approval in accordance with Policy 16.4.2.2 in Part Three.
Ngaroma Four-wheel Driving Area	Four-wheel drive vehicles only.
Arataki Four-wheel Driving Area	Four-wheel drive vehicles on formed tracks only in the defined area (Map 8.8.1). Any track development will be subject to approval in accordance with Policy 16.3.1.4 in Part Three.
Waihaha Track	Mountain bikes, when the Waihaha Track has been upgraded for mountain bike use.

Part Three

16 Specific policy requirements for Waikato

16.1 General

This section implements the requirements of the Conservation General Policy 2005 and other legislative requirements. The policies of this section apply to all public conservation lands and waters covered by this CMS. Where the provisions in Part Three are different from the provisions in Part Two—Places, the more specific provisions in Part Two prevail.

Changes to this CMS may be required from time to time during its term. This may require changes to be made by the amendment or review processes under sections 17H or 17I of the Conservation Act 1987. These situations may include where additional land area is to be managed under a CMS, or limitations changed on an activity that occurs on land or waters managed under the CMS.

16.1.1 POLICIES—GENERAL

- 16.1.1.1 In interpreting the policies in this CMS the words ‘will’, ‘should’ and ‘may’ have the following meanings:
- a) Policies where legislation provides no discretion for decision-making or a deliberate decision has been made by the Minister to direct decision-makers state that a particular action or actions ‘will’ be undertaken.
 - b) Policies that carry with them a strong expectation of outcome without diminishing the constitutional role of the Minister and other decision-makers state that a particular action or actions ‘should’ be undertaken.
 - c) Policies intended to allow flexibility in decision-making state that a particular action or actions ‘may’ be undertaken.
- 16.1.1.2 Manage public conservation lands and waters to be consistent with the purposes for which they are held.
- 16.1.1.3 Manage public conservation lands and waters to be consistent with the outcomes, objectives and policies of this CMS.
- 16.1.1.4 Adopt an integrated management approach (as defined in the Conservation General Policy 2005) to the application of this CMS, and to cross-boundary management of other public conservation lands and waters.
- 16.1.1.5 Where a change to the CMS is required to impose or increase limits on any use or activity or include new species or land, the relevant process under the provisions of the Conservation Act 1987 will be followed.
- 16.1.1.6 Ensure the classification or statutory purpose of public conservation lands and waters reflects their values.
- 16.1.1.7 Establish or review bylaws and regulations where necessary to enable better management of public conservation lands and waters (including departmental wharves) in Waikato.
- 16.1.1.8 Restrict or close access to reserves consistent with the conditions and restrictions of use of the reserve; and to conservation areas where necessary to:
- a) protect natural, historic or cultural heritage;

- b) protect public safety;
- c) control biosecurity risks;
- d) enable the eradication of pests using aerial bait operations;
- e) allow military exercise operations;
- f) protect a species, or a historic or cultural site; or
- g) allow tree felling.

16.1.1.9 When undertaking work or activities that are covered by Appendix 1, determine if they meet the requirements of section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 for exemption from land use consents.

16.2 Authorisations (General)

Unless authorised by other legislation⁶⁷, anyone wishing to undertake an activity for specific gain or reward (including carrying out a trade, occupation or business) on public conservation lands and waters, or undertake other activities such as research or collection of resources of any kind, or the construction of a structure, requires an authorisation. The most common authorisation is given as a concession under Part 3B of the Conservation Act 1987. This CMS provides for a range of authorisations that are consistent with relevant legislation and policy, the protection of natural resources and historic and cultural heritage, and the recreational settings and planned outcomes and policies for specific Places (Part Two). Authorisations can add value to visitors' experiences by connecting them with natural, historic and cultural heritage, and providing opportunities to visit places that may not otherwise be easily accessible.

The Department has granted, under delegation from the Minister of Conservation, authorisations for a range of activities, including filming, grazing, telecommunications, utilities, access/easements, and recreation and tourism activities such as guiding, sporting events, education camps, and the sale of goods and services to the public.

In considering an application for a concession, the Minister must take into account a number of statutory criteria. These include the purpose for which the land is held, effects of the activity, mitigation measures and (if a concession application has been notified) public submissions. The aim is to ensure that the use is compatible with the protection of natural and historic resources and, where appropriate, with recreational use.

Often, concessions can be mutually beneficial for the Department and the concessionaire in providing good land management. Grazing is an example of this where it is required for fire and weed control, archaeological management purposes, or to facilitate open space recreation.

A key issue in assessing applications for a structure or facility is that a concession cannot be granted if the Minister considers that the activity could reasonably be undertaken in another location outside public conservation land where the potential adverse effects would be significantly less.

The monitoring of authorised activities is required. Where authorised activity is beginning to reach, or has already reached, the environmental and/or social carrying capacity of a place, the Department may limit the amount of activity that can occur in that place.

⁶⁷ Examples are the Electricity Act 1992 and the Cadastral Survey Act 2002

Monitoring is particularly required at locations where there is visitor or commercial pressure, the potential effects of which could compromise the experience of other visitors, or the natural and heritage values of those places. Monitoring may also be required for concessions in areas that are rarely visited or are managed for remote experiences.

16.2.1 POLICIES—AUTHORISATIONS (CGP 11)

- 16.2.1.1 Issue authorisations in accordance with the relevant legislation and the provisions of the Conservation General Policy 2005.
- 16.2.1.2 Monitor authorised activities and their effects, including cumulative effects, on a regular and ongoing basis.
- 16.2.1.3 Establish limits for authorisations where demand approaches or exceeds the environmental or social carrying capacity of a place and/or cumulative effects on the environment or other users are becoming unacceptable, and manage through an allocative process.
- 16.2.1.4 Should not grant authorisations that are inconsistent with the objectives in Part One or the outcomes and policies for Places described in Part Two—Places or the policies in Part Three.
- 16.2.1.5 The following criteria will be used when considering applications to erect or retain structures or utilities or for the adaptive reuse of existing buildings on public conservation lands and waters:
 - a) the purposes for which the land concerned is held;
 - b) the outcome and policies for the Place where the activity is proposed to occur (if the authorisation is within a Place);
 - c) whether the structure could reasonably be located outside public conservation lands;
 - d) whether the structure could reasonably be located in another location where there are fewer adverse effects;
 - e) whether the structure adversely affects conservation including recreational values;
 - f) whether the structure is readily available for public use;
 - g) whether the structure is consistent with the visitor management zone on Map 3 and as described in Appendix 12;
 - h) whether the structure enhances the visitor experience;
 - i) whether the activity promotes or enhances the retention of a historic building;
 - j) whether the activity is a suitable adaptive reuse of an existing building; and
 - k) whether it is consistent with policies 16.5.1.1 to 16.5.1.9.
- 16.2.1.6 Manage (including when considering concession applications), those parts of Waikato that are identified as Wetlands of International Importance under the Convention of Wetlands of International Importance 1971 (also referred to as the Ramsar Convention) in accordance with the criteria for which those wetland(s) of international importance were nominated (refer Appendix 16) and New Zealand's obligations under the Convention.

- 16.2.1.7 Manage (including when considering concession applications), those parts of Waikato that are identified as flyways under the East Asian-Australasian Flyway Partnership in accordance with the purposes for which those flyways were nominated and New Zealand's obligations under the Partnership.
-

16.3 Vehicles

Vehicle use is part of the range of recreation opportunities that are only allowed on public conservation lands and waters where identified in this CMS. In this context, vehicles include motorised and non-motorised land vehicles; fixed-wing, helicopter and non-motorised aircraft; and motorised and non-motorised watercraft. Further discussion about vehicle use can be found in Part Two—Places.

16.3.1 **MOTORISED VEHICLES** (other than aircraft, watercraft and electric power-assisted pedal cycles not exceeding 300 watts)

Motorised vehicle use is not generally allowed off formed roads on public conservation lands.

Land-based motorised vehicles are used on public conservation lands for a number of purposes, including recreation/tourism (with vehicle use being either the primary recreational activity or a method to get somewhere), concession activities, farming purposes (associated with grazing), public transport and other authorised uses.

Opportunities for driving vehicles, such as four-wheel drives, away from district roads and state highways are generally found on private lands, non-conservation lands, or legal roads, rather than conservation lands. Nevertheless, the ability to use some roads on public conservation land, such as old logging roads, is sought by four-wheel driving clubs.

Motorised vehicle opportunities within Waikato are divided into (1) two-wheel driving; (2) four-wheel driving; (3) motorbikes; and (4) all terrain vehicles. Four-wheel driving can include scenic driving and touring, or specialist four-wheel driving that requires expert equipment and skills. Waikato has limited opportunities for using motorised vehicles on public conservation lands away from formed roads. Two tracks at Maratoto (Coromandel Peninsula) provide for four-wheel driving and motorbike use, and a dedicated track at Ngaroma (Pureora) provides four-wheel driving opportunities. Pureora also provides opportunities for motorised vehicle use on a number of formed roads. All terrain vehicles are often used in Pureora for hunting access, and the Department intends to manage their use for this purpose on a permit-only basis at locations where motorised vehicle access has not been specified (refer section 15: Pureora Place). Four-wheel driving clubs take an active role in track management and maintenance at Maratoto and Ngaroma. Four-wheel driving interests also extend beyond Waikato, with a high level of interest and use of these routes by clubs from the Auckland region.

Motorised vehicle use has the potential to adversely affect conservation values. Use of motorised vehicles on public conservation lands can have effects on natural quiet and the enjoyment of others, as well as direct impacts on fragile ecosystems, historic and cultural sites and wildlife. Coastal environments, wetlands and bogs are particularly vulnerable to impacts of vehicle use. Vehicles can disturb and damage shorebird nesting habitat and sensitive dune systems and also introduce biosecurity risks through the spread of weeds and disease. Further provision for motorised vehicle use within Waikato will need to be carefully assessed to ensure that adverse impacts are minimised. The Department intends to liaise with clubs when considering land-based motorised vehicle opportunities.

POLICIES—MOTORISED VEHICLES—GENERAL (CGP 9.5(b))⁶⁸

- 16.3.1.1 Should allow motorised vehicles only on roads purposefully formed and maintained for vehicle use and in car parks on public conservation land, unless otherwise stated in Part Two: Places. Access may be restricted at any time in the following situations:
- a) there is health and safety risk;
 - b) there is fire risk;
 - c) adverse effects are evident on conservation values;
 - d) priorities change for the maintenance of the formed road or designated vehicular route; or
 - e) where damage to the structure of the road is evident or likely.
- 16.3.1.2 Consider provision for use of motorised vehicles outside areas provided for by Policy 16.3.1.1 only where it is identified at sites listed in Part Two—Places and subject to Policies 16.3.1.4 and 16.3.1.10.
- 16.3.1.3 May allow motorised vehicles on public conservation lands and waters for the construction, operation and/or maintenance of authorised utilities, farming operations, and restoration activities.
- 16.3.1.4 Meet the requirements of the following criteria when considering the use of motorised vehicles on public conservation lands and waters:
- a) is consistent with the purposes for which the land concerned is held;
 - b) is consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place where the road, route or site is located;
 - c) is consistent with the visitor management zones on Map 3 and as described in Appendix 12;
 - d) adverse effects (including cumulative adverse effects) on the road, route or site and surrounding natural, historic or cultural values are avoided, or otherwise minimised;
 - e) adverse effects (including cumulative adverse effects) on the safety and enjoyment of other recreational users are avoided, or otherwise minimised (including conflicts between vehicles, mountain bikes and horses);
 - f) risks of fire and biosecurity are avoided; and
 - g) the ongoing management implications of providing vehicle access (e.g. in terms of ongoing maintenance costs) are taken into account.
- 16.3.1.5 Liaise with four-wheel drive and other motorised vehicle user groups and may enable these groups to maintain the roads they are permitted to use.
- 16.3.1.6 Work with councils and the New Zealand Police to manage motorised vehicle use on beaches to protect conservation values.
- 16.3.1.7 Establish bylaws and/or regulations, where necessary, to control the use of motorised vehicles on public conservation lands and waters within Waikato.
- 16.3.1.8 Monitor the effects of motorised vehicles on natural, historic, cultural and heritage values, and on other recreational users.

⁶⁸ Bylaws or regulations will be required to implement restrictions relevant to the management of vehicles.

- 16.3.1.9 Review the use of motorised vehicles on roads where monitoring shows that unacceptable adverse effects are occurring.
- 16.3.1.10 Consult with tangata whenua, the public, four-wheel drive and motorbike groups when considering new recreational opportunities for motorised vehicle access to public conservation lands.
- 16.3.1.11 In respect of legal roads, where actual or potential activity on or near these legal roads creates difficulties in achieving integrated management of adjoining public conservation land, work with Land Information New Zealand, New Zealand Walking Access Commission, territorial local authorities, other agencies and the public to:
- a) seek that the public voluntarily manage their use of legal roads running through public conservation lands in a way that is compatible with or recognises adjoining public conservation land management; or
 - b) enable the Department to manage the roads and facilitate recreation on them in a way that is compatible with or recognises adjoining public conservation land management; or
 - c) seek that territorial local authorities actively manage the roads and facilitate recreation on them in a way that is compatible with or recognises adjoining public conservation land management; or
 - d) stop or resume legal roads running through public conservation lands and add the stopped or resumed road lands to the public conservation land, except where the adjoining lands are stewardship areas under the Conservation Act 1987 (unless those adjoining lands are part of an action or policy to confer additional protection or preservation under section 18 Conservation Act 1987 or under the National Parks Act 1980 or the Reserves Act 1977).

16.3.2 MOUNTAIN BIKES (NON-MOTORISED)

Non-motorised mountain biking and bicycling (excluding power-assisted cycles) is an established recreational activity in Waikato. Improved track designs, management techniques, user education and signage have reduced concerns about potential user conflict and impacts on site values.

Mountain biking can generally be divided into (1) mainstream and (2) downhill categories. Mainstream mountain biking typically occurs on shared-use tracks, such as four-wheel drive roads, pack tracks or tracks originally constructed for walkers. Downhill mountain biking involves specialist bikes for challenging and relatively high-impact riding, and is typically catered for on dedicated, mountain-bike-only tracks.

Mainstream mountain biking on suitable tracks with appropriate conditions generally creates few management issues for the Department—the level of impact is similar to walking, although the impacts may differ from those caused by walkers. Downhill mountain biking, including fast downhill riding, has the potential for greater social conflict on shared tracks and to cause physical track damage. Social conflict can be minimised by implementing seasonal mountain bike access and one-way flows, encouraging adherence to the Mountain Bikers Code, and placing limits and conditions on sporting or competitive mountain bike events.

Mainstream mountain biking and cycling opportunities on public conservation land within Waikato have increased significantly, particularly with development of the Timber Trail at Pureora (part of the New Zealand Cycleway project) and creation of

other localised opportunities, such as family-orientated mountain biking on the Nikau Walk (Pirongia). Opportunities also exist off public conservation lands at Pureora, Te Uku/Pirongia, the Waikato River and selected sites on the Coromandel Peninsula.

Waikato offers other sites with potential to formalise new opportunities for mountain biking, where it is compatible with track design and other users (refer Part Two—Places). These would need careful assessment, including consideration of opportunities available off public conservation lands.

POLICIES—MOUNTAIN BIKES

- 16.3.2.1 Should only allow independent mountain biking, and may allow guided mountain biking or mountain bike events, on the tracks and roads or other areas listed in Part Two—Places and on the Hakarimata Rail Trail and the first 3.2 km of the Kakepuku Track, subject to the criteria specified in Policy 16.3.2.5.
- 16.3.2.2 Require people using mountain bikes to adhere to the ‘Mountain Bikers’ Code’ and, where mountain biking is restricted to identified tracks or roads, require mountain bikers to remain on the track or road formation at all times.
- 16.3.2.3 Establish bylaws and/or regulations, where necessary, to enable enforcement of the mountain biking provisions.
- 16.3.2.4 Promote opportunities for mountain bike use on tracks identified in this CMS as being available for mountain bike use on public conservation lands via the Department’s website, and through liaison with tourism information providers and cycling advocates.
- 16.3.2.5 Meet the requirements of the following criteria when considering the use of mountain bikes on public conservation lands and waters:
 - a) is consistent with the purposes for which the land concerned is held;
 - b) is consistent with the desired outcome and policies for the Place in which the activity is proposed to occur;
 - c) adverse effects (including cumulative effects) of mountain bike use on natural, historic or cultural values and other recreational users of the track or road are avoided or otherwise mitigated—this may include (but is not limited to) restricted seasons, daylight riding only, limits on numbers, and one-way flow; and
 - d) the ability to provide necessary facilities, including those that may be associated with overnight mountain bike opportunities, is taken into account.
- 16.3.2.6 May consider further opportunities for mountain bike use on public conservation land during the term of this CMS by updating the tracks and roads listed in Policy 16.3.2.1 and the sites listed in Part Two—Places after consultation with tangata whenua, cycling clubs, adjoining landowners, tramping clubs and the public, and in accordance with the following criteria:
 - a) is consistent with the purposes for which the land concerned is held;
 - b) is consistent with the desired outcome and policies for the Place where the formed track or road is or is proposed to be located;
 - c) adverse effects (including cumulative effects) of mountain bike use on natural, historic or cultural values and other recreational users of the track or road can be avoided or otherwise minimised;

- d) there are measures to manage the use of mountain bikes, which may include, but are not limited to, restricted seasons, daylight riding only, limits on numbers and one-way flow; and
 - e) there is the ability to provide necessary facilities, including those that may be associated with overnight cycle opportunities.
- 16.3.2.7 Monitor the effects of mountain bike use on natural, historic or cultural values, and on other recreational users.
- 16.3.2.8 Review mountain bike use on tracks or at sites where monitoring shows that unacceptable adverse effects are occurring.
- 16.3.2.9 Should not allow downhill styles of mountain biking where they may result in conflicts with other users, and/or adverse effects on natural, historic or cultural values.

16.3.3

ELECTRIC POWER-ASSISTED PEDAL CYCLES

The use of electric power-assisted pedal cycles not exceeding 300 watts, which is distinct from mountain bike use, is only allowed where identified in this CMS. The use of power-assisted cycles is generally compatible at locations where other motorised vehicles and mountain bikes are allowed. In some circumstances, their use may be suitable to enable people with less cycling skills, experience and fitness to cycle tracks used by mountain bikes. However, their use is subject to compatibility with the non-motorised cycling experience provided and management of conflicts with other users.

POLICIES—ELECTRIC POWER-ASSISTED PEDAL CYCLES (CGP 9.5(b))

- 16.3.3.1 Should only allow independent power-assisted cycle use, and may allow guided power-assisted cycling, on the tracks and roads where motorised vehicles are permitted subject to the criteria listed in Policy 16.3.3.2.
- 16.3.3.2 Meet the requirements of the following criteria when considering the use of power-assisted cycles on public conservation lands and waters:
- a) is consistent with the purposes for which the land concerned is held;
 - b) is consistent with the desired outcome and policies for the Place in which the activity is proposed to occur;
 - c) adverse effects (including cumulative effects) of power-assisted cycle use on natural, historic or cultural values and other recreational users of the track or road (including natural quiet) are avoided or otherwise mitigated—this may include (but is not limited to) restricted seasons, daylight riding only, limits on numbers, limits on speed and one-way flow; and
 - d) the ability to provide necessary facilities, including those that may be associated with overnight power-assisted cycling opportunities, is taken into account.
- 16.3.3.3 Establish bylaws and/or regulations, where necessary, to enable enforcement of the power-assisted cycle provisions.
- 16.3.3.4 May consider further opportunities for power-assisted cycle use on public conservation land during the term of this CMS after consultation with tangata whenua, cycling clubs, adjoining landowners, tramping clubs and the public, and in accordance with the following criteria:
- a) is consistent with the purposes for which the land concerned is held;

- b) is consistent with the desired outcome and policies for the Place where the formed track or road is located;
 - c) adverse effects (including cumulative effects) of power-assisted cycles on natural, historic or cultural values and other recreational users of the track or road (including natural quiet) can be avoided or otherwise minimised;
 - d) there are measures to manage the use of power-assisted cycles, which may include (but are not limited to) restricted seasons, daylight riding only, limits on numbers, limits on speed and one-way flow; and
 - e) there is the ability to provide necessary facilities, including those that may be associated with overnight power-assisted cycling opportunities.
- 16.3.3.5 Monitor the effects of power-assisted cycle use on natural, historic, cultural and heritage values, and on other recreational users.
- 16.3.3.6 Review power-assisted cycle use on tracks or at sites where monitoring shows that unacceptable adverse effects are occurring.

16.3.4 WATERCRAFT

Motorised watercraft use in Waikato is generally low. Recreational hunters and fishers are the predominant users of motorised watercraft on public conservation waters (mainly wetlands and lakes) in Waikato.

Limitations have been placed on motorised watercraft use on conservation waters to manage adverse impacts on ecological, cultural, historic and recreation values. The Department will consider discouraging watercraft access at other sensitive sites where adverse effects are anticipated (refer section 12: Freshwater Wetlands Place).

The Department may also introduce bylaws or regulations to manage adverse impacts.

POLICIES—WATERCRAFT

- 16.3.4.1 Meet the following criteria when considering watercraft use on public conservation lands and waters:
- a) is consistent with the purposes for which the land/waters concerned is held;
 - b) is consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place where watercraft use is proposed to occur;
 - c) is consistent with the visitor management zone on Map 3 and as described in Appendix 12;
 - d) adverse effects on the natural, historic or cultural values are avoided, or otherwise minimised; and
 - e) adverse effects on the safety and enjoyment of other recreational users on and off the water are avoided, or otherwise minimised.
- 16.3.4.2 Consider controlling access for watercraft from public conservation land to manage any adverse effects to public conservation land or wildlife associated with watercraft use.
- 16.3.4.3 Advocate for the management of watercraft use in a way that is consistent with Parts One and Two of this CMS, on waters not managed by the Department.
-

16.3.5 AIRCRAFT

All aircraft (powered and non-powered) require a concession to land on, take off from, or hover above (collectively referred to as landings) any public conservation lands and waters that are not a certified aerodrome, other than for search and rescue, departmental management purposes, emergency situations, maritime navigational-aid management, or land survey work, or aircraft operated by the New Zealand Defence Force or the Civil Aviation Authority. The Department, acting under delegated authority from the Minister, manages aircraft landing concessions under provisions of the National Parks Act 1980, the Reserves Act 1977 and the Conservation Act 1987, in accordance with Part 3B of the Conservation Act 1987 (in particular section 17ZF).

Aircraft can facilitate the use and enjoyment of public conservation lands and waters by providing access to difficult-to-reach places and allowing quick access for people with limited time. They are also an important tool for managing public conservation lands and waters, and for search and rescue.

Conversely, aircraft (particularly powered aircraft) activity—even scenic flights that do not involve landings—can have adverse effects on users of public conservation lands and waters, impacting on values such as amenity, natural quiet, wildlife and remoteness. It can also be incompatible with, or adversely impact on, land use activities on adjacent private land, particularly in residential areas. Effects most often relate to the presence, behaviour and noise characteristics of aircraft, and to the frequency of activity. They can also relate to conflicts between people and their activities where some have used aircraft for access and others have not. While noise is not an issue for non-powered aircraft, their use can still result in other effects identified above.

Demand for aircraft landings varies across Waikato but is generally low. Peaks in aircraft activity occur mostly in association with seasonal access for hunting, particularly at Pureora. Demand and the potential for increased aircraft use and effects on recreational users are greatest on the Coromandel Peninsula.

In order to manage the effects of aircraft landings on public conservation lands and waters, four aircraft access zones (as shown on Map 4) have been developed and applied nationally. These zones reflect the different management methodologies required and the likelihood of granting concessions for aircraft landings:

- Red Zone—areas where a concession application to land an aircraft would most likely be declined. However, concessions may be granted for aircraft landings associated with the construction, operation or maintenance of authorised equipment (e.g. meteorological, seismic) or utilities (e.g. communication systems) or to support research. This zone may apply where:
 - a) legislation provides strong direction that concessions should not be granted for aircraft landings (e.g. gazetted wilderness areas);
 - b) there is a need to protect conservation and/or recreational values from the effects of aircraft landings (e.g. nature and scientific reserves, threatened species habitat, high-use picnic and camping areas);
 - c) the area is readily accessible by other means;
 - d) aircraft activity would be incompatible with adjacent land use activities on private land (e.g. residential areas); or
 - e) aircraft activity may interfere with management activities.

- Yellow Zone—areas where a concession application to land an aircraft is likely to be granted where it meets the nationally consistent limits for this zone (see Policy 16.3.5.3). This zone applies where there is a need to restrict aircraft use; either where visitors expect a low level of encounters with aircraft or where values of natural quiet predominate particularly in backcountry and remote areas.
- Green Zone—areas where a concession application to land an aircraft is likely to be granted, subject to any relevant outcome and/or the criteria in the relevant policies. This zone may apply where:
 - a) conservation and/or recreation values are unlikely to be affected by landings;
 - b) there are natural limits on sites where landings can actually occur; or
 - c) there is likely to be little demand over the life of this CMS.
- Orange Zone—areas where there are complex issues to be managed, which require the use of limits and/or other criteria to guide whether concessions for aircraft landings could be granted. This zone may apply:
 - a) in situations that involve limited opportunities, areas of intensive aircraft activity or where a precautionary approach is required;
 - b) where there are historic or legal reasons for an approach that does not fit within the other three zones;
 - c) to provide for a specific recreational activity (e.g. heli-skiing, heli-fishing, ground-based hunting);
 - d) to only allow specific types of aircraft (e.g. non-powered aircraft);
 - e) where there are variations in seasonal use; or
 - f) where landings do not fit within the circumstances described in the other three zones.

The application of these aircraft access zones manages aircraft landings on public conservation lands and waters. These landings, combined with aircraft overflights (which the Department cannot directly manage), result in a range of aircraft encounters, from rare to frequent, that may be experienced by visitors to public conservation lands and waters, as described in Table 4 below. Outcomes and/or policies in this CMS may specify numeric limits for aircraft landings (e.g. daily, monthly, annually), or may use the words ‘rare’, ‘occasional’, ‘regular’ or ‘frequent’ to describe the overall level of aircraft activity and therefore the visitor experience expected in each air access zone (or part thereof).

Table 4: Spectrum of aircraft encounters on public conservation lands and waters.

	Low			High
Average percentage of time that aircraft are likely to be encountered	1% or less	5%	25%	50% or more
Likely visitor management zone	Remote and/or backcountry zones		Backcountry and/or front country zones	
Word used in Place outcomes/policies to describe and achieve this	Rare	Occasional	Regular	

POLICIES—AIRCRAFT (CGP 9.5(B))

- 16.3.5.1 Should apply (but not be limited to) the following criteria when assessing all concession applications for aircraft landings⁶⁹:
- a) is consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place in which the activity is proposed to occur (if within a Place) or Policy 16.3.5.10 (if outside a Place);
 - b) is consistent with the aircraft zoning provisions in this CMS and the aircraft access zones on Map 4;
 - c) is consistent with the purposes for which the lands and waters concerned are held;
 - d) adverse effects on conservation values, including adverse effects on natural quiet, are avoided, mitigated or remedied;
 - e) adverse effects on other visitors (taking into account the size of zone and the proximity of other ground users) are avoided, mitigated or remedied;
 - f) the requirement to hold and comply with certifications approved by the Department, including those addressing noise management in specified locations;
 - g) the need for monitoring the activity using new technologies; and
 - h) avoiding landings near tracks, huts, car parks or campsites (unless otherwise specified in an outcome or policy for a Place).
- 16.3.5.2 Should not grant concessions for aircraft landings in the Red Zone unless it is for the following purposes:
- a) the construction, operation or maintenance of authorised equipment (e.g. meteorological, seismic) or utilities (e.g. communication systems); or
 - b) to support authorised research.
- 16.3.5.3 Should only grant concessions for aircraft landings in the Yellow Zone that meet the limits of:
- a) two landings per operator per day at any one site (defined as any landing site within a 1kilometre radius of the initial landing site) and a maximum of 20 landings per site per operator per year.
- 16.3.5.4 May grant concessions for aircraft landings in the Green Zone.
- 16.3.5.5 May grant concessions for aircraft landings in the following Orange Zones that meet the criteria and limits specified in Part Two—Places:
- a) Cuvier Island (Repanga Island);
 - b) Motutapere Island;
 - c) Rabbit Island;
 - d) Public conservation land on Whanganui Island;
 - e) Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place; and
 - f) Pureora Place.
- 16.3.5.6 May grant concessions for aircraft landings associated with a sporting event or filming activity that does not meet the limits and/or criteria for the Yellow, Green or Orange Zones and/or the prescriptions for visitor

⁶⁹ This includes landings, take-offs and hovering.

management zones in Appendix 12 based on its merits and subject to an assessment of:

- a) the activity being consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place in which it is proposed to occur (if within a Place) or Policy 16.3.5.10 (if outside a Place);
- b) the adverse effects and the extent to which it is possible to avoid, remedy or mitigate those effects—examples of mechanisms that may be used to address any adverse effects include:
 - i) informing neighbours and potential visitors to the site that the activity is to occur and is occurring;
 - ii) avoiding peak visitation times; and
 - iii) avoiding or protecting sites with high natural or historic values;
- c) cumulative effects on the values at the site; and
- d) the need for public notification.

16.3.5.7 Advocate to aviation controllers and aircraft operators to manage flight paths to avoid adverse effects on public conservation lands and waters.

16.3.5.8 May grant concessions for aircraft landings on public conservation lands and waters for the construction, operation or maintenance of authorised equipment (e.g. meteorological, seismic) or utilities (e.g. communication systems) that do not meet the limits and/or criteria for an aircraft access zone and/or the prescriptions for visitor management zones in Appendix 12, based on its merits.

16.3.5.9 Undertake a cooperative approach with aircraft operators overflying public conservation lands and waters, to establish voluntary codes of conduct that reflect the visitor management settings of those lands and waters.

16.3.5.10 Manage aircraft activity at locations outside Part Two—Places on the following basis:

- a) Aotea Heads Scientific Reserve, Kawhia Harbour Scenic Reserves (Te Arero, Te Umuroa, Waikaraka, Rakaunui, Awaroa, Motu Tara, Puti), Kakepuku Mountain above the 400 m contour line, Matariki Wildlife Management Reserve and Mahoenui Giant Weta Scientific Reserve (Red Zone)—no aircraft activity, except as specified for the Red Zone in Policy 16.3.5.2;
 - b) Hakarimata Range, Kakepuku Mountain, Meremere Pā (Yellow Zone)—occasional aircraft activity, with limits as specified for the Yellow Zone in Policy 16.3.5.3;
 - c) Hapuakohe Range, Te Tapui, Maungakawa (Cambridge), Mangaotama/Kakariki, Bryant Memorial Scenic Reserve (Raglan) and Omaru Falls (Green Zone)—occasional aircraft activity, with infrequent bursts of aircraft activity from time to time;
 - d) Mapara (Yellow Zone)—occasional aircraft activity with limits as specified for the Yellow Zone in Policy 16.3.5.3, and with the additional condition that all aircraft activity should only occur between 10 am and 3 pm from 1 September to 31 October (inclusive) in any year; and
 - e) all other locations—regular aircraft activity, as specified for the Green Zone.
-

16.4 Animals⁷⁰

Animals are not permitted to be taken onto public conservation land unless it is consistent with legislation and provided for in a CMS or conservation management plan. Domestic animals and pets can have adverse effects on the natural, historic and cultural values of public conservation lands and waters, and can detract from visitor appreciation and enjoyment. Potential effects include killing wildlife, introducing pest plants, browsing indigenous vegetation, increased erosion and conflicting with other user groups.

16.4.1 DOGS

The Department controls the use of dogs for recreational activities, including hunting, on public conservation lands and waters to protect both indigenous wildlife and people's rights of use and enjoyment. It is illegal to take a dog onto public conservation lands and waters without a permit unless the area is identified as an 'open area' where no permit is required pursuant to Part 5C of the Conservation Act 1987. The only dogs that do not require permits on public conservation land are those used for police, customs, management, and search and rescue purposes, and disability assist dogs. Dogs are most commonly used on public conservation lands and waters in Waikato for recreational hunting of deer, pigs, goats and game birds.

A dog used for hunting must be properly trained, under the control of its handler and authorised by a hunting permit. Hunting dogs, and farm dogs on properties adjacent to known habitat for ground-dwelling or nesting indigenous species, should be avian aversion trained.

To minimise the threat of dogs on public conservation lands and waters, and to improve public understanding of where and under what conditions dogs may be taken onto public conservation lands and waters, the Department intends to develop a dog control policy pursuant to Part 5C of the Conservation Act 1987 for Waikato. The proposed policy will identify three types of areas: (1) controlled areas—no access; (2) controlled areas—access by permit only; and (3) open areas—no permit required but conditions may apply. The conditions applied to both controlled and open areas need to take into account risks to wildlife, the purpose for which the land is held, the content of relevant plans and strategies (including this CMS), and impacts on other users. This policy development will involve public consultation through a process separate from this CMS notification and public submission process. In the interim, the Department has identified several areas in this CMS where dogs are allowed to be taken without a permit (refer policies for dogs below).

Territorial local authorities have the ability through bylaws to control dog access to protect wildlife and important wildlife habitats. The Department seeks to work with local authorities to ensure that bylaws relating to dog access are complementary to controls on dog access on public conservation land.

POLICIES—DOGS (CGP 9.6(a))

- 16.4.1.1 Allow dogs to be taken onto the following public conservation lands and waters, provided they are under control at all times:
- a) Booms Flat and Hotoritori campsites (Kauaeranga Valley); and
 - b) Wentworth Valley campsite (southern Coromandel).

⁷⁰ See separate sections for game animals, wild animal control activities, and sport fishing and game bird hunting.

Part Three

- 16.4.1.2 When considering whether to issue an authorisation to take a dog onto public conservation lands and waters, regard should be had to the following matters:
- a) the actual or potential risk to protected wildlife, including at both a population and individual level, in or in the vicinity of the public conservation land in respect of the authorisation sought;
 - b) the purposes for which the land concerned is held;
 - c) the need to preserve the safety of members of the public likely to be on or in the vicinity of the public conservation land;
 - d) any conflict between dogs or people with dogs;
 - e) other users of the public conservation land, including visitor experiences; and
 - f) whether a dog is essential for the proposed activity, including recreational hunting and threat management purposes.
- 16.4.1.3 Ensure that permits to take dogs onto public conservation lands and waters contain conditions that protect the values for which those lands and waters are held.
- 16.4.1.4 Educate the community about the threats dogs can pose to conservation values.
- 16.4.1.5 Work with local authorities to ensure consistency in dog control in areas containing protected wildlife and important wildlife habitats.
- 16.4.1.6 Where a person has been authorised to take a dog onto public conservation lands, that authorisation may be subject to the following conditions:
- a) owners required to keep the dog under control at all times;
 - b) dogs must not go into or be under public buildings, including huts; and
 - c) dogs must be currently certified by an approved bird aversion trainer where there are ground-dwelling or nesting birds (except for disability assist dogs).
- 16.4.1.7 Develop a dog control policy pursuant to Part 5C of the Conservation Act 1987, in consultation with the public, to identify areas on public conservation lands and waters where dogs may be taken without compromising the values of those areas. When identifying areas where dogs may be taken, consider whether the entry by dogs:
- a) is likely to adversely affect the values for which the lands or waters are administered, protected wildlife, and other users of the public conservation lands and waters; and
 - b) is unlikely to adversely affect the values for which the lands or waters are administered, protected wildlife, and other users of the public conservation land and waters.
- 16.4.1.8 Manage dog access in accordance with the controlled and open dog areas when identified in accordance with Policy 16.4.1.7.
- 16.4.1.9 Inform the public of the location of controlled and open dog areas on public conservation lands and waters through the Department's website when identified in accordance with Policy 16.4.1.7.
-

16.4.2 HORSES

In some cases, the use of animals such as horses can enhance the recreational experience of visitors. However, they can have adverse effects as identified above. Authorisation is required to take horses onto public conservation lands and waters.

The level of horse riding on public conservation land in Waikato is low. Horses are permitted on several tracks on the Coromandel Peninsula and at Pureora; other locations are subject to authorisations. The Department intends to liaise with horse riding clubs and other known users of the area when considering horse riding opportunities.

POLICIES—HORSES (CGP 9.6(a))

- 16.4.2.1 Should only allow the use of horses at identified sites listed in Part Two—Places.
- 16.4.2.2 Meet the requirements of the following criteria when considering the use of horses on public conservation lands:
 - a) is consistent with the purposes for which the land concerned is held;
 - b) is consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place where the activity is proposed to occur;
 - c) the potential for horses to introduce or spread new weed species into the area is avoided;
 - d) the potential for horses to accelerate erosion or cause other damage to the area is avoided;
 - e) potential adverse effects on the natural, historic or cultural values are avoided, or otherwise minimised; and
 - f) potential adverse effects on the safety and enjoyment of other recreational users of the area are avoided, or otherwise minimised.
- 16.4.2.3 Should monitor the scale and effects of the presence and use of horses on public conservation land. If monitoring indicates that there are adverse effects on the natural, historic and cultural values or the visitor experience, will consider options to manage these animals so as to reduce or avoid these effects.

16.4.3 OTHER ANIMALS INCLUDING PETS

POLICIES—OTHER ANIMALS (CGP 9.6(a))

- 16.4.3.1 Should not permit livestock, other than horses in accordance with Policies 16.4.2.1–16.4.2.2, on public conservation lands unless under a grazing concession.
- 16.4.3.2 Should not permit any other types of animals, including pets, on public conservation lands or waters.

16.5 Private accommodation and related facilities

Existing structures on public conservation lands include some private accommodation and related facilities that are not available for use by the general public. Some of these structures have been authorised, but many have been erected and used unlawfully. Under the Conservation General Policy, the use of private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, is to be phased out, unless specifically allowed or

provided for in legislation. At the end of the phase-out period, private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, should be removed unless retained by the Department for public use.

Appendix 15 contains a schedule of all exclusive private accommodation in Waikato, its location and the current term of the concession. It also contains information about unauthorised exclusive private accommodation known to the Department.

A number of structures used for exclusive private accommodation in Waikato are present in several wetlands and lakes (refer section 12), and along the Waikato River. Some of these structures could be located on public conservation land and would have been constructed without authorisation. The Department intends to complete an inventory of all structures on public conservation land along the Waikato River in collaboration with other agencies, and phase out those structures that are used for private accommodation, in accordance with the Conservation General Policy. In addition, any structures recognised for customary purposes in Waikato River Treaty settlement legislation (refer section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato) will be managed in accordance with that legislation and the Conservation General Policy.

16.5.1 POLICIES—PRIVATE ACCOMMODATION (CGP 10)

- 16.5.1.1 Should not authorise new private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, on public conservation lands and waters.
- 16.5.1.2 Should phase out all existing private accommodation on public conservation land that is not specifically allowed or provided for in legislation by either:
 - a) phasing in public use of the building(s) (refer Policy 16.5.1.4a); or
 - b) removing the building(s) at the end of the phase-out period (refer Policy 16.5.1.4b), unless retained by the Department for public use.
- 16.5.1.3 Should consult the Waikato Conservation Board and the concession applicant when assessing a concession application for existing private accommodation, to determine whether it should be granted and, if so, which of the two phase-out methods (Policies 16.5.1.2a or 16.5.1.2b) is most appropriate for each individual circumstance.
- 16.5.1.4 If private accommodation is to be authorised in accordance with Policy 16.5.1.3, concession conditions should specify that:
 - a) the building(s) are to be made available, where appropriate, for use by the public—with specific details on how this requirement will be phased in over time stated in each individual concession (if option 16.5.1.2a is chosen) including the requirement that any costs charged to the public are reasonable; or
 - b) the building(s) are to be removed⁷¹ within 18 months of the death of the person named on the authorisation at the time the CMS is publicly notified, or within 20 years of CMS approval, whichever occurs first (if option 16.5.1.2b is chosen); and
 - c) the style and character of all buildings are to remain largely unmodified; and
 - d) the floor area and footprint of all buildings is not to increase beyond that existing at the time of CMS approval; and

⁷¹ Unless retained by the Department for public use or active management of historic and cultural heritage values.

- e) all buildings must comply with the Building Act 2004 and relevant local authority requirements; and
 - f) transfer/assignment to another party should not be authorised (i.e. the building(s) cannot be sold or transferred to anyone else); and
 - g) an indemnity to protect the Department is given by the concessionaire and the concessionaire holds adequate insurance (e.g. general public liability insurance, statutory liability insurance and for the removal of buildings) to cover this indemnity.
- 16.5.1.5 Should only grant the renewal of authorisations for private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, on public conservation lands and waters to the existing authorisation holder⁷², if:
- a) the existing authorisation contains a right of renewal; and
 - b) the right of renewal is exercised by the authorisation holder before the existing authority expires; and
 - c) the person holding the authorisation has complied with all of the terms and conditions of the authorisation; and
 - d) any new authorisation is granted before the existing authorisation expires.
- 16.5.1.6 Should not allow replacement of private accommodation if:
- a) a building falls into such a state of disrepair that it needs work that requires a building consent under the Building Act 2004 (minor repair and maintenance using comparable materials does not require building consent under this Act); or
 - b) buildings are destroyed or so damaged by an event (e.g. fire, flood) as to render them untenable.
- 16.5.1.7 Remove buildings not authorised in accordance with Policy 16.5.1.2 from public conservation lands and waters no later than 5 years after CMS approval.
- 16.5.1.8 Undertake an inventory of structures (private huts, temporary shelters, maimai and other structures) located on public conservation land along the Waikato River by 2019, and manage those structures in accordance with Policies 16.5.1.1 to 16.5.1.6, Policy 16.2.1.5 and relevant Treaty settlement legislation.
- 16.5.1.9 Remove buildings located on public conservation land along the Waikato River that are not authorised in accordance with Policies 16.5.1.2, 16.5.1.8 and 16.2.1.5 or relevant Treaty settlement legislation by 2024.
-

16.6 Marine mammals

Marine mammals are protected under the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978 and the Marine Mammals Protection Regulations 1992. Commercial activities involving marine mammals must be authorised by the Director-General of Conservation.

The majority of Waikato's commercial activity involving marine mammals occurs around the Coromandel Peninsula, particularly along the east coast from Whitianga to

⁷² That is, should not grant transfers/assignments to other parties.

Whangamata. Hauraki Whānui have a special interest in marine mammals and are actively involved in protection efforts.

Human interaction with marine mammals can have adverse effects, including altering the mammals' behaviour patterns. If research and monitoring of human interactions with marine mammals shows that there is, or may be, adverse effects, management options include reducing activity, discontinuing activity, or seeking a moratorium on the issuing of new permits.

The Department intends to educate commercial operators about marine mammal viewing requirements and ensure all operators are authorised to undertake marine mammal activities. The Department may also prepare, if necessary, a marine mammal tourism site plan.

16.6.1 POLICIES—MARINE MAMMALS

- 16.6.1.1 Support research into and require monitoring of the adverse effects of human interactions with marine mammals.
- 16.6.1.2 Take a precautionary approach to the number of commercial operators involved in marine mammal operations, including seeking a moratorium on the issuing of new permits if research and monitoring indicate that such a step is required.
- 16.6.1.3 Ensure all commercial operators viewing marine mammals are authorised to undertake that activity, and that they understand their responsibilities under marine mammal protection legislation and regulations.
- 16.6.1.4 Require commercial operators viewing marine mammals to provide a high standard of education and interpretation.
- 16.6.1.5 Consider preparing and reviewing at regular intervals a marine mammal tourism site plan for Waikato, which sets out desired objectives for management of the marine mammal tourism industry.
- 16.6.1.6 Work with the Ministry for Primary Industries, local government, tangata whenua and others to implement the Maui's Dolphin Threat Management Plan 2013.
- 16.6.1.7 Advise the Waikato Regional Council that the Department considers itself as an affected party for any activity within the West Coast North Island Marine Mammal Sanctuary.

16.7 Commercial eeling

The Department is responsible for protecting and preserving tuna/eels and their habitat within public conservation lands and waters as far as practicable. Tuna/eels have an important role to play in ecosystem functioning, being the top predators in freshwater ecosystems. Commercial eeling, habitat loss and hydro-development can all have potential adverse effects on tuna/eels. Longfin eels are categorised as At Risk in the Declining category.⁷³

The Ministry for Primary Industries manages commercial eeling under the Fisheries Act 1996, the Fisheries (Commercial Fishing) Regulations 2001 and other associated

⁷³ Goodman, J.M.; Dunn, N.R.; Ravenscroft, P.J.; Allibone, R.M.; Boubée, J.A.T.; David, B.O.; Griffiths, M.; Ling, N.; Hitchmough, R.A.; Rolfe, J.R. 2014: Conservation status of New Zealand freshwater fish, 2013. *New Zealand Threat Classification Series* 7. 12 p.

regulations. Commercial eel fishers require a concession to access public conservation lands and/or take tuna/eels from waters whose beds are public conservation land. Within areas administered under the Conservation Act 1987, other legislative requirements can limit the ability to lawfully grant concessions for commercial eel fishing. For example, an ecological area must be ‘managed as to protect the [ecological] value for which the land is held’. Areas held under the Conservation Act 1987 in general are required to be managed so that their natural resources are protected, and tuna/eels are part of those natural resources where they are present.

At the time of writing this CMS, there were no concessions for commercial eel fishing in Waikato. The commercial take of indigenous fauna such as tuna/eels from reserves administered under the Reserves Act 1977 is also subject to exceptions contained within section 50(1) of that Act.

16.7.1 POLICIES—COMMERCIAL EELING

- 16.7.1.1 Should not allow commercial eeling on public conservation lands or waters, to ensure the preservation of tuna/eel species.
 - 16.7.1.2 Work cooperatively with the Ministry for Primary Industries, tangata whenua and the community to protect indigenous tuna/eel populations and their habitats on public conservation lands and waters.
-

16.8 Sports fish and game bird hunting

Waters on public conservation lands are often recognised as a valuable recreational asset for anglers. Where sports fish are legally present, they may be retained. However, in certain circumstances they may be eradicated or controlled with the agreement of the relevant regional fish and game council (Conservation General Policy 2005: policy 4.2).

In Waikato, both trout and coarse fishing opportunities are available. Coarse fishing is popular at Whangamarino Wetland and several other wetlands administered by the Department. The Auckland/Waikato and Eastern Fish and Game Councils manage sport fishing in Waikato. The headwaters of many rivers and streams, particularly on the Coromandel Peninsula and in the King Country, are on public conservation land and are valued for trout fishing. Examples include the Kaniwhaniwha Stream (Pirongia), Kauaeranga River (Coromandel Peninsula), and river systems in the King Country, such as the Tawarau, Awakino and Mangaotaki Rivers.

The Auckland/Waikato and Eastern Fish and Game Councils also manage game bird hunting. The Department, however, has a responsibility to provide for game bird hunting on public conservation lands and waters where such hunting is consistent with the purposes for which the lands and waters concerned are held, and does not have adverse effects on protected indigenous species. Public conservation lands and waters in Waikato provide numerous opportunities for game bird hunting, and with its high concentration of wetlands and lake habitats, Waikato has some of the most highly valued waterfowl hunting sites in New Zealand (refer section 12: Freshwater Wetlands in Part Two—Places).

16.8.1 POLICIES—SPORTS FISH AND GAME BIRD HUNTING

- 16.8.1.1 Work with the Auckland/Waikato and Eastern Fish and Game Council(s) to preserve indigenous freshwater fisheries, to protect recreational freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats at risk of loss or decline and to facilitate access to recreational sports fishing and game bird hunting on public conservation lands and waters.
-

16.9 Mining

Under the Crown Minerals Act 1991, the Minister of Conservation has an approval role for access arrangements and minimum impact activities for all public conservation land. The Minister of Energy and Resources also has an approval role for access arrangements that relate to Tier 1 permits (as defined in the Act) and significant variations to those access arrangements. No access arrangements are allowable for land in Schedule 4 of the Act (which includes, but is not restricted to, all nature reserves, scientific reserves and marine reserves), except in very limited circumstances, which are set out in the Act.

All applications for access arrangements to minerals on public conservation lands and waters will be considered under section 61 of the Act. Mining in areas of high ecological, scenic, scientific, cultural, recreational and historic value is generally inappropriate due to the potential adverse effects on those values. Any compensation will be assessed in accordance with the Act.

16.9.1 POLICIES—MINING

- 16.9.1.1 Consider applications for access arrangements on a case-by-case basis, in accordance with the criteria set out in the relevant section (i.e. sections 61 or 61A and 61B) of the Crown Minerals Act 1991.
- 16.9.1.2 Assess applications for access arrangements under the Crown Minerals Act 1991, in accordance with (but not limited to) the following matters:
- a) whether or not the site is included in Schedule 4 of the Act;
 - b) whether the activity is consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place(s) where the activity is proposed to occur, the objectives in Part One and the other relevant policies in Part Three;
 - c) the significance of the conservation values and recreation opportunities present, and the effect the proposal will have on those values;
 - d) the adequacy and achievability of the proposed site rehabilitation work;
 - e) the adequacy or appropriateness of compensation offered for loss or damage to conservation values as a result of the access arrangement, where those losses cannot be safeguarded through other measures;
 - f) any direct economic or other benefits as well as any direct economic or other detrimental effects (such as a decrease in tourism) that the activity will have in relation to the area; and
 - g) whether a mining-related application will be classified as a 'significant application' (in accordance with the criteria set out in the Crown Minerals Act 1991) so as to require public notification.

- 16.9.1.3 Review the conditions of access arrangements under the Crown Minerals Act 1991 if monitoring reveals that the effects of mining activities on conservation values and recreation opportunities are greater than expected or new effects are discovered.
-

16.10 Sand and shingle extraction

Sand and shingle extraction from riverbeds and beaches is managed and allocated by regional councils under the Resource Management Act 1991. On public conservation lands and waters, however, these activities also require authorisation from the Department.

16.10.1 POLICIES—SAND AND SHINGLE (CGP 11.4(C))

- 16.10.1.1 Should only authorise sand and/or shingle extraction from public conservation lands and waters where adverse effects can be avoided, remedied or mitigated, and the resource cannot be accessed elsewhere.
- 16.10.1.2 Will use the following criteria when considering sand and/or shingle extraction from public conservation lands and waters:
- a) is consistent with the purposes for which the land concerned is held;
 - b) is consistent with the desired outcome and policies for the Place where the activity is proposed to occur;
 - c) is consistent with the visitor management zones on Map 3 and as described in Appendix 12;
 - d) adverse effects on the natural, historic or cultural values are avoided, or otherwise minimised; and
 - e) adverse effects on the safety and enjoyment of other recreational users of the area are avoided, or otherwise minimised.
-

16.11 Commercial filming and photography

Commercial filming and photography (filming activity) is defined as any photography or filming undertaken on public conservation land for any specific gain or reward. Filming activity has a specific set of effects that need to be managed. The majority of filming productions on public conservation land have been of small to medium scale, with the exception of a few feature films (e.g. *Lord of the Rings*). A similar level of filming activity occurs in Waikato, and includes still photography, and filming for tourism campaigns, adventure/sporting activities, advertisements and the occasional feature film (e.g. *The Chronicles of Narnia*). A large proportion of this filming activity occurs on the Coromandel Peninsula.

16.11.1 POLICIES—COMMERCIAL FILMING AND PHOTOGRAPHY (CGP 11.5)

- 16.11.1.1 Concession applications for commercial filming and photography (filming activity) on public conservation land located outside national parks should be assessed against the following criteria:
- a) conflicts between recreation/tourism uses and filming activity should be avoided (e.g. separated in space and time) or otherwise minimised;
 - b) conservation values, including sites of significance to tangata whenua, should be protected from adverse effects of filming and associated activities;

- c) aircraft use for filming activity purposes should comply with the aircraft policies in this CMS;
 - d) vehicle use for filming activities should comply with the vehicle provisions in this CMS;
 - e) animal use for filming should comply with the animal policies and provisions in the CMS; and
 - f) filming activity should be consistent with the outcomes and policies for Places in which the activity is proposed to occur.
- 16.11.1.2 All concessions for filming activity should include reference to and compliance with the latest version of the 'Code of Practice: Filming on Public Conservation Lands' (jointly developed by the Department of Conservation and Film New Zealand).
- 16.11.1.3 All concessions for filming activity should include reference to the relevant guidelines for filming within iwi boundaries as a condition of the permit.
-

16.12 Collection of material

Applications for the collection of material for research and information needs are addressed in, and must be consistent with, the Conservation General Policy 2005 (section 12: Research and information needs).

The collection of material from public conservation lands and water also includes customary activities of significance to tangata whenua (refer section 4: Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities). Treaty settlement legislation recognises the significance of customary activities to tangata whenua and in many instances specifies processes for customary use of materials managed under conservation legalisation, e.g. the Reserves Act 1977.

16.12.1 POLICIES—COLLECTION OF MATERIAL (CGP 12(D))

- 16.12.1.1 Should only allow the collection of material from public conservation lands or waters in accordance with the criteria listed within the Conservation General Policy 2005, section 12(d).
-

16.13 Wild animal control activities

The Minister of Conservation has responsibility for the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 through:

- the granting of concessions for wild animal recovery operations involving aircraft;
- issuing permits for recreational hunting; and
- the granting of permits for holding wild animals in captivity in safari parks or deer parks.

This CMS is one of several mechanisms the Minister of Conservation must consider when making a decision on applications for commercial wild animal control activities. The primary decision-making tool is the Wild Animal Control Act 1977. Consequently, policies in this CMS are considered alongside the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 when making decisions on applications. Any Regulations promulgated under the Game Animal Council Act 2013 are also relevant.

There is a variety of commercial wild animal control activities, each with their own management issues. The Department has grouped these into two main categories

(within Waikato) according to the management issues and potential effects associated with each activity. This categorisation was developed in consultation with the industries and stakeholders involved. The two categories are:

1. Deer, pig and goat carcass recovery and live capture.
2. Aerially assisted trophy hunting.

Permits are issued separately for the two types of activity. Other concessions may be required under the Conservation Act 1987; for example, for aircraft and hunting access.

Both commercial recovery operations and recreational hunting are undertaken in Waikato, and there have been conflicting views around these activities. The Department intends to manage commercial animal recovery and recreational hunting to enable the effective control of wild animals, and to minimise conflicts between wild animal control activities and other users of public conservation land.

16.13.1 POLICIES—WILD ANIMAL CONTROL ACTIVITIES

16.13.1.1 Concession applications for deer, pig and goat carcass recovery and deer live capture on public conservation land under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 should be tested against the following criteria:

- a) the contribution to concerted action to control wild animals (achieving the purpose of the Wild Animal Control Act);
- b) the outcome and policies for the Place (if the application is within a Place);
- c) relevant aircraft zoning provisions;
- d) relevant visitor management zones on Map 3;
- e) the purposes for which the land concerned is held;
- f) adverse effects on conservation values, including national priority sites for ecosystems and species, surrounding lands, and natural quiet;
- g) effects on other visitors, including their safety;
- h) the presence or otherwise of a TBfree New Zealand control programme;
- i) cumulative effects;
- j) frequency, timing and location of the activity;
- k) effects of granting the concession on other authorisations; and
- l) other relevant matters.

16.13.1.2 If a concession under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 is to be authorised in accordance with Policy 16.13.1.1, concession conditions should specify that:

- a) activities should not be conducted at the specified locations listed in Table 5;
 - b) activities should not be conducted where identified in Table 5 during the period 15 March to 30 April (inclusive) in any year; and
 - c) activities should not be conducted where identified in Table 5 during the period 1 April to 31 July (inclusive) in any year.
-

16.14 Fire management

Under the Forest and Rural Fires Act 1977, the Minister of Conservation is the rural fire authority for all state areas, which generally include all public conservation lands, and a 1 kilometre safety margin around some state areas. Some Crown and public conservation lands have been included within enlarged rural Fire Districts, bringing them under the jurisdiction of Rural Fire District Committees rather than the Minister, as the rural fire authority.

The Department implements its responsibilities under the Forest and Rural Fires Act 1977, the Fire Services Act 1975, and the Forest and Rural Fires Regulations 2005 through its National Fire Plan.

Fire is a significant threat to natural, cultural, historic and recreational values. Fire fuel reduction can be a preventative measure to reduce fire threat. Fire can also be used as a means of ecological management.

16.14.1 POLICIES—FIRE MANAGEMENT

16.14.1.1 Raise community awareness of fire threat in partnership with other organisations and at sites where this will achieve conservation benefits.

16.15 Kauri dieback disease

Kauri dieback disease (or PTA), first detected in Waikato in Whangapoua Forest /Hukarahi Conservation Area on the Coromandel Peninsula in May 2014, is a threat to remnant kauri forests in the Waikato. Important areas for kauri dieback disease prevention are the Coromandel Peninsula, Te Kauri Park and the Hakarimata Range. Ensuring this disease does not spread will require ongoing surveillance and monitoring, and behaviour changes by the public, such as effective boot and equipment hygiene/cleaning before each visit to kauri forests in Waikato. Actions undertaken or to be undertaken based on the risks posed by kauri dieback disease at individual sites include:

- active control of soil movement within kauri forests during track construction, maintenance, or revegetation;
- changes to facilities such as creating non-muddy track surfaces, including boardwalks, in high-use sites and the placement of hygiene stations at forest entry points;
- temporary or permanent closure of forests;
- ongoing monitoring and testing for the presence of kauri dieback disease; and
- targeted wild animal and other vector control.

Since 2008, when kauri dieback disease was declared an unwanted organism, the Department has been working with Waikato Regional Council, the Ministry for Primary Industries, tangata whenua and others on the Kauri Dieback Joint Agency Response.

16.15.1 POLICIES—KAURI DIEBACK DISEASE

16.15.1.1 Introduce and maintain biosecurity and kauri dieback disease forest hygiene measures for visitors at key forest entry points, and include information about these at relevant visitor information centres.

16.15.1.2 Work with infrastructure companies, roading contractors, concessionaires, and contractors working in kauri forests to adopt kauri dieback disease hygiene standards for their people, machinery, equipment and activities.

- 16.15.1.3 Work with hunters and other regular users of public conservation lands where kauri are present to adopt kauri dieback disease hygiene measures.
 - 16.15.1.4 Undertake surveillance for kauri dieback disease at priority sites on the Coromandel Peninsula, the Hakarimata Range and at Te Kauri Park Scenic Reserve in collaboration with relevant agencies.
-

16.16 Game animals (see also Wild Animals)

Game animals are those animals defined as such in the Game Animal Council Act 2013 for the purposes of the Act, i.e. chamois, deer, tahr, and wild pigs (see Glossary for full definition). Game species are also defined at Schedule 1 of the Wildlife Act 1953 (see Glossary for full definitions of game, and game animals).

The Minister of Conservation may designate any species of game animal in a specified area on public conservation land to be a 'herd of special interest' (see Glossary for definition) if the required criteria are met, including that the Minister considers that:

- (a) the animals are of special interest to hunters; and
- (b) the animals can be managed for hunting purposes; and
- (c) management of the animals for hunting purposes is consistent with the overriding considerations (see Glossary for definition).

A herd management plan is developed for each herd of special interest proposed for designation, setting out the objectives and strategies for the management of the herd to achieve the expected benefits to be gained from managing the animals for hunting purposes.

The Game Animal Council has a range of functions associated with the hunting of game animals. In relation to herds of special interest to hunters specifically, and hunting generally, the Department will work with the Council for the effective management of game animals in a manner that is compatible with the management of public conservation land and resources generally.

16.16.1 POLICY – GAME ANIMALS

- 16.16.1.1 Work with the Game Animal Council to facilitate the hunting of wild animals (that are also game animals) on public conservation land as defined by the Game Animal Council Act⁷⁴ to achieve the purposes of the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 and the Game Animal Council Act 2013.
-

16.17 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 16.17.1 The Waikato dog control policy has been developed and is operational.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 16.17.2 An inventory of structures located on public conservation land along the Waikato River.
-

⁷⁴ Public conservation land means land that is—
(a) held, managed, or administered by the Department of Conservation under the Conservation Act 1987 or an enactment listed in Schedule 1 of that Act; and
(b) owned by the Crown.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 16.17.3 Structures on public conservation land along the Waikato River have been either authorised in accordance with relevant legislation or removed.

Table 5: Locations in Waikato where activities under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 are restricted.

LOCATION	RESTRICTIONS (Note: this list may change over the life of this CMS.)
That part of the Pureora Forest Park that includes the Pikiariki Ecological Area and Pureora Village Part of Conservation Area—Whareorino Mahoenui Giant Weta Scientific Reserve Mangapohue Natural Bridge Scenic Reserve Marokopa Falls Scenic Reserve Piripiri Caves Scenic Reserve Ruakuri Caves and Bush Scenic Reserve Waitomo Caves Scenic Reserve Waituhi-Kuratau Scenic Reserve Whangamarino Government Purpose Reserve Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve Torehape Wetland Management Reserve Whangamarino Wetland Management Reserve Conservation Area—Kopuku Stream Island Block Recreation Reserve Flax Block Wildlife Management Reserve Opuatia Swamp Wildlife Management Reserve Te Miro Scenic Reserve Te Tapui Scenic Reserve Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua) Nature Reserve Double Island Nature Reserve Repanga (Cuvier) Island Nature Reserve Stanley Island Nature Reserve Green Island Scenic Reserve Korapuki Scenic Reserve Middle Island Scenic Reserve Red Mercury Island Scenic Reserve	These sites are excluded for wild animal recovery under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 to ensure that ecological and recreational values (including public safety) are not compromised.
Pureora Recreational Hunting Area	Authorisations under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 will be considered on a case-by-case basis for this location.
Pureora Forest Park Conservation Area—Pureora The Cowan Wildlife Refuge The Meyer Block Wildlife Refuge Reserve	Authorised commercial activity under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 shall not be conducted at these sites during the period 15 March to 30 April (inclusive) each year.
Awaroa Swamp Wetland Management Reserve Lake Rotongaro Wildlife Management Reserve Lake Whangape Wildlife Management Reserve Conservation Area—Lake Rotokawau Conservation Area—Waikato River and Waikato River Islands	Authorised commercial activity under the Wildlife Animal Control Act 1977 shall not be conducted at these sites during the period 1 April to 31 July (inclusive) each year.

Part Four

17 Implementation monitoring and reporting, and review

17.1 Introduction

The Department of Conservation uses many different tools to implement conservation management strategies, including:

- the Department's business planning processes, where decisions are made about priorities and resourcing for departmental activities;
- decisions on concessions and other authorisations; and
- advocacy for conservation outcomes.

Monitoring implementation will assist in determining the success of the provisions of this CMS. The Department reports regularly to the Waikato Conservation Board on the implementation of the Waikato CMS and the Conservation Board, in turn, reports annually to the New Zealand Conservation Authority. Additional monitoring is identified in the Department's Statement of Intent and Annual Reports.

This CMS will have effect for 10 years, or until formally amended or reviewed in full or in part. The term of this CMS is from 2014 to 2024.

17.1.1

OBJECTIVES

- 17.1.1.1 To report, at least annually, on progress in achieving the milestones of the Waikato CMS to the Waikato Conservation Board as a means of monitoring and reporting on its implementation.
- 17.1.1.2 To identify, at least annually, in a report to the Waikato Conservation Board, any additional priority ecosystem units and threatened and at risk species included in this CMS, for which work programmes have been approved; and report progress thereafter in meeting outputs identified in the work programme.
-

Glossary

Actively conserved historic place

Historically significant site that is managed by the Department to preserve and maintain its historic features.

Activity

Includes a trade, business, or occupation (section 2 Conservation Act 1987).

Aerially assisted trophy hunting

1. A wild animal recovery operation activity, authorised under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 (whether or not for hire or reward) where an aircraft is used for all of the following purposes and no other:
 - a) to carry by aircraft recreational hunter(s), their guide, associated firearms/ammunition; and
 - b) the active searching by aircraft for wild animals with trophy potential; and
 - c) the on-the-ground guiding of the client and killing of the wild animals, and
 - d) the recovery by aircraft of such wild animals.
2. The activity is still considered to be aerially assisted trophy hunting even if one or more of the above components is not actually achieved.

Note: This definition excludes the following activities:

- a) live capture and carriage of wild animals;
- b) the killing of any deer species during the period 23 March to 9 April, plus, when it falls outside this period, the 4 days of Easter;
- c) the killing and recovery of wild animals or any part thereof for supply to a New Zealand Food Safety Authority-approved processing facility; and
- d) the carriage or use of a shotgun.

Advocate

Support or speak in favour of (*Concise Oxford Dictionary*, ninth edition).

Aircraft

Any machine that can derive support in the atmosphere from the reactions of the air otherwise than by the reactions of the air against the surface of the earth (Civil Aviation Act 1990, section 2).

This includes, but is not limited to, the following types of aircraft: powered and non-powered; recreational and commercial; fixed-wing and rotary wing; manned and remotely piloted aircraft systems; and any other aircraft that may become regulated by Civil Aviation Rules from time to time.

Airstrip

Any specified area of public conservation land specifically maintained for the landing and take-off of fixed-wing aircraft, which may also be used by rotary-wing aircraft. It does not include a certified aerodrome as defined by the Conservation Act 1987 or an airport as defined by the Airport Authorities Act 1966.

All terrain vehicle (ATV)

A special purpose vehicle (with or without motorcycle controls and equipment) that:

- (a) is principally designed for off-road use; and
- (b) has three or more wheels; and
- (c) has an engine capacity exceeding 50 mL; and
- (d) has a gross weight of less than 1000 kg.

(Land Transport (Driver Licensing) Rule 1999: section 2)

Animal

Any mammal, bird, reptile, amphibian, fish (including shellfish) or related organism, insect, crustacean, or organism of every kind; but does not include a human being (Reserves Act 1977: section 2; National Parks Act 1980: section 2).

Any member of the animal kingdom other than a human being (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

Archaeological site

Subject to section 42(3) Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014,

- (a) Any place in New Zealand, including any building or structure (or part of a building or structure), that -
 - (i) was associated with human activity that occurred before 1900 or is the site of a wreck of any vessel where the wreck occurred before 1900; and
 - (ii) provides or may provide, through investigation by archaeological methods, evidence relating to the history of New Zealand; and
- (b) includes a site for which a declaration is made under section 43(1).

(Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014; section 6)

At risk (species)

Taxa that do not meet the criteria for any of the Threatened species categories, but are declining (though buffered by a large total population size and/or a slow decline rate), biologically scarce, recovering from a previously threatened status, or survive only in relictual populations.

(New Zealand Threat Classification System Manual 2008, page 22)

Authorisation

Collective term for all types of approvals by the Minister and the Director-General of Conservation provided for in a statutory process (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Backcountry destination

Destination that provides for more challenging adventures for visitors, including popular walks and tramps, within large-scale natural settings. Refer to prescriptions in Appendix 12 for more detail.

Biodiversity

The variability among living organisms from all sources, including terrestrial, marine and other aquatic ecosystems, and ecological complexes of which they are part. This includes diversity within species, between species and of ecosystems (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Biogenic reefs

Elevated structures on the seabed constructed of living and dead organisms. Includes fragile erect bryozoans and other sessile suspension feeders. Examples are bryozoan beds, rhodolith beds, tube worm mounds, sponge gardens and cold-water corals. These communities develop in a range of habitats, from exposed open coasts to estuaries, marine inlets and deeper offshore habitats, and may be found in a variety of sediment types and salinity regimes (Marine Protected Areas: Classification, Protection Standard and Implementation Guidelines 2008).

Biogenic habitat

Structures created by accumulations of organisms, usually rising from the seabed, or at least clearly forming a discrete and continuous biological assemblage, which is very different from the surrounding seabed and spans a distance of at least 10 m along a horizontal axis. The structure may be composed almost entirely of the organisms themselves and their tubes, shells or stems, or it may to some degree be composed of sediments, stones and shells bound together by the organisms. Biogenic habitat may be formed in whole or in part by bryozoan, coral, gorgonian, mollusc, tubeworm, rhodolith, seagrass, mangrove, saltmarsh, algal or sponge taxa. Examples include biogenic reefs, kelp forests and seagrass beds. (Adapted from: Coastal marine habitats and marine protected areas in the New Zealand Territorial Sea: a broad scale gap analysis 2011.)

Biosecurity

The exclusion, eradication or effective management of risks posed by pests and diseases to the economy, environment and human health (Conservation General Policy 2005).

The Department has functions it performs under the Biosecurity Act 1993.

Building

Has the same meaning as given to it by sections 8 and 9 of the Building Act 2004 (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Bylaw

A bylaw made by the Minister of Conservation, under section 56 of the National Parks Act 1980 or section 106 of the Reserves Act 1977. Bylaws may apply to national parks and reserves, whereas Regulations may apply to reserves and conservation areas.

Certified self containment/contained

Certified Self Containment is maintaining and certifying a motor caravan in accordance with the New Zealand Standard for Self Containment of Motor Caravans and Caravans, NZS 5465:2001.

Collaborate

Work jointly (*Concise Oxford Dictionary*).

Commercial hunting

Hunting undertaken by professional hunters for their livelihood and intended to maximise the take or kill of animals. It does not include guided recreational hunting, transportation of recreational hunters, or other means of assistance for recreational hunting for which a consideration is paid (General Policy for National Parks 2005).

Community

Any individual or group (whether statutory or non-statutory, formal or informal, commercial or non-commercial) having an interest in a particular conservation issue.

Concession

A lease, licence, permit or easement, granted under Part IIIB of the Conservation Act 1987, to enable the carrying out of a trade, occupation or business on areas managed by the Department of Conservation (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Concessionaire

A person who is a lessee, licensee, permit holder or grantee of an easement concession granted by the Minister of Conservation.

Conservation

The preservation and protection of natural and historic resources for the purpose of maintaining their intrinsic values, providing for their appreciation and recreational enjoyment by the public, and safeguarding the options of future generations (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

Conservation board

Conservation boards are established under section 6L of the Conservation Act 1987. The primary functions and powers of conservation boards are set out in sections 6M and 6N of the Conservation Act 1987, and section 30 of the National Parks Act 1980. Their functions include overseeing the preparation of conservation management strategies and national park management plans for their areas, approval of conservation management plans (e.g. for conservation parks), advising the New Zealand Conservation Authority or Director-General of the Department of Conservation on conservation matters of importance in their area. They also have an important conservation advocacy role.

Conservation General Policy

A policy prepared under section 17C of the Conservation Act 1987 to provide unified policy for the implementation of Conservation, Wildlife, Marine Reserves, Reserves, Wild Animal Control and Marine Mammals Protection Acts. It provides guidance for the administration and management of all lands and waters, and all natural and historic resources managed for the purposes of those Acts, excluding reserves

administered by other agencies under the Reserves Act 1977. It also provides guidance for consistent management planning for the wide range of places and resources administered or managed by the Department, including the preparation of conservation management strategies, conservation management plans and sports fish management plans.

Conservation legislation

A term that applies collectively to the statutes that are administered by the Department, including the Conservation Act 1987 (and the legislation listed at Schedule 1 of that Act), the Reserves Act 1977, the Wildlife Act 1953, the Marine Reserves Act 1971 and the National Parks Act 1980.

Conservation management

Conservation management means any activity that is carried out by the Minister or the Director-General (and their contractors and authorised agents) in the exercise of his or her functions, duties, or powers under the Conservation legislation.

Conservation management plan

A plan for the management of natural and historic resources, and for recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes, which implements a conservation management strategy and establishes detailed objectives for integrated management within a place or places specified in a conservation management strategy (derived from Conservation Act 1987: section 17E).

Conservation management strategy

The purpose of a conservation management strategy is to implement general policies and establish objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources, including any species, managed by the Department under the Wildlife Act 1953, the Marine Reserves Act 1971, the Reserves Act 1977, the Wild Animal Control Act 1977, the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978, the National Parks Act 1980, the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000 or the Conservation Act 1987, and for recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes (Conservation Act 1987: section 17D).

Consultation

An invitation to give advice, and the consideration of that advice. To achieve consultation, sufficient information must be supplied and sufficient time allowed by the consulting party to those consulted to enable them to tender helpful advice. It involves an ongoing dialogue. It does not necessarily mean acceptance of the other party's view, but enables informed decision-making by having regard to those views (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD)

An international agreement on biological diversity that came into force in December 1993 following a meeting of governments in Rio de Janeiro. The objectives of the Convention are the conservation of biological diversity; the sustainable use of its components; and the fair and equitable sharing of the benefits arising out of the utilisation of genetic resources.

Cultural

Societal values with an emphasis on New Zealand/European history and M āori tikanga that are handed down through the generations (General Policy for National Parks 2005).

Cumulative effect

An effect which arises over time or in combination with other effects (Resource Management Act 1991: section 3).

Customary use

Gathering and use of natural resources by tangata whenua according to tikanga (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Department, the

The Department of Conservation.

Destination management

A programme aimed at getting more people enjoying public conservation lands and waters. It focuses the Department on five key areas for success: understanding what people want; delivering quality experiences; optimising resources; working with others; and improving marketing and promotion. Destinations are a geographic area and/or group of facilities that are the focus of a single typical visitor trip, and are categorised into Icon, Gateway, Local Treasure, and Backcountry destinations. Destination Management is the coordinated management of all the elements that make up a destination, including its values, attractions, people, infrastructure, access and how the destination is marketed.

Director-General

The Director-General of Conservation.

Disability assist dog

A dog certified by one of the following organisations as being a dog trained to assist (or as being a dog in training to assist) a person with a disability:

- (a) Hearing Dogs for Deaf People New Zealand;
- (b) Mobility Assistance Dogs Trust;
- (c) New Zealand Epilepsy Assist Dogs Trust;
- (d) Royal New Zealand Foundation of the Blind;
- (e) Top Dog Companion Trust; and
- (f) an organisation specified in an Order in Council made under section 78D.

(Dog Control Act 1996, section 2)

Downhill

An extreme form of mountain biking involving riding down steep slopes, including over obstacles, drops and sharp turns, at maximum speed.

Ecological integrity

The full potential of indigenous biotic and abiotic factors, and natural processes, functioning in sustainable habitats, ecosystems and landscapes (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Ecosystem

A biological system comprising a community of living organisms and its associated non-living environment, interacting as an ecological unit (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Ecosystem services

A wide range of conditions and processes through which natural ecosystems, and the species that are part of them, help to sustain and fulfil life (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Effect

The term effect includes:

- any positive or adverse effect; and
- any temporary or permanent effect; and
- any past, present, or future effect; and
- any cumulative effect which arises over time or in combination with other effects-
- regardless of the scale, intensity, duration or frequency of the effect; and also includes:
- any potential effect of high probability; and
- any potential effect of low probability which has a high potential impact.

(Conservation Act 1987: section 2 and Resource Management Act 1991: section 3)

Electric power-assisted pedal cycle

A pedal cycle to which is attached one or more auxiliary electric propulsion motors having a combined maximum power output not exceeding 300 watts.

Emergency (for an aircraft)

A situation where a concession is not required in accordance with section 17ZF of the Conservation Act 1987 only as a result of:

- (a) a mechanical or structural or operational defect in the aircraft or its equipment; or
- (b) weather conditions or other causes not under the control of the pilot in command.

Encampment

Non-designated site used for the purpose of shelter or camping on either:

- (a) a permanent or semi-permanent basis by private individuals or groups; or
- (b) for more than short term use by private individuals or groups.

(Conservation General Policy 2005)

Endemic

A species which is native to, as well as restricted to, a particular natural area (General Policy for National Parks 2005).

Eradicate

To remove completely (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Facilities, recreational

Facilities erected on public conservation land by the Department or others that enable people to enjoy a range of recreational opportunities, including (but not limited to) visitor and information centres, camping areas, tracks and walkways, bridges, backcountry huts, roads, car-parking areas, toilets, picnic areas, signs and interpretation panels, viewing platforms, wharves, and boat ramps (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Fish

Includes all species of finfish and shellfish, at any stage of their life history, whether living or dead (Fisheries Act 1996).

Fish and Game Council

Statutory body with functions pertaining to the management, maintenance and enhancement of the sports fish and game resource in the recreational interests of anglers and hunters (Conservation Act 1987: section 26Q(1)).

Fishery

One or more stocks or parts of stocks or one or more species of freshwater fish or aquatic life that can be treated as a unit for the purposes of conservation or management (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

Foreshore

Such parts of the bed, shore or banks of a tidal water as are covered and uncovered by the flow and ebb of the tide at mean spring tides (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

Four-wheel drive road

A road that can be traversed by a four-wheel drive vehicle capable of handling conditions including grade and side slopes, width, surface material, waterway fords, entry and exit angles to fords and depressions, and seasonal snow and ice, without causing adverse effects to the adjoining areas or the road. The road, through maintenance and managed traffic densities and/or seasonal closures, can be retained at this four-wheel drive standard, and can be shared with other vehicles, including trail bikes and mountain bikes.

Freedom camping

Freedom camping means to camp (other than at a camping ground) within 200 m of a motor vehicle accessible area or the mean low-water springs line of any sea or harbour, or on or within 200 m of a formed road or a Great Walks Track, using 1 or more of the following: (a) a tent or other temporary structure; (b) a caravan; (c) a car, campervan, housetruck, or other motor vehicle (Freedom Camping Act 2011 section 5(1)).

Glossary

Freedom camping does not include the following activities: (a) temporary and short-term parking of a motor vehicle; (b) recreational activities commonly known as day-trip excursions; (c) resting or sleeping at the roadside in a caravan or motor vehicle to avoid driver fatigue (Freedom Camping Act 2011: section 5(2)).

Freshwater fish

Includes all species of finfish of the Classes Agnatha and Osteichthytes, and all shellfish of the Classes Mollusca and Crustacea, that must, at any time in the life history of the species, inhabit freshwater; and includes any part thereof and such finfish and shellfish that seasonally migrate into or out of freshwater (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

Game (other than game animal—see separate definition)

The wildlife declared to be game specified in the First Schedule to the Wildlife Act 1953. As at the date of the adoption of this Conservation Management Strategy, all game species are birds, viz: black swan (*Cygnus atratus*), chukar (*Alectoris chukar*), kuruwhengi/Australasian shoveler (*Anas rhynchotis*), pāpera/grey duck (*Anas superciliosa*), mallard duck (*Anas platyrhynchos*), pūtangitangi/paradise shelduck (*Tadorna variegata*), spoonbill duck (*Anas clypeata*), grey partridge (*Perdix perdix*), red-legged partridge (*Alectoris rufa rufa*), peihana/pheasant (*Phasianus colchicus*), pūkeko (*Poryphio poryphio melanotus*), Brown quail (*Coturnix ypsilophora*), koera/Californian quail (*Callipepla californica*) and Bobwhite quail (*Colinus virginianus*).

Game animal (for the purposes of the Game Animal Council Act only—see also Wild animal, Herd of special interest, and Overriding considerations)

- (a) means—
 - (i) any chamois, deer, or tahr:
 - (ii) any pig that is living in a wild state and is not being herded or handled as a domestic animal or kept within an effective fence or enclosure for farming purposes; and
- (b) includes the whole or any part of the carcass of the animal.

(Game Animal Council Act 2013: section 4)

Gateway destination

A destination that helps to introduce New Zealanders to the outdoors and allows them to learn about conservation. These destinations may provide for a diverse range of activities and include many traditional camping and tramping destinations. The term 'gateway visitor destination' has the same meaning in this Conservation Management Strategy.

Guide dog

See Disability Assist Dog.

Habitat

The environment within which a particular species or group of species lives. It includes the physical and biotic characteristics that are relevant to the species concerned (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Herd of special interest

A species of game animal in a specified area designated by the Minister of Conservation as a herd of special interest under section 16 of the Game Animal Council Act 2013 (Game Animal Council Act 2013: section 4).

Historical and cultural heritage

Any building or other structure, archaeological site, natural feature, wāhi tapu, or object, associated with people, traditions, events or ideas, which contributes to an understanding of New Zealand's history and cultures (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Historic area

An area of land that

- (a) contains an inter-related group of historic places; and
- (b) forms part of the historical and cultural heritage of New Zealand; and
- (c) lies within the territorial limits of New Zealand.

(Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014: section 6)

Historic place

- (a) Means any of the following that forms a part of the historical and cultural heritage of New Zealand and that lies within the territorial limits of New Zealand:
 - (i) land, including an archaeological site or part of an archaeological site;
 - (ii) a building or structure (or part of a building or structure);
 - (iii) any combination of land, buildings or structures, or associated buildings or structures (or parts of buildings, structures, or associated buildings or structures); and
- (b) includes anything that is in or fixed to land described in paragraph(a).

(Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014: section 6)

Historic resource

Means a historic place within the meaning of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014, and includes any interest in a historic resource (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

Hover

An aircraft flight at a constant height and position over a surface.

Icon destination

A high-profile, popular destination that underpins national and international tourism, and provides memorable visitor experiences in New Zealand. The term 'icon visitor destination' has the same meaning in this Conservation Management Strategy.

Iconic feature

A natural feature that New Zealanders value the most because it is nationally significant and helps define who they are as New Zealanders. Iconic features are managed to ensure that they are maintained or restored.

Iconic species

A plant or animal species that New Zealanders value as nationally special and contributing to national identity.

Indigenous species

Plants and animals that have established in New Zealand without the assistance of human beings, and without the assistance of vehicles or aircraft. This includes species that are unique to New Zealand as well as those that may be found elsewhere in the world. The words 'indigenous' and 'native' have the same meaning in this Conservation Management Strategy. (based on the Conservation General Policy 2005).

Integrated conservation management

The management of natural resources, and historical and cultural heritage, and existing or potential activities in a manner which ensures that priorities are clear and that the effects of each activity on others are considered and managed accordingly (Conservation General Policy 2005).

International Council on Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS)

An international, non-governmental organisation of heritage professionals engaged in the conservation of places of cultural heritage value and dedicated to the conservation of the world's historic monuments and sites. ICOMOS international acts as an advisory body to the World Heritage Committee alongside the IUCN for natural heritage (www.icomos.org.nz; viewed September 2012).

International Council on Monuments and Sites New Zealand Charter, Te Pumanawa o ICOMOS o Aotearoa Hei Tiaki I Nga Taonga Whenua Heke Iho o Nehe

A set of guidelines on cultural heritage conservation, produced by ICOMOS New Zealand. The New Zealand Charter is widely used in the New Zealand heritage sector and forms a recognised benchmark for conservation standards and practice. It is used by central government ministries and departments, by local bodies in district plans and heritage management, and by practitioners as guiding principles (www.icomos.org.nz/nzcharters.html; viewed September 2012).

International Union for the Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources (IUCN)

The world's first global environmental organisation, which was founded as the International Union for the Protection of Nature (or IUPN) in 1948, following an international conference in Fontainebleau, France. The organisation changed its name to the International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources in 1956 with the acronym IUCN, which remains its full legal name. It is a neutral forum for governments, non-government organisations, scientists, business and local communities to find pragmatic solutions to conservation and development challenges (www.iucn.org/about/ viewed September 2012).

Interpretation

Conveying information about the origin, meaning or values of natural, historic or cultural heritage via live, interactive or static media in a way that stimulates interest, increased understanding and support for conservation.

Intrinsic value

A concept which regards the subject under consideration as having value or worth in its own right independent of any value placed on it by humans (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Kaitiaki

Guardian (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Kaitiakitanga

The exercise of guardianship by the tangata whenua of an area in accordance with tikanga. In relation to a resource, this includes the ethic of stewardship based upon the nature of the resource itself (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Livestock

Any ass, cattle or other browsing animal (not being a deer or goat or a marine mammal, fish or shellfish), horse, mule, sheep, or swine, of whatever age or sex and whether or not neutered; and includes any animal, of whatever age or sex and whether or not neutered, of a class declared to be livestock for the purposes of this Act by the Governor-General by Order in Council (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

Local Treasure destination

Locally important, vehicle accessible location that provides recreation opportunities for, and grow connections with, nearby communities.

Locally treasured natural heritage

Locally treasured natural heritage work is collectively the species and natural features which are valued by a local community as defining their locality.

Mahinga kai

The customary gathering of food and natural materials and the places where those resources are gathered (based on Ngai Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, section 167).

Mana

Prestige; authority (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Marine mammal

A marine mammal includes-

- (a) any mammal which is morphologically adapted to, or which primarily inhabits, any marine environment; and
- (b) all species of seal (Pinnipedia), whale, dolphin and porpoise (Cetacea), and dugong and manatee (Sirenia); and
- (c) the progeny of any marine mammal; and
- (d) any part of any marine mammal.

(Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978: section 2)

Glossary

Marine protected area

An area of sea especially dedicated to or achieving the protection and maintenance of biodiversity at the habitat or ecosystem level, and managed through legal or other effective means (Conservation General Policy 2005). Includes Marine reserves.

Marine reserve

A marine area constituted as a marine reserve under the Marine Reserves Act 1971.

Mātaitai Reserve

A management tool created under Part IX of the Fisheries Act 1996 to recognise use and management practices of Māori in the exercise of non-commercial fishing rights. Tangata whenua may apply to the Minister of Fisheries to establish a mataitai reserve on a traditional fishing ground for the purpose of recognising and providing for customary management practices and food gathering.

Mātauranga Māori

Māori traditional knowledge (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Mauri

Essential life force; the spiritual power and distinctiveness that enables each thing to exist as itself (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Milestone

A specific action that is a measurable step towards achieving an objective or outcome.

Mining

- (a) Means to take, win, or extract, by whatever means,—
 - (i) a mineral existing in its natural state in land; or
 - (ii) a chemical substance from a mineral existing in its natural state in land; and
- (b) includes—
 - (i) the injection of petroleum into an underground gas storage facility; and
 - (i) the extraction of petroleum from an underground gas storage facility; but
- (c) does not include prospecting or exploration for a mineral or chemical substance referred to in paragraph (a)

(Crown Minerals Act 1991: section 2).

Motor vehicle(includes *Motorised vehicle*)

Means

- (a) A vehicle drawn or propelled by mechanical power and
- (b) includes a trailer, but
- (c) does not include:
 - (i) A vehicle running on rails; or
 - (ii) repealed

- (iii) A trailer (other than a trailer designed solely for the carriage of goods) that is designed and used exclusively as part of the armament of the New Zealand Defence Force; or
- (iv) A trailer running on 1 wheel and designed exclusively as a speed measuring device or for testing the wear of vehicle tyres; or
- (v) A vehicle designed for amusement purposes and used exclusively within a place of recreation, amusement, or entertainment to which the public does not have access with motor vehicles; or
- (vi) A pedestrian-controlled machine; or
- (vii) A vehicle that the Agency has declared under section 168A is not a motor vehicle; or
- (viii) A mobility device.

(Land Transport Act 1998: section 2)

Note 1: any motor vehicle (which includes trail and quad bikes, snow mobiles and snow groomers) taken onto public conservation land must be registered and/or licensed where it is required to be registered and/or licensed under the Land Transport Act 1998.

Note 2: for the purposes of this CMS, a motor vehicle does not include any electric power assisted pedal cycle delivering up to 300 watts power.

Mountain bike

A colloquial term for a non-motorised bicycle that can be used off formed roads.

Nationally iconic species

A plant or animal species that New Zealanders value as nationally significant and contributing to New Zealand's national identity.

Natural

Existing in or produced by nature (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Natural character

The qualities of an area which are the result of natural processes and, taken together give it a particular recognisable character. These qualities may be ecological, physical, spiritual or aesthetic in nature (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Natural heritage management

The natural heritage management system is an integrated and scientifically sound suite of tools to help natural heritage managers (both within and outside the Department) to make more consistent decisions and monitor their progress to national outcomes.

Natural quiet

Natural ambient conditions in a natural area; the sounds of nature (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Natural resources

Plants and animals of all kinds, and the air, water and soil in or on which any plant or animal lives or may live, and landscape and landform, and geological features, and

Glossary

systems of interacting living organisms, and their environment, and includes any interest in a natural resource (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

Natural state

Unmodified by human activity or introduced plants or animals (Conservation General Policy 2005).

New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy

A government-approved national strategy (2000) providing an integrated response to New Zealand's declining indigenous biodiversity, prepared in part to meet a commitment under the Convention on Biological Diversity.

Non-powered aircraft

Any machine not driven by a powered device, that can derive support in the atmosphere from the reactions of the air otherwise than by the reactions of the air against the surface of the earth. This is an inclusive definition that includes non-powered gliders, non-powered hang gliders, parachutes, balloons and any other non-powered aircraft that may become regulated by Civil Aviation Rules from time to time.

Outcome

A goal or end result of a conservation action or series of actions (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Overriding considerations (for the purposes of the Game Animal Council Act 2013)

- (a) the welfare and management of public conservation land and resources generally;
- (b) any statement of general policy that is made, or has effect as if it were made, under—
 - (i) section 17B of the Conservation Act 1987;
 - (ii) section 44 of the National Parks Act 1980;
 - (iii) section 15A of the Reserves Act 1977;
 - (iv) section 14C of the Wildlife Act 1953;
- (c) any conservation management strategy made under section 17D of the Conservation Act 1987;
- (d) any conservation management plan made under—
 - (i) section 17E of the Conservation Act 1987;
 - (ii) section 40B of the Reserves Act 1977;
- (e) any management plan made under—
 - (i) section 47 of the National Parks Act 1980;
 - (ii) section 41 of the Reserves Act 1977;
- (f) any wild animal control plan made under section 5 of the Wild Animal Control Act 1977;
- (g) any pest management strategy, pest management plan, pathway management plan, or operational plan made under the Biosecurity Act 1993.

(Game Animal Council Act 2013, section 4)

Participation

The contribution of effort, information and ideas towards the work of the Department (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Partnership

The relationship between individuals or groups that is characterised by mutual cooperation and responsibility for the achievement of a specific goal (Conservation General Policy 2005).

People and organisations

An inclusive phrase used to refer to all individuals, clubs, companies, councils and other organisations and groups, with an interest in conservation

Personal mobility device

A device designed to transport one person, that is propelled by hand or a propulsion system with a maximum speed of 15 km per hour, and is ridden by a disabled person (Conservation General Policy 2005). For the purposes of this CMS, this does not include power-assisted cycles.

Pest

Any organism, including an animal, plant, pathogen or disease, capable or potentially capable of causing unwanted harm, or posing significant risks to indigenous species, habitats and ecosystems or freshwater fisheries (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Place

An area identified in a conservation management strategy or plan for the purposes of integrated conservation management. It may include any combination of terrestrial, freshwater and marine areas, and may be determined by a range of criteria including but not limited to: ecological districts, geological features, catchments, internal departmental, regional or district council or rohe/takiwā boundaries, land status, major recreation or tourism destinations, commonality of management considerations, unique management needs (Conservation General Policy 2005).

For the purposes of the Waikato Conservation Management Strategy, the Places are the Hauraki Islands Place, Hauraki-Coromandel Peninsula Place, Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve Place, Firth of Thames/Tikapapa Moana Wetland Place, Freshwater Wetlands Place, Karioi to Whareorino Place, Waitomo Place and Pureora Place.

Power-assisted cycle

A power-assisted cycle is a pedal cycle that has an electric motor of up to 300 watts.

Precautionary principle

Taking a cautious approach to conservation management decisions when information is uncertain, unreliable or inadequate.

Preservation

In relation to a resource, means the maintenance, so far as is practicable, of its intrinsic values (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

Priority ecosystem unit

An ecosystem identified through the Department's natural heritage prioritising processes as being one of the most effective places to work to ensure that a representative range of ecosystems are protected.

Private accommodation

Place to live or lodge which is not available to the general public on an open basis (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Protected areas

Terrestrial, freshwater and marine areas that are protected primarily for the purposes contained in the conservation legislation, including the conservation of natural resources and historical and cultural heritage, using a range of legal mechanisms that provide long-term security of tenure, status or land use purpose, either privately or publicly owned (based on Conservation General Policy 2005).

Protection

In relation to a resource, means its maintenance, so far as is practicable, in its current state; but includes:

- (a) its restoration to some former state; and
- (b) its augmentation, enhancement or expansion.

(Conservation Act 1987: section 2)

Public accommodation

A place to stay in that is generally available to the public on an open basis.

Public conservation lands and waters

Lands and water areas administered by the Department of Conservation for their respective legislative purpose, including the preservation of natural and historic resources of those areas covered by this conservation management strategy. Reserves administered by other agencies are not included in this definition.

Ramsar (Convention on Wetlands of International Importance, especially as Waterfowl Habitat)

An intergovernmental treaty that provides the framework for national action and international cooperation for the conservation and wise use of wetlands and their resources.

Recreational freshwater fisheries

Any freshwater fisheries where the fishing of sports fish and indigenous freshwater fish is lawfully carried out for recreational purposes (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Regulations (for conservation areas)

A Regulation made by the Governor-General, by Order in Council, under the relevant section of the conservation legislation.

Related facilities

Any structure or piece of equipment that is used in conjunction or association with accommodation. Examples include garages, outhouses and outdoor showers.

Relic

Population of a species whose distribution has been severely modified and disturbed with dispersed fragments remaining.

Remotely piloted aircraft system

Any unmanned aircraft piloted from a remote station, excluding;

- (a) any model aircraft, up to 25 kg, operated by visual reference for recreational purposes; or
- (b) an unmanned balloon, kite or rocket.

Reserve

Reserve has the meaning given to that term in section 2 of the Reserves Act 1977 and includes the following categories of reserve: recreation, historic, scenic, nature, scientific, government purpose, local purpose.

Restoration

The active intervention and management of modified or degraded habitats, ecosystems, landforms and landscapes in order to restore indigenous natural character, ecological and physical processes, and their cultural and visual qualities; or for historic heritage, to return a place as nearly as possible to a known earlier state (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Road

Means:

- (a) a road that is formed and maintained for vehicle use by the public;
- (b) a route that is marked by the Department for vehicle use by the public or identified in a conservation management strategy or conservation management plan for use by vehicles generally or for a particular type of vehicle (for example a bicycle) or as a vehicle parking area.

(Conservation General Policy 2005).

A road may or may not pass over a defined legal road.

See also definition of four-wheel drive road.

Roar period

The primary recreational deer hunting period, from 15 March to 30 April (inclusive).

Rohe

Geographical territory of an iwi or hapū (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Site

A defined area within a wider place (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Species

A group of organisms that has evolved distinct common inheritable features and occupies a particular geographical range, and which is capable of interbreeding freely but not with members of other species (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Sports fish

Every species of freshwater fish that the Governor-General may declare to be sports fish for the purposes of the Conservation Act 1987; examples are trout and salmon (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Statement of Intent (SOI)

A document that sets out the longer term direction for the Department. Its primary purpose is to enable Ministers, select committees, and the central and audit agencies that support them, to assess the performance of government departments.

Structure

Any building, equipment, device, or other facility made by people and which is fixed to land; and includes any raft (Resource Management Act 1991: section 2).

Takiwā

Place or territory used by or associated with an iwi, hapū or whānau (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Tangata whenua

Iwi or hapū that has customary authority in a place (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Taonga

Valued resources or prized possessions held by Māori, both material and non-material. It is a broad concept that includes tangible and intangible aspects of natural and historic resources of significance to Māori, including wāhi tapu and intellectual property (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Threatened (species)

Includes all species categorised as Nationally Critical, Nationally Endangered or Nationally Vulnerable under the New Zealand Threat Classification System 2008.

Thrill-seeker

Visitors seeking controlled risk activities as part of an exciting experience. For mountain biking this may include downhill, freestyle and dirt jumping.

Tikanga

Māori custom, obligations and conditions (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Translocation

Movement by human intervention of a species from place to place, usually with the intention of improving the status of the species.

Utilities

Includes but not limited to those facilities based over or under the ground; structures and infrastructure for telecommunications; energy generation and transmission; sewerage; water supply and flood control; oil and gas; roads and airstrips; and hydrological and weather stations (based on Conservation General Policy 2005).

Urupā

Burial ground.

Vehicle

A contrivance equipped with wheels, tracks or revolving runners on which it moves or is moved. Includes a hovercraft, a skateboard, in-line skates and roller skates; but does not include -

- (i) A perambulator or pushchair;
- (ii) A shopping or sporting trundler not propelled by mechanical power;
- (iii) A wheelbarrow or hand-trolley;
- (iv) [Repealed]
- (v) A pedestrian-controlled lawnmower;
- (vi) A pedestrian-controlled agricultural machine not propelled by mechanical power;
- (vii) An article of furniture;
- (viii) A wheelchair not propelled by mechanical power;
- (ix) Any other contrivance specified by the rules not to be a vehicle for the purposes of this definition;
- (x) Any rail vehicle.

(based on Land Transport Act 1998; section 2)

Note: any motor vehicle (which includes trail and quad bikes, snow mobiles and snow groomers) taken onto public conservation land must be registered and licensed.

See also: Aircraft, all terrain vehicle, motor vehicle, mountain bike, power-assisted cycle.

Visitor

For the purpose of this CMS, visitors are people using areas and facilities managed by the Department. They include adults and children from both New Zealand and overseas, and they may either arrange their own visit or use the services of a concessionaire.

Wāhi tapu

A place sacred to Māori in traditional, spiritual, religious, ritual or mythological sense (Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014: section 6).

Wetlands

Permanent or intermittently wet areas, shallow water or land-water margins. They include swamps, bogs, estuaries, braided rivers and lake margins (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Wild animal (see also *Game animal*)

Has the meaning set out in the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 and includes: possums, deer, wallabies, tahr, wild goats, wild pigs, and chamois. It does not include an animal that is part of a herd designated to be a herd of special interest under section 16 of the Game Animal Council Act 2013 (Wild Animal Control Act 1977: section 2).

Wilderness Area

Any conservation area set aside as a Wilderness Area under section 18 of the Conservation Act 1987, or any part of a National Park set aside as a Wilderness Area under section 14 of the National Parks Act 1980.

Wildlife

Any animal (as defined as in the Wildlife Act 1953) that is living in a wild state; and includes any such animal or egg or offspring of any such animal held or hatched or born in captivity, whether pursuant to an authority granted under the Wildlife Act 1953 or otherwise; but does not include wild animals subject to the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 (Wildlife Act 1953: section 2).

World Heritage Area

A site designated under the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) World Heritage Convention as being of outstanding universal value as a site of cultural or natural heritage.

Appendix 1

Work or activities of the Department of Conservation that may meet the requirements of Section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 for exemptions from land use consents

This table is presented to meet the requirements for enabling exemptions under Section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA). It does not exclude the need to meet all departmental requirements for the assessment of effects or responsibilities under the RMA or other legislation (e.g. Building Act 2004, Historic Places Act 1993). Advice from the relevant local authority is required to determine whether a land use consent under the RMA is required. All structures and tracks on public conservation lands managed by the Department are maintained, upgraded or built to the standards specified in SNZ HB 8630:2004. This table does not imply that the facilities included within it will be managed in perpetuity.

Where work affecting historic assets potentially exempt from resource consent is planned, consultation would generally be expected with Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 prior to such works being carried out.

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
Tracks, roads and car parking areas for visitor purposes			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Upgrade of existing tracks and roads to meet current departmental service standards using current alignment. Service standard upgrades of existing tracks and roads through partial or complete realignment to take advantage of better grades and terrain features, or to incorporate elements of natural or historic landscape. Construction of new tracks as agreed in consultation with the community. Improvements to any existing track as considered necessary to mitigate any environmental impact, health and safety concern or visitor risk, or to provide improved access for any management purpose. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Construction of tracks and roads using cut to fill excavation, cut to waste excavation and levelling using hand tools, motorised equipment and machinery. Excavation of batter slopes to a 1.5 m maximum height. Vegetation removal from the full width of the track corridor and discretionary removal of any vegetation beyond the track and road corridor that is considered hazardous or that may adversely impact upon track components such as batter slopes, drainage or track surface materials. Aggregate surfacing, including placement and compaction of local and imported materials (from 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Soil disturbance, including disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil. Disturbance and soil compaction in fill areas. Surface water runoff, including modification of existing natural watercourses, and control and redirection of surface water using various means, such as culvert pipes, drainage sumps, cut-outs and cross boards. Alterations to land contours and slopes during track construction and upgrade. Removal of vegetation from the track corridor and from immediately adjacent to the asset corridor. Disturbance of archaeological and historic features, 	<p>Existing tracks, roads and car parks Waikato District: <i>Tracks</i> Bell Track Bridal Veil Falls Walk Deversons Route Devlins Route Fort Route, Te Kauri Park Four Brothers Walk Hakarimata Rail Trail Hakarimata Summit Track Hakarimata Walkway Hapuakohe Walkway—north Hapuakohe Walkway—south Hihikiwi Track Kakepuku Track Karakariki Track Karamu Walkway—north Karamu Walkway—south Karioi Track Kauri Loop Walk—Hakarimata Kauri Route, Te Kauri Park Link Track Mahaukura Track Mangakara Nature Walk Mangakino Route Manuka Track Maungakawa Walk McKenzie Route, Te Kauri Park Medium Gorge Route, Te Kauri Park Ngarunui Track (Bryant Track) Nikau Walk Oparau Route Ruapane Track Sheep Track, Te Kauri Park</p>

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
	<p>approved weed-free sources).</p> <p>5. Use of local materials in the vicinity of the asset corridor where necessary for obtaining fill/surfacing materials.</p> <p>6. Ground works of in-ground timber steps, including formation and levelling, drainage and timber construction.</p> <p>7. Construction of drainage and redirection of surface water from the track surface to existing natural contours using various means such as culvert pipes, drainage sumps, cut-outs and cross boards.</p> <p>8. Re-formation and widening of roads to provide safe access for two vehicles and road stability to the required standards. Drainage improvement to prevent erosion and deterioration of the road surface and structure, and to provide safe vehicle access.</p> <p>9. Maintenance of historic heritage features associated with the track or road to ensure that they are not adversely impacted.</p>	<p>including historic botanicals, on or in the immediate vicinity of the track or road.</p>	<p>Tahuanui Track Te Tapui Track Tirohanga Track Tiwarawara Route Tourist Loop Track—'Gavin O'Keefe Walk' Waikuku Track, Te Kauri Park Waingarō Link Track—Hakarimata Wairake Track Warikanui Route Water Race Track Waterworks Walk Whangamarino Historic Walk Whararua Route</p> <p><i>Car parks and maintained areas</i> Bridal Veil Falls Carpark & Amenity Area Corcoran Road Carparks—upper and lower Corcoran Road Picnic Area Falls Road Carpark and boatramp Grey Road Carpark Kakepuku Carpark & vehicle access track Kaniwhaniwha Carpark and picnic areas Parker Road Carpark—Hakarimata Rail Trail—Picnic Area Te Tapui Carpark Te Toto Gorge Carpark</p> <p><i>Roads</i> Swallow Lane Road</p> <p>Coromandel District:</p> <p><i>Tracks</i> Billygoat to Hihi Trig Track Billygoat Incline Railway Billygoat Incline Track Billygoat Landing Walk Billygoat Walk Booms Haulage Races Booms Historical Walk Booms—Orange Peel Corner Track Broken Hills Battery Walk Cathedral Cove Walk Catleys Track Cookson Kauri Walk Coromandel Walkway Crosbies Hut Emergency Water Track Crosbies Main Range Track Cuvier Access Track (Settlement Tramway) Cuvier Landing Tramway Cuvier Lighthouse Track Cuvier Radar Station Track Devcich Kauri Track Edwards Lookout Walk Fantail Bay Track Gem of the Boom Walk Golden Hills Battery Walk Government Battery Track Hahei Beach Walk Hihi Stream to Motutapere Track Hihi Trig to Kopu Hikuai Road Summit Track</p>

Appendix 1

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
			Hihi-Kopu Hikuai / Paton Stream Junction Track Horitori Pony Area Hotoritori—Mountain Bike Track Hydro Camp to Pinnacles Hut Track Jasper Creek Walk Kahikatea Walk, Kauaeranga Kaipawa Trig Track Karaka Track Kauaeranga Nature Walk Kauri Block Walk Lynch Stream Tramping Track Mahurangi Island Track Main Range Walk West End Collins Drive Maratoto Road end to Golden Cross Track Matamataharakeke Track Memorial Loop Track Moss Creek Track Muriwai Walk Murrays Walk New Chums Beach Walk Old Wires Track Opera Point Walk Opito Pā Historic Reserve Walk Opoutere Beach Track Outlook 76 Walk Papa Aroha Walk Paton Stream Dam Walk Track Pauanui Beach Loop Walk Pauanui Summit Walk Pauanui Walk to Flat Rock Pinnacles Hut to Pinnacles Track Piraunui Track Pohutukawa Grove Beach Walk Puketui Walk Track Rangihau Track Red Bridge Walk Rocky's Walk Track to Tinker's Gully Royal Standard Tramway Track Square Kauri Walk Stony Bay Fishing Track Stony Bay Mountain Bike Track Tarawaere Dam Track Taumatawahine Walk Te Pare Pā Walk Te Puru Track Third Branch Walk—East Collins Drive Tokatea (Lucas Lookout) Walk Tawaere/Waterfall/Billygoat Link Track Twin Kauri Track Waiau Falls Walk Waiau Kauri Grove Walk Waiau Summit Track Waikawau Bay Campsite Beach Access Track Waikawau Bay Northern Beach Access Track Waikawau Bay Tsunami Track Waimama Bay Walk Wainora Tramping Track Waiomu Kauri Grove Walk

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
			Waiomu Valley Track Waiotahi / Main Range Track Waipaheke (motorbike) Track Waitaia Track Water Race Link to Third Branch Track Water Race Tunnels Track Webb Creek Packhorse Steps Webb Creek to Hydro Camp Track Wentworth Falls Walk Wentworth Mines Walk Whangaiterenga to Booms Track Whangamata Track Wharekirauponga Tramway Wharekirauponga Walk Whenuakite Kauri Loop Walk Whitianga Rock Walk <i>Car parks and maintained areas</i> Booms Historical Carpark Broken Hills Carpark Camp Management Complex Carpark Cathedral Cove Carpark Coromandel Walkway Carpark—north Coromandel Walkway Carpark—south Hahei Beach Carpark Hahei Beach Picnic Area Hihi Carpark Hoffmans Pool Carpark k Jasper Creek Carpark—east Jasper Creek Carpark—west Kahikatea Picnic Area Kaipawa Trig Carpark—north Kaipawa Trig Track Carpark—south Kauaeranga Road end Carpark Maratoto Road end Carpark Muriwai Walk Carpark—Port Jackson Murrays Walk Carpark Nature Walk Carpark Opera Point Carpark Otama Beach Amenity Area Outlook 76 Carpark Papa Aroha Carpark Piraunui Carpark Pohutukawa Grove Beach Carpark Puketui Road Carpark (off Kopu Hikuai Road) Puketui Valley Road end Carpark Quarry Road Carpark Square Kauri Walk Carpark Tarawaere Carpark Tinkers Gully Carpark Tokatea Lookout Carpark Twin Kauri Amenity Area Waiau Falls Carpark Waiau Kauri Grove Carpark Waikawau Bay Refuse Transfer Carpark Waikawau Beach Access Carpark—west Waikawau Beach Boatramp Carpark Wentworth Picnic Area Wentworth Picnic Area Carpark Wentworth Road end Carpark

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
			Whenuakite Kauri Loop Walk Carpark Wires Road Carpark <i>Roads</i> Broken Hills Road Hotoritori Road Kauaeranga Road Maratoto (four-wheel drive) Loop Road /Track Maratoto Four-wheel Drive Road Maratoto Road Port Jackson Road Rolling Road Stony Bay Road Waikawau Bay Campsite Internal Road Waikawau Bay Road Waiotahi Road Wentworth Campsite Ford Wentworth Valley Road Wires Road King Country Taupo District: <i>Tracks</i> Angel's Rest Track Arataki Swingbridge/Track Bog Inn Hut Track Bog Inn Track Buried Forest Walk, Pureora Centre North Island Track Crawler Tractor Track Forest Tower Walk, Pureora Grand Canyon Track Hauhungaroa Track Keepa Road Ketemaringi Track Kihi Track Mangakahu Road/Track Mangaotaki Track Mangapohue Track Mangatutu Track, Okahukura Mapara Track Marokopa Falls Track Mt Pureora to Bog Inn Hut Track Mt Pureora Track Mt Titiraupenga to Arataki Road Track No. 10 and No. 11 Tramway Track Okahukura Road Eastern Section Okahukura Road Western Section Omaru Falls Track Opapaka Pā Pasture Walk Opapaka Pā Track Pikiariki Tractor Hauler Track Piripiri Walk Rimu Track, Pureora Ruakuri Bushwalk South Block Quad Track, Mapara Tawarau Track Te Araroa Walkway over Department of Conservation administered land Te Raumaiku Track Timber Trail

Appendix 1

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
			Titiraupenga Road Toi Toi Track, Pureora Tolley Road Hunters Access Totara Walk, Pureora Waihaha Hut Track Waihaha Track Waihora Lagoon Track Waihora Stream Road—west Waihora/Hauhungaroa Track Waikoura Campsite to Top of the World (No. 9) Waione Tram Track Waipapa—south Waipapa Loop Track Waipapa—north Waitanguru Track Waitomo Forest Access Easement Waitomo Walkway Whareorino Track <i>Car parks and maintained areas</i> Aratoro Carpark Forest Tower Carpark Link Road Carpark Mangaotaki Carpark Mangapohue Track Carpark Marokopa Falls Carpark / Picnic Area Omaru Falls Carpark Opapaka Pā Carpark Pureora Cabin's Carpark Pureora Office Carpark Ruakuri Carpark Waihora Lagoon Carpark Waitanguru Track Carpark <i>Roads</i> Appletree Road Arohena Internal Campsite Road Barryville Road Bismarck Road (Forest Tower Road) Bog Inn Road Cabbage Tree Road Drum Bridge Road Endeans Road Fletchers Road Gully Road Hoddle Road Kaka Road Ketemaringi Road Kotukutuku Road Link Road East Link Road West / Waimiha Road Manganui Road Maramataha Road Matakana Road Mine Road Moerangi Road Ngaherenga Internal Campsite Road Ngaroma Road Okahukura Road Okauaka Ford Okauaka Road

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
			<p>Ongarue Ford Otamaroa Road Owawenga Road Panhandle Road Perham Avenue Pikiariki Road Piropiro Road (Kokomiko) Plains Road Pureora Forest Access Road (Waihora) Pureora Village Back Road Quarry Road Ruakuri Access Road Scott Road Select Loop Road / Mountain Bike Track Swamp Road Te Rauamo Road Tihoi Road Titirapunga Road West Toi Toi Road Totara Stream Road Waimahora Road Waimonoa Road Waipapa Reserve Road Waitaramoa Road YMCA Road</p> <p>Proposed future developments</p> <p>Waikato District: Extend Hakarimata Rail Trail to train wreck Develop historic coastal walk within Te Toto Gorge Scenic Reserve Build new 20-bunk hut on Pirongia Mountain Provide a viewpoint and visitor access to eastern Whangamarino</p> <p>Coromandel District: Expand Cathedral Cove Car Park Upgrade walking track at Cathedral Cove Upgrade Rocky's Walk Upgrade Wharekirauponga Track</p> <p>King Country Taupo District: Develop a car park and toilet at Tui Road Connect Timber Trail to Hauhungaroa Track Develop/install toilets on the Timber Trail Upgrade access to Pureora Forest Park from Mangakahu Road Extend Hauhungaroa Track to meet SH41 to provide improved Te Araroa route Upgrade final stage of Link and Barryville Road Upgrade and re-route Mangapuhoe Walk Extend and upgrade Marokopa Falls Track to waterfall Upgrade Centre North Island Track to wheelchair standard</p>

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
Structures* and buildings for visitor purposes			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Upgrade of existing structures and buildings to meet departmental service standards so that visitor group requirements are met, such as minimum access widths and safety barrier heights as specified within SNZ 8630:2004. Scheduled 'like for like' (substantially similar structures and buildings built on the same footprint or within the immediate vicinity) replacement of existing structures and buildings as they reach the end of their projected/ economic life. Construction of new structures and buildings required to meet service standards for existing tracks, roads, amenity areas and campsites. Construction of new structures and buildings as a component of development work for new tracks, roads, amenity areas and campsites. Improvements to any existing structure and building considered necessary to mitigate any environmental impact and health and safety concern, or to provide improved access for any management purpose. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Preparatory site works such as vegetation removal, formation and levelling of structure and building footprints, and excavation of piles and footings. Works associated with water reticulation and sewage containment/ treatment. Construction of drainage and redirection of surface water from structure and building footprint to existing natural contours using various means such as culvert pipes, drainage sumps and cut-outs. Construction of structures and buildings such as bridges, boardwalks, stairs, handrails, safety barriers, viewing platforms, huts, shelters, toilets, signage and ladders in accordance with requirements of SNZ 8630:2004 for the relevant visitor group. Maintenance of historic heritage features associated with the structure or building to ensure that their integrity is not adversely impacted. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Soil disturbance, including disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil. Disturbance and soil compaction in fill areas. Surface water runoff, including modification of existing natural watercourses, and control and redirection of surface water using various means, such as culvert pipes and drainage sumps. Alterations to land contours and slopes during structure and building construction. Removal of vegetation from structure and building footprint and immediate surroundings. Aesthetic impact and altered sight-lines from man-made structures in natural areas. Disturbance of archaeological and historic features, including historic botanicals, and aesthetic impact on historic landscapes. 	<p>Existing structures and buildings</p> <p>Waikato District: Bridal Veil Falls Toilets Corcoran Road Helipad Corcoran Road toilet Grey Road—Carpark Shelter Grey Road—Toilets Hakarimata Summit Helipad Kakepuku Toilet Kaniwhaniwha Campsite—toilet block Kaniwhaniwha Carpark—toilet Karioi Helipad Mahaukura Helipad New Hut toilets, platform and staircase Pahautea Hut Pahautea Hut campers' shelter Pahautea Hut Helipad Pahautea Hut tool shed Parker Road Carpark Toilet Rail Trail toilet—single Rail Trail toilet—wheelchair Structures including swingbridges, footbridges, glulam bridges, pole bridges, suspension bridges, vehicle bridges, boardwalks, barriers, handrails, steps, staircases, toilets, shower units, shelters, kiosks, viewing platforms, viewing towers, sheds, offices, stiles, access ramps, gates, culverts, helicopter landing pads, access ladders, access chains, water tanks, water tank stands, retaining walls and bollards associated with all existing and proposed tracks, roads and car parks Swan's—Norski toilet Waikuku Track—Campsite toilet Wairēinga—Interpretation Shelter</p> <p>Coromandel District: Cathedral Cove Beach toilet Coromandel Walkway pit toilet Crosbies Hut Fletcher Bay backpackers accommodation Fletcher Bay—Modcom office Fletcher Bay—Portacom accommodation Hunters House—Kauaeranga Valley Kauaeranga Visitor Centre 24-hour toilet Kauaeranga Volunteer House Maratoto House Pinnacles Hut Poley Bay Musterer's Hut Port Jackson Bach Port Jackson Campsite Office/Workshop Port Jackson—cooking shelter Port Jackson—Warden's accommodation Stony Bay Bach Stony Bay Campsite Office Stony Bay Campsite Rubbish Transfer Station Stony Bay Campsite toilet 1</p>

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
			<p>Stony Bay House Stony Bay sealed vault toilet 2 Structures including swingbridges, footbridges, glulam bridges, pole bridges, suspension bridges, vehicle bridges, boardwalks, barriers, handrails, steps, staircases, toilets, shower units, shelters, kiosks, viewing platforms, viewing towers, sheds, offices, stiles, access ramps, gates, culverts, helicopter landing pads, access ladders, access chains, water tanks, water tank stands, retaining walls and bollards associated with all existing and proposed tracks, roads and car parks Waikawau Bay Campsite Management Complex 3 Bay Shed Waikawau Bay Campsite Management Office Waikawau Bay Campsite Manager’s House Waikawau Bay Lodge Waikawau Bay Old School House Waikawau Bay–Knox Cottage</p> <p>King Country Taupo District: Bog Inn Hut (historic place) Hauhungaroa Hut Kakaho Campsite jetty Leitch’s Hut Mangatutu Hut Quarry (Waimonoa) Structures including swingbridges, footbridges, glulam bridges, pole bridges, suspension bridges, vehicle bridges, boardwalks, barriers, handrails, steps, staircases, toilets, shower units, shelters, kiosks, viewing platforms, viewing towers, sheds, offices, stiles, access ramps, gates, culverts, helicopter landing pads, access ladders, access chains, water tanks, water tank stands, retaining walls and bollards associated with all existing and proposed tracks, roads and car parks Waihaha Hut Wildlife Hut</p> <p>Proposed structures and buildings Waikato District: Build 20-bunk Pahautea Hut</p> <p>Coromandel District: Build a commercial hub building at Cathedral Cove Carpark</p> <p>King Country Taupo District: Build an Accommodation Lodge at Piropiro Campsite Build a visitor centre at Pureora Village</p>

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
Campsites and amenities for visitor purposes			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Upgrade of existing campsites and amenities to meet departmental service standards so that visitor group requirements for sites and amenity areas are met, as specified within SNZ 8630:2004 and any other applicable service standard. Scheduled 'like for like' (substantially similar campsites and amenities built on the same footprint or within the immediate vicinity) replacement of existing campsite and amenity assets as they reach the end of their projected/ economic life. Construction of new campsites and amenities required to meet service standards for existing campsites and amenity areas. Construction of new assets such as structures and buildings as a component of development work for new campsites and amenity areas. Improvements to any existing asset or establishment of new assets considered necessary to manage, meet regulatory requirements, and mitigate any environmental impact or health and safety concern, or to provide improved access for any management purpose. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Preparatory site works such as vegetation removal, formation and levelling of campsite and amenity footprint, and excavation of piles and footings. Works associated with water reticulation and sewage containment /treatment, including effluent dispersal fields and in-ground waste tanks. Construction of drainage and redirection of surface water from building and structural campsite and amenity footprint to existing natural contours using various means, such as culvert pipes, drainage sumps and cut-outs. Construction of campsites and amenities such as bridges, boardwalks, stairs, handrails, safety barriers, shelters, toilets, showers, signage and ladders, in accordance with requirements of SNZ 8630:2004 and any other applicable service standard for the visitor group. Maintenance of historic heritage features, including historic botanicals, associated with the campsite or amenities to ensure that they are not adversely impacted. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Soil disturbance, including disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil. Disturbance and soil compaction in fill areas. Surface water runoff, including modification of existing natural watercourses, and control and redirection of surface water using various means, such as culvert pipes and drainage sumps. Fill materials not normally found on the site (e.g. scoria) may be imported. Alterations to land contours and slopes during campsite and amenity construction. Removal of vegetation from the asset footprint and from immediately around the campsite and amenities. Aesthetic impact and altered sight-lines from man-made structures in natural areas. Noise from increased usage of campsite and amenities. Increased water take for operation of campsite and amenities. Disturbance of archaeological and historic features, including historic botanicals, on or in the immediate vicinity of the campsite or amenities. 	<p>Existing campsites and amenities</p> <p>Waikato District: Central Clearing Campsite—Bell Track Kaniwhaniwha Campsite Pahautea Hut tent pads ×7</p> <p>Coromandel District: Billygoat Basin Backcountry Campsite Billygoat Basin tent pads Booms Flat Campsite Broken Hills Campsite Catleys Campsite Crosbies Hut Backcountry Campsite Fantail Bay Campsite Fletcher Bay Campsite Hahei Beach Picnic Area Hotorotori Campsite Kahikatea Picnic Area Kahikatea Powered Campsite Moss Creek Campsite Otama Beach Amenity Area Pinnacles Campsite Port Jackson Campsite Shag Stream Campsite Stony Bay Campsite Totara Flat Campsite Trestle View Campsite Twin Kauri Amenity Area Waikawau Bay Campsite Wainora Campsite Wentworth Campsite Wentworth Picnic Area Whangaiterenga Campsite</p> <p>King Country Taupo District: Aratoro Amenity Area Arohena Campsite Kakaho Campsite Mangaotaki Amenity Area Mangapahoe Picnic Area Ngaherenga Campsite Ngaherenga West Campsite Opapaka Pā Amenity Area Oparure Hall lawn Piripiri Picnic Area Piropiro Campsite Pureora Protest Site (historic place) Ruakuri Amenity Area Ruakuri Upper Picnic Area Waitanguru Amenity Area</p> <p>Proposed future developments</p> <p>Waikato District: Nil</p>

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
			<p>Coromandel District: Upgrade campsites at:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Booms Flat 2. Catleys 3. Fantail Bay 4. Fletcher Bay 5. Hotoritori 6. Stony Bay 7. Shag Stream 8. Totara Flat 9. Trestle View 10. Wainora 11. Whangaiterenga <p>Upgrade facilities to support the provision of a small number of freedom camping sites, in accordance with approved site plans at:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Cathedral Cove Carpark (new) 2. Goat Bay (Moehau) 3. Quarry Road Carpark (Wharekirauponga) 4. McDonalds Recreation Reserve (North Waiaro Bay, Colville) 5. Opito Bay Reserve 6. Otama Recreation Reserve (eastern end) 7. Papamaire Island (Whangamata North) 8. Sandy Bay Recreation Reserve 9. Maratoto Road Carpark 10. Waikawau Recreation Reserve (Thames Coast) <p>Provide powered campervan sites at:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Cathedral Cove Carpark 2. Kauaeranga Valley adjacent to Visitors Centre 3. Waikawau Bay Campsite <p>King Country Taupo District: Upgrade Ngahaerenga Campsite Provide powered campervan site adjacent to Pureora cabins</p>
Historic assets—remedial work and maintenance			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Maintenance of historic places to departmental service standards, and ICOMOS (The ICOMOS standard refers specifically to the ICOMOS New Zealand Charter for the Conservation of Places of Cultural Heritage Value 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Vegetation management around historic places, maintenance of drainage channels, and management of safety issues including barrier construction. 2. Repairs and conservation 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Minor soil disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil. Disturbance and soil compaction in fill areas. 2. Surface water runoff, including modification of existing natural watercourses and 	<p>Waikato District: Aotea Heads Scientific Reserve Kakepuku Mountain Historic Reserve Meremere Pā Site Historic Reserve Puraho Historic Reserve Taniwha Pā Historic Reserve</p> <p>Coromandel District: Broken Hills mines Christmas Creek Kauri Dam Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) lighthouse settlement</p>

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
<p>(Revised 2010)) and NZHPT standards and guidelines.</p> <p>2. Stabilisation of condition of historic assets by conservation treatments and land stabilising, e.g. construction of retaining walls.</p>	<p>treatments as scheduled to concrete, masonry, metal, timber and earthwork structures.</p> <p>3. Maintenance of historic heritage features, including historic botanicals, associated with the historic asset to ensure that they are not adversely impacted.</p>	<p>control and redirection of surface water using various means, such as culvert pipes and drainage sumps.</p> <p>3. Removal of vegetation from assets and immediate vicinity.</p>	<p>Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) radar station structures Dancing Creek Kauri Dam Lillis Battery</p> <p>Opera Point Historic Reserve Opito Point Historic Reserve Royal Standard Tramway Te Pare Point Historic Reserve Whitianga Rock Scenic and Historic Reserve</p> <p>King Country Taupo District: Ongarue Tramway Opapaka Pā Pureora—crawler tractor Pureora—log hauler Pureora—timber workers' house and store Ruakuri historic kiosk</p>
Signs			
<p>1. Erection of signage on public conservation land for the purpose of providing information and interpretation to the public.</p> <p>2. Erection of signage on public conservation land for the purpose of informing people about fire lighting restrictions.</p>	<p>1. Works associated with the erection of signage.</p>	<p>1. Aesthetic impact from man-made structures in natural areas.</p> <p>2. Removal of vegetation from sign footprint and vicinity.</p>	<p>All public conservation land within the area covered by this CMS.</p> <p>Other land within 1 km of public conservation land for fire purposes or where permission has been given by the landowner.</p>
Biodiversity tracks, roads and structures (including staff accommodation)			
<p>1. Refer to 'Activity scope' for 'Tracks, roads and car parking areas for visitor purposes', 'Structures and buildings for visitor purposes' and 'Campsites and amenities for visitor purposes'.</p>	<p>1. Refer to 'Management actions' for 'Tracks, roads and car parking areas for visitor purposes', 'Structures and buildings for visitor purposes' and 'Campsites and amenities for visitor purposes'.</p> <p>NB: Not all visitor standards noted above will apply to biodiversity tracks, roads and structures (including staff accommodation). In some cases a lesser standard may apply.</p>	<p>1. Refer to 'Environmental impacts' for 'Tracks, roads and car parking areas for visitor purposes', 'Structures and buildings for visitor purposes' and 'Campsites and amenities for visitor purposes'.</p>	<p>All public conservation land in the area covered by this CMS where conservation management programmes are being undertaken.</p>

Other management-related activities			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Erection of fences on public conservation land and its boundaries. 2. Habitat enhancement. 3. Pest control and/or eradication. 4. Airstrips for fire-fighting purposes. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Vegetation removal to provide clear lines for fences. 2. Some animal pest operations. (Note: discharge permits will be required for operations utilising pesticides.) 3. Earthworks and vegetation clearance associated with habitat enhancement, i.e. pond/drain creation or re-alignment, and fire management. 4. General access required to undertake the activity. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Vegetation removal. 2. Soil disturbance, including disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil. 3. Death and likely eradication of target mammalian pests; possible death of non-target species. 	<p>All public conservation land in the area covered by this CMS where conservation management programmes are being undertaken.</p>
Hazardous goods			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Use, transportation, storage and disposal of hazardous substances. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Storage, transportation and application of hazardous substances including, but not limited to, flammable liquids, pesticides and herbicides. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ground and water contamination, species disturbance, staff and public health risks, if substance storage and use codes not followed. 	<p>All public conservation land in the the area covered by this CMS where conservation programmes are being undertaken.</p>

* Structures for visitor purposes include viewing platforms, steps/stairs, boardwalks, bridges, handrails, safety fences, stiles, signage, etc.

† This information signals a potential infrastructure upgrade and does not predetermine decisions about whether or not freedom camping is allowed at these locations. If freedom camping is prohibited from any of the listed sites then the action proposed will not be undertaken.

Appendix 2

Important ecosystems and habitats within Waikato

Ecosystem/habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Administrative status	Management responses
Communities of temperature inversion basins	Monoao (<i>Dracophyllum subulatum</i>) scrub/lichenfield Red tussockland (<i>Chionochloa rubra</i>)	Pest plants and animals.	Public conservation land.	Plant and animal pest control.
Dune vegetation	Spinifex (<i>Spinifex</i> spp.), pingao (<i>Ficinia spiralis</i>) grassland/sedgeland Oioi (<i>Apodasma similis</i>), knobby clubrush (<i>Ficinia nodosa</i>) sedgeland	Pest plants and animals. Incursions of invasive species. Human impacts from recreational use (vehicles, trampling) and coastal development.	Public conservation land and land administered by local territorial authorities.	Plant and animal pest control. Advocacy, education and consultation with local stakeholders. Revegetation at some locations. Biosecurity monitoring and response management.
Forest of cold climates	Hall's tōtara (<i>Podocarpus cunninghamii</i>), pāhautea (<i>Libocedrus bidwillii</i>), kāmahi (<i>Weinmannia racemosa</i>) forest <i>Olearia</i> , <i>Pseudopanax</i> , <i>Dracophyllum</i> scrub Mataī (<i>Prumnopitys taxifolia</i>), Hall's tōtara, kāmahi forest	Pest plants and animals.	Public conservation land and land administered by local territorial authorities.	Plant and animal pest control.

Ecosystem/habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Administrative status	Management responses
<p>Forest of mild climates</p> <p>Kahikatea (<i>Dacrycarpus dacrydioides</i>) forest</p> <p>Tōwai (<i>Weinmannia silvicola</i>), rāta (<i>Metrosideros robusta</i>), montane podocarp forest</p> <p>Black beech (<i>Fuscopora solandri</i>) forest</p> <p>Tawa (<i>Beilschmiedia tawa</i>), <i>Weinmannia</i> podocarp forest</p> <p>Kāmahi broadleaved, podocarp forest</p> <p>Tōtara (<i>Podocarpus totara</i>), matai, kahikatea forest</p>	<p>The diversity of mild forest types is well represented by nationally significant examples on the Coromandel Peninsula, in Pureora Forest Park, on volcanic cones in the Waikato and King Country, and in the lowland alluvial plains of the Waikato Basin. Forest types support a range of threatened and at risk species. Kahikatea forest is nationally rare and underrepresented.</p>	<p>Pest plants and animals.</p> <p>Incursions of invasive species.</p> <p>Modification of natural hydrological regimes (relevant to kahikatea forests).</p>	<p>Public conservation land, land administered by local territorial authorities and private land.</p>	<p>Plant and animal pest control.</p> <p>Advocacy (including statutory processes) to minimise further modification of hydrological regimes. Biosecurity monitoring and response management.</p>
<p>Forest of warm climates</p> <p>Kauri (<i>Agathis australis</i>) forest</p> <p>Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved forest</p> <p>Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved, New Zealand beeches forest</p> <p>Tawa, kohekohe (<i>Dysoxylum spectabile</i>), mangleao (<i>Litsea calicaris</i>) broadleaved, podocarp forest</p> <p>Kāmahi, tawa, podocarp and New Zealand beeches forest</p> <p>Pōhutukawa (<i>Metrosideros excelsa</i>), pūriri (<i>Vitex lucens</i>), karaka (<i>Corynocarpus laevigatus</i>) broadleaved forest</p>	<p>The diversity of warm forest types is well represented by nationally significant examples on Coromandel offshore islands, the Coromandel Peninsula, Pureora Forest Park, volcanic cones in the Waikato and King Country, and lowland alluvial plains of the Waikato Basin.</p> <p>Includes Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve, which is designated as a wetland of international importance under the Ramsar Convention.</p> <p>Forest types support a large range of threatened and at risk species, including several endemic species. Several sites represent the southernmost extent of some species and forest types (forests with kauri).</p>	<p>Pest plants and animals.</p> <p>Incursions of invasive species.</p> <p>Modification of natural processes, including natural hydrological regimes (relevant to kahikatea forests), PTA (kauri dieback disease; <i>Phytophthora</i> taxon <i>Agathis</i>).</p>	<p>Public conservation land and private land.</p>	<p>Plant and animal pest control.</p> <p>Advocacy (including statutory processes) to minimise further modification of natural processes. Biosecurity monitoring and response management. PTA (kauri dieback disease) advocacy, monitoring and hygiene protocols.</p>

Ecosystem/habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Administrative status	Management responses
Kahikatea, pukatea (<i>Laurelia novae-zelandiae</i>) forest	Offshore islands support particularly high levels of threatened and at risk biodiversity.			
Lakes Windform Riverine Swamp Dune	Includes nationally significant Waikato peat lakes and west coast dune lakes. Several lakes support significant populations of aquatic and avifauna wildlife and native macrophyte flora (in particular Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko)).	Pest plants and fish. Incursions of invasive species. Modification of natural catchment development and land use (primarily effects of agriculture resulting in eutrophication and sedimentation).	Public conservation land, land administered by local territorial authorities and private land.	Plant and fish pest control or eradication where feasible. Advocacy (including statutory processes) to minimise further adverse effects of catchment development and land use. Revegetation of riparian zones at some locations.
Rivers	The Waikato River, including its tributaries, is the largest river system in New Zealand.	Pest plants and fish. Effects of catchment development and land use (primarily effects of agriculture resulting in eutrophication and sedimentation).	Public conservation land, land administered by local territorial authorities and private land.	Plant pest control where feasible. Advocacy (including statutory processes) to minimise further adverse effects of catchment development and land use. Collaboration with River Accord partners to progress river management.
Saline communities	Waikawau Beach represents a nationally significant example of this ecosystem type.	Pest plants and animals.	Public conservation land.	Plant and animal pest control.
	Searush (<i>Juncus maritimus</i>), oioi (<i>Leptocarpus similis</i>), glasswort (<i>Sarcocornia quinqueflora</i>) and sea primrose (<i>Samolus repens</i>) rushland/ herbfield			

Ecosystem/habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Administrative status	Management responses
Wetlands	<p>Oioi restiad rushland/ reedland</p> <p><i>Baumea</i> sedgeland</p> <p>Mānuka (<i>Leptospermum scoparium</i>), tangle fern (<i>Gleichenia discarpa</i>) scrub/fernland</p> <p>Ephemeral wetland herbfield</p> <p>Lakeshore turf herbfield</p> <p>Flaxland</p> <p>Raupō (<i>Typha orientalis</i>) reedland</p> <p>Manuka, wire rush (<i>Empodisma minus</i>) restiad rushland</p> <p><i>Coprosma</i>, <i>Olearia</i> scrub</p> <p>Bamboo rush (<i>Sporadanthus ferrugineus</i>), wire rush restiad rushland</p>	<p>The diversity of wetlands is well represented by nationally significant examples on the Coromandel Peninsula, in the Waikato alluvial lowlands and on the west coast of the King Country. Includes Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve and Whangamarino Wetland Management Reserve, both of which are designated as wetlands of international importance under the Ramsar Convention. The wetland types support a large range of threatened and at risk species. Includes endemic flora and fauna and nationally significant populations of some species.</p>	<p>Pest plants and animals. Effects of catchment development and land use (primarily effects of agriculture resulting in eutrophication and sedimentation). Modification of hydrological regime by water abstraction, drainage and flood control schemes.</p>	<p>Public conservation land and private land.</p>
Coastal cliff communities	<p>Pōhutukawa treeland/ rockland</p>	<p>Pest plants and animals.</p>	<p>Public conservation land.</p>	<p>Plant and animal pest control.</p>
Karst communities	<p>The Maniapoto Karst region represents nationally significant karst features and supports threatened and at risk species.</p>	<p>Pest plants and animals. Effects from catchment development and land use. Human-induced impacts from recreational use and tourism operations.</p>	<p>Public conservation land and private land.</p>	<p>Plant and animal pest control. Advocacy (including statutory processes) to minimise effects from catchment development and land use. Advocacy, monitoring and compliance of recreational use and concessionaires.</p>

Appendix 3

Islands administered by the Department of Conservation in Waikato

Island	Administrative status	Desired island classification (10-year goal)*	Mammalian pests	Issues
Cuvier Island (Repanga Island)	Nature Reserve	Ecosystem Restoration	Absent	Ongoing ecological restoration is appropriate (primarily weed control and biosecurity). Suitable controlled concession activities (e.g. nature tourism) may be appropriate within 10 years. Future translocations of out of range species may occur. Maintain controlled access to protect biodiversity values.
Cuvier Island (Repanga Island)—lighthouse site	Maritime New Zealand; managed as if nature reserve and permit for access required.	Ecosystem Restoration	Absent	Historic features are significant and require maintenance. 'Ecosystem Restoration' classification due to significant ecological values and restoration objectives.
Double Island (Moturehu)—Mercury Islands	Nature Reserve	Ecosystem Recovery	Absent	Nationally significant biodiversity values. Limited and controlled access for conservation research is appropriate. Highly controlled and restricted access is required. Recreation activities not appropriate. Mercury Island tusked wētā (<i>Motuweta isolata</i>) present—endemic to Mercury group.
Red Mercury Island (Whakau)—Mercury Islands	Scenic Reserve / Wildlife Sanctuary	Ecosystem Recovery	Absent	Nationally significant biodiversity values. Limited and controlled access for conservation research is appropriate. Highly controlled and restricted access is required. Recreation activities not appropriate. Mercury Island tusked wētā present—endemic to Mercury group.
Kawhiti or Stanley Island—Mercury Islands	Nature Reserve	Ecosystem Recovery	Absent	Nationally significant biodiversity values. Limited and controlled access for conservation research is appropriate. Highly controlled and restricted access is required. Recreation activities not appropriate. Mercury Island tusked wētā present—endemic to Mercury group.
Green Island—Mercury Islands	Scenic Reserve / Wildlife Sanctuary	Minimum Impact	Absent	Nationally significant, high biodiversity values and highly fragile environment. Highly controlled and restricted access is required. Recreation activities not appropriate. Mercury Island tusked wētā present—endemic to Mercury group.

Appendix 3

Island	Administrative status	Desired island classification (10-year goal)*	Mammalian pests	Issues
Atiu or Middle Island—Mercury Islands	Scenic Reserve / Wildlife Sanctuary	Minimum Impact	Absent	Nationally significant, high biodiversity values and highly fragile environment. Highly controlled and restricted access is required. Recreation activities not appropriate. Mercury Island tusked wētā present—endemic to Mercury group.
Korapuki Island—Mercury Islands	Scenic Reserve / Wildlife Sanctuary	Ecosystem Recovery	Absent	Nationally significant biodiversity values. Limited and controlled access for conservation research is appropriate. Highly controlled and restricted access is required. Recreation activities not appropriate. Mercury Island tusked wētā present—endemic to Mercury group.
Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua)—excluding Hongiora Island	Nature Reserve/ Wildlife Sanctuary	Ecosystem Recovery	Absent	Nationally significant biodiversity values. Limited and controlled access for conservation research is appropriate. Highly controlled and restricted access is required. Recreation activities not appropriate.
Hongiora Island—Aldermen Islands (Ruamaahu)	Nature Reserve / Wildlife Sanctuary	Minimum Impact	Absent	Nationally significant, high biodiversity values and highly fragile environment. Highly controlled and restricted access is required. Recreation activities not appropriate.
Mahurangi Island (Goat Island)	Recreation Reserve	Open Sanctuary	Absent	Potential island showcase site. Maintain as animal pest free as threatened species present. Maintain recreation opportunities and open access. Promote and provide interpretation for conservation issues. Allow commercial and recreation opportunities (nature tourism).
Motutapere Island	Scenic Reserve	Open Sanctuary	Absent	Maintain as animal pest free, with community involvement. Potential for fauna introductions. Maintain recreation opportunities and open access.
Rabbit Island	Conservation Area (stewardship)	Open Sanctuary	Absent (Unconfirmed)	Unrestricted access, low ecological priority.
Waikato River islands	Wildlife Management Reserve	N/A	Present	Highly modified, unrestricted access, low ecological priority.
Ohinewai Island—Waikato River	Conservation Area (stewardship)	N/A	Present	Highly modified, unrestricted access, low ecological priority.

* The island classification is aligned with the 10-year term of this CMS and represents the desired future state of the island (Department of Conservation 2010: The island strategy: guidelines for managing islands administered by the Department of Conservation). The island classification is intended for guidance only, and needs to be read in conjunction with the outcome and policies for Places in Part 2 of this CMS.

Appendix 4

Priority ecosystems on public conservation lands and waters in Waikato identified by the Department of Conservation using its natural heritage prioritising processes in September 2013

This list has been taken from the Department's national list of 941 ecosystem units, which represent the full range of New Zealand's terrestrial and freshwater ecosystems (except for sites on private land, which are not listed). Please note, the table does not necessarily list all nationally significant ecosystems present in Waikato. The list is subject to change as priorities are refined and revised—new sites may be added and others removed.

Refer to Map 2 and each Place map to see where these units are located.

Name of ecosystem unit	Predominant ecosystem habitat types included within the unit	Administrative status	Area (ha)
Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pōhutukawa (<i>Metrosideros excelsa</i>), pūriri (<i>Vitex lucens</i>), karaka (<i>Corynocarpus laevigatus</i>) broadleaved forest 	Nature Reserve/Wildlife Sanctuary	112.9
Aotea Harbour Dunes	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Spinifex (<i>Spinifex</i> spp.), pīngao (<i>Demoschoenus spiralis</i>) grassland/sedgeland Oioi (<i>Apodasmia similis</i>), knobby clubrush (<i>Ficinia nodosa</i>) sedgeland Mānuka (<i>Leptospermum scoparium</i>) or kānuka (<i>Kunzea ericoides</i>) scrub 	Scientific Reserve	506.3
Awaroa Swamp	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tōtara (<i>Podocarpus totara</i>), mataī (<i>Prumnopitys taxifolia</i>), kahikatea (<i>Dacrycarpus dacrydioides</i>) forest 	Government Purpose Reserve (Wildlife Management Reserve)	95.7
Cuvier Island (Repanga Island)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest Pōhutukawa treeland/rockland Bare rock 	Nature Reserve	171.2
Grand Canyon Nature Reserve	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cave ecosystem Karst cliff and gorge habitat with native forest 	Nature Reserve	32.2
Hakarimata Scenic Reserve	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tawa (<i>Beilschmiedia tawa</i>), kohekohe (<i>Dysoxylum spectabile</i>), mangeao (<i>Litsea calicularis</i>) broadleaved forest Mānuka or kānuka scrub Kauri (<i>Agathis australis</i>), podocarp, broadleaved forest 	Scenic Reserve	1855.8
Horseshoe Bay	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest 	Conservation Park (Coromandel Forest Park)/Recreation Reserve/Scenic Reserve	770.9
Horsham Downs Lake Group	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Swamp 	Government Purpose Reserve (Wildlife Management Reserve)/Wildlife Refuge Reserve	89.1
Hot Water Beach	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Spinifex, pīngao grassland/sedgeland Oioi, knobby clubrush sedgeland 	Recreation Reserve	22.2

Appendix 4

Name of ecosystem unit	Predominant ecosystem habitat types included within the unit	Administrative status	Area (ha)
Kapowai-Kauaeranga	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Broadleaved scrub and shrubland Mānuka or kānuka scrub Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved forest Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved, New Zealand beeches forest Tōwai (<i>Weinmannia silvicola</i>), rātā (<i>Metrosideros robusta</i>), montane podocarp forest 	Conservation Park (Coromandel Forest Park)	3396.9
Karioi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tawa, <i>Weinmannia</i> podocarp forest Hall's tōtara (<i>Podocarpus cunninghamii</i>), pāhautea (<i>Libocedrus bidwillii</i>), kāmahi (<i>Weinmannia racemosa</i>) forest Pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest Mānuka or kānuka scrub 	Conservation Park (Coromandel Forest Park)	1853.5
Kopuatai	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mānuka, wire rush (<i>Empodisma minus</i>) restiad rushland Bamboo rush (<i>Sporadanthus ferrugineus</i>), wire rush restiad rushland Mānuka, tangle fern (<i>Gleichenia dicarpa</i>) scrub/fernland Flaxland <i>Baumea</i> sedgeland Kahikatea, pukatea (<i>Laurelia novae-zelandiae</i>) forest 	Government Purpose Reserve (Wetland Management Reserve) / Government Purpose Reserve (Wildlife Management Reserve)	10 538.6
Lake Koraha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Flaxland 	Conservation Area (Hauturu West)	1.1
Lake Ohinewai	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> River 	Conservation Area	17.1
Lake Rotokawau	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Swamp 	Conservation Area	14.8
Lake Rotomanuka / Lake Ruatuna	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Coprosma</i>, <i>Olearia</i> scrub Swamp 	Government Purpose Reserve (Wildlife Management Reserve)	57.2
Lake Rotongaroiti / Lake Rotongaro	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> River Lakeshore turf; herbfield 	Government Purpose Reserve (Wildlife Management Reserve)	483.8
Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Raupō (<i>Typha orientalis</i>) reedland <i>Coprosma</i>, <i>Olearia</i> scrub Swamp 	Government Purpose Reserve (Wildlife Management Reserve)	31.6
Mercury Islands	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest 	Scenic Reserve/ Nature Reserve/Wildlife Sanctuary	388.9
Moanatuatua	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bamboo rush, wire rush restiad rushland 	Scientific Reserve	114.9
Moehau	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved forest 	Conservation Park (Coromandel Forest Park) / Recreation Reserve	5402.5
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tawa, kohekohe, mangeao broadleaved forest Mānuka or kānuka scrub Tōwai, rātā, montane podocarp forest Pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest Pōhutukawa treeland/rockland 		

Appendix 4

Name of ecosystem unit	Predominant ecosystem habitat types included within the unit	Administrative status	Area (ha)
Otahu Ecological Area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved forest • Tawa, kohekohe, mangleo broadleaved forest • Mānuka or kānuka scrub 	Conservation Park (Coromandel Forest Park)	655.8
Otama Beach	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Spinifex, pīngao grassland/sedgeland • Flaxland 	Recreation Reserve	46.7
Papa Aroha	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tawa, kohekohe, mangleo broadleaved forest 	Conservation Area	874.1
Papaki Ecological Area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved forest • Tawa, <i>Weinmannia</i> podocarp forest • Tōwai, rātā, montane podocarp forest 	Conservation Area / Conservation Park (Coromandel Forest Park)	9295.7
Pikiariki	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tōtara, mataī, kahikatea forest • Mānuka or kānuka scrub • Broadleaved scrub and shrubland 	Conservation Park (Pureora Forest Park)	868.5
Pirongia	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tawa, <i>Weinmannia</i> podocarp forest • Hall's tōtara, pāhautea, kāmahi forest • Tawa, kohekohe, mangleo broadleaved forest 	Conservation Park (Pirongia Forest Park)	12 275.2
Pureora Mountain	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Kāmahi broadleaved, podocarp forest • Hall's tōtara, pāhautea, kāmahi forest • Tōtara, mataī, kahikatea forest • <i>Olearia</i>, <i>Pseudopanax</i>, <i>Dracophyllum</i> scrub • <i>Baumea</i> sedgeland 	Conservation Park (Pureora Forest Park)	5069.7
Ratanunui Ecological Area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Kāmahi broadleaved, podocarp forest 	Conservation Park (Pureora Forest Park)	945.9
Ruakuri Scenic Reserve	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Native forest over cavernous karst landscape • Cave ecosystems 	Scenic Reserves	116.0
Tawarau	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Native forest over cavernous karst landscape • Cave ecosystems 	Conservation Area	2419.0
Te Kauri Park Scenic Reserve	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved forest 	Scenic Reserve	1011.0
Upper Maramataha Ecological Area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tawa, <i>Weinmannia</i> podocarp forest • Hall's tōtara, pāhautea, kāmahi forest • Kāmahi broadleaved, podocarp forest • Mataī, Hall's tōtara, kāmahi forest • <i>Baumea</i> sedgeland 	Conservation Park (Pureora Forest Park)	3978.7
Waihaha Ecological Area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mataī, Hall's tōtara, kāmahi forest • Tōtara, mataī, kahikatea forest • Kāmahi broadleaved, podocarp forest • Hall's tōtara, pāhautea, kāmahi forest • Broadleaved scrub and shrubland • Monoao (<i>Dracophyllum subulatum</i>) scrub/lichenfield • <i>Baumea</i> sedgeland • Ephemeral wetland, herbfield 	Conservation Park (Pureora Forest Park)	13 060.3
Waikawau Beach	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Spinifex, pīngao grassland/sedgeland • Oioi, knobby clubrush sedgeland 	Recreation Reserve	70.2
Waipapa Ecological Area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tawa, <i>Weinmannia</i> podocarp forest • Tōtara, mataī, kahikatea forest • Mānuka or kānuka scrub • Broadleaved scrub and shrubland • <i>Baumea</i> sedgeland • Monoao scrub/lichenfield 	Conservation Park (Pureora Forest Park)	4621.6

Appendix 4

Name of ecosystem unit	Predominant ecosystem habitat types included within the unit	Administrative status	Area (ha)
Whangamarino	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Mānuka, wire rush restiad rushland • Mānuka, tangle fern scrub/fernland 	Government Purpose Reserve (Wetland Management Reserve)	5138.5
Whanganui Stream (Whenuakura Plains)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Monoao scrub/lichenfield • Red tussockland (<i>Chionochloa rubra</i>) 	Conservation Park (Pureora Forest Park)	201.0
Whareorino	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tawa, <i>Weinmannia</i> podocarp forest • Tawa, kohekohe, mangeao broadleaved forest • Hall's tōtara, pāhautea, kāmahi forest • Mānuka or kānuka scrub • River 	Conservation Area	15 657.2
Whewells Bush	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Kahikatea forest 	Scientific Reserve	11.5

Appendix 5

Threats or pests and wild animals⁷⁵ present in Waikato

Table A5.1: Animal pests and wild animals.

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Birds				
Rainbow lorikeet <i>Trichoglossus haematodus</i>	Widespread in captivity	Potential exclusion competition with native nectivorous birds	None	Based on ecosystem management priorities
Freshwater fish (excluding recreational game fish species)				
Brown bullhead catfish <i>Ameiurus nebulosus</i>	Widespread in the Waikato River system and lakes	Habitat disturbance; predation on and/or competition with native species	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem management priorities
European carp/koi <i>Cyprinus carpio</i>	Widespread in the Waikato River system and lakes	Habitat disturbance; predation on and/or competition with native species	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem management priorities
Gambusia <i>Gambusia affinis</i>	Widespread in the Waikato River system and lakes	Predation on and/or competition with native species	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem management priorities
Goldfish <i>Carassius auratus</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Habitat disturbance; predation on and/or competition with native species	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem management priorities
Rudd* <i>Scardinius erythrophthalmus</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Habitat disturbance; destroy native macrophytes; predation on and/or competition with native species	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem management priorities
Invertebrates				
Argentine ant <i>Linepithema humile</i>	Most towns and coastline	Ecosystem disruption; competitive exclusion and predation of native invertebrates	Biosecurity for islands	Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), Mercury Islands, Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua), Motutapere Island, Rabbit Island, Mahurangi Island (Goat Island)
Asian paper wasp <i>Polistes chinensis</i>	Lowland of North Island and northern South Island	Prey on insects and can kill newly hatched chicks and adult birds	None	None
Australian paper wasp <i>Polistes humilis</i>	Northern North Island	Prey on insects and can kill newly hatched chicks and adult birds	None	None

⁷⁵ May also be game animals - see Glossary for definition.

Appendix 5

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Common wasp <i>Vespula vulgaris</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Competitive exclusion and predation of native invertebrates; can kill newly hatched chicks and adult birds	None	None
German wasp <i>Vespula germanica</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Competitive exclusion and predation of native invertebrates; can kill newly hatched chicks and adult birds	None	None
Steatoda <i>Steatoda capensis</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Competitive exclusion of katipō (<i>Latrodectus katipo</i>)	None	Coastal dunelands
Mammals				
Brush-tail possum <i>Trichosurus vulpecula</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Obligate herbivore; capable of eliminating some species; opportunistic predator of native vertebrates and invertebrates	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Cat <i>Felis catus</i>	Occurs widely, but largely excluded from intact forest	Predator of small vertebrates and invertebrates; capable of killing all native species	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Fallow deer <i>Dama dama</i>	Occurs widely, but absent from the Coromandel Peninsula	Herbivore, impacting on ground cover and understorey; capable of removing understorey and preventing regeneration	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Ferret <i>Mustela furo</i>	Occurs widely, but largely excluded from intact forest	Predator of small vertebrates and invertebrates; capable of killing all native species	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Goat <i>Capra hircus</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Herbivore, impacting on ground cover and understorey; capable of removing understorey and preventing regeneration	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Hare <i>Lepus europaeus</i>	Occurs widely, but at low densities and largely excluded from intact forest	Herbivore, impacting ground cover	None	None
Hedgehog <i>Erinaceus europaeus</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Predominantly insectivorous, but opportunistic predation on vertebrates, especially ground-nesting birds	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Mouse <i>Mus musculus</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Seed and invertebrate predator; capable of killing larger animals	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), Mercury Islands, Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua), Motutapere Island, Rabbit Island, Mahurangi Island (Goat Island)

Appendix 5

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Norway rat <i>Rattus norvegicus</i>	Occurs widely, but localised	Seed and invertebrate predator; opportunistic predator of native vertebrates	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Pig <i>Sus scrofa</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Omnivore or obligate herbivore; largely feeding on vegetation, fruit and seeds, but also opportunistic predator of native vertebrates and invertebrates	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Rabbit <i>Oryctolagus cuniculus</i>	Occurs widely, but largely excluded from intact forest	Herbivore, impacting ground cover; particular impact on coastal dune systems in the Waikato	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Red deer <i>Cervus elaphus</i>	Occurs widely, but absent from the Coromandel Peninsula	Herbivore, impacting ground cover and understorey; capable of removing understorey and preventing regeneration	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Ship rat <i>Rattus rattus</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Seed and invertebrate predator; opportunistic predator of native vertebrates	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Sika deer <i>Cervus nippon</i>	Localised to illegal release site at Port Waikato	Herbivore, impacting ground cover and understorey; capable of removing understorey and preventing regeneration	Exclude from Waikato and maintain free of this species	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Stoat <i>Mustela erminea</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Predator of small vertebrates and invertebrates; capable of killing most native species	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Weasel <i>Mustela nivalis</i>	Occurs widely, but localised	Predator of small vertebrates and invertebrates	Site-based response due to wide distribution	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities
Reptiles				
Rainbow skink <i>Lampropholis delicata</i>	Coastal	Competitive exclusion of native reptiles	Biosecurity for islands	Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), Mercury Islands, Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua), Motutapere Island, Rabbit Island, Mahurangi Island (Goat Island)
Red-eared slider turtle <i>Trachemys scripta elegans</i>	Very localised and restricted to lowland waterways mostly of the upper North Island	Prey on freshwater invertebrates and fish	None	None
Amphibians				
Green and golden bell frog <i>Litoria aurea</i>	Lowland of northern North Island	Disease vector	None	None

Appendix 5

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Southern bell frog <i>Litoria raniformis</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Disease vector	None	None
Whistling frog <i>Litoria ewingii</i>	Widespread in both main islands	Disease vector	None	None

* Please note that within the Auckland/Waikato Fish and Game Region rudd are a sports fish. Outside of this region they are a pest fish. Therefore for parts of the Waikato (as defined on Map 1 of this CMS) they are considered a pest fish.

Table A5.2. Pest plants.

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
African club moss <i>Selaginella kraussiana</i>	Widespread	Forms impenetrable ground cover suppressing regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Along walking tracks throughout Waikato
Agave/century plant <i>Agave americana</i>	Localised in the Coromandel	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Dunelands and coastal areas
Alligator weed <i>Alternanthera philoxeroides</i>	Lower Waikato River and associated wetlands, and some terrestrial sites around Hamilton	On water forms extensive mats, which restrict water flow and aggravate flooding; on land out-competes and displaces native plants	Contain existing sites and prevent establishment on public conservation land	Whangamarino Wetland and other wetlands, rivers and lakes
Aluminium plant <i>Lamium galeobdolon</i>	Localised	Smothers and displaces native understorey species; inhibits native regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Shady places in scrub, forest margins and modified forests
Arum lily <i>Zantedeschia aethiopica</i>	Widespread	Smothers and displaces native understorey species; inhibits native regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Wetlands, rivers and lakes
Banana passionfruit <i>Passiflora tripartita</i> and <i>P. mixta</i>	Widespread	Smothers and displaces native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests and shrublands
Blackberry <i>Rubus fruticosus</i> agg.	Widespread	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests and shrublands
Boneseed <i>Chrysanthemoides monilifera</i> subsp. <i>monilifera</i>	Localised in the Coromandel and Raglan	Shades out seedlings and has the potential to replace low coastal, open and island vegetation	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Dunelands and coastal areas
Boxthorn <i>Lycium ferrocissimum</i>	Widespread	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests, shrublands and coastal areas

Appendix 5

Broom <i>Cytisus scoparius</i>	Widespread	Competes with native plants; alters soil condition by raising nitrogen levels; seeds are poisonous	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Shrubland, tussockland, cliff, bluff and riverbed communities
Brush wattle <i>Paraserianthes lophantha</i>	Widespread	Colonises open areas, overtopping natives and changing native species habitat	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests, shrublands and islands
Buddleia <i>Buddleja davidii</i>	Widespread	Out-competes and displaces native plants and impacts on native regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Forest margins, regenerating areas, waste spaces, river beds, plantation forests
Cathedral bells <i>Cobaea scandens</i>	Isolated populations	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests, shrublands and waterways
Chilean flame creeper <i>Tropaeolum speciosum</i>	Pureora	Smothers and displaces native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests and shrublands
Chilean rhubarb <i>Gunnera tinctoria</i> and <i>G. manicata</i>	Common in cultivation but rare in the wild in Waikato	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Prevent establishment on public conservation land	Wetlands, including rivers and lakes
Climbing asparagus <i>Asparagus scandens</i>	Widespread	Smothers and displaces native plants; can also ring bark trees	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests and shrublands
Climbing spindleberry <i>Celastrus orbiculatus</i>	Southern Waikato	Smothers and displaces native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests and shrublands
Cotoneaster species <i>Cotoneaster</i> spp.	Widespread	Replaces native species by forming dense thickets that shade them out	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests, shrublands and islands
Crack willow <i>Salix fragilis</i>	Widespread	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Wetlands, including rivers and lakes
Dally pine/African scurf pea <i>Psoralea pinnata</i>	Localised	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests and shrublands
Darwin's barberry <i>Berberis darwini</i>	Pureora	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests and shrublands
Douglas fir <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i>	Localised	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Scrub, forest margins, shrublands and tussocklands; wind-dispersed seeds need unvegetated ground to germinate
Elaeagnus <i>Elaeagnus</i> * <i>reflexa</i>	Localised	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Scrub forest margin

Appendix 5

English ivy <i>Hedera helix</i>	Localised	Smothers and displaces native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Scrub, forest margins, modified forests and riverbeds
Gum tree <i>Eucalyptus</i> species	Widespread	Out-competes native trees with fast growth; reduces soil moisture levels	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites; avoid trees if they provide bat roosting habitat	Indigenous forests and shrublands
German ivy <i>Delairea odorata</i>	Localised	Smothers and displaces native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Scrub, forest margins, modified forests and riverbeds
Gorse <i>Ulex europaeus</i>	Widespread	Competes with native plants; alters soil condition by raising nitrogen levels; however, can protect regrowth of native woody species and dies back as native regeneration proceeds	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites; consider option of natural succession into native shrub and forest	Areas with low-stature vegetation (e.g. grasslands) or sites of high natural disturbance (e.g. riverbeds)
Grey willow <i>Salix cinerea</i>	Waikato-wide	Out-competes and displaces native plants; dense stands can cause blockages, flooding and structural change to water-ways, leading to erosion and increased sedimentation	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Wetlands, including rivers and lakes
Heath <i>Erica cinerea</i>	Widespread	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Low stature shrub and tussock communities
Heather <i>Calluna vulgaris</i>	Localised	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Montane to alpine habitats of low to moderate fertility, e.g. Whenuakura Plains
Himalayan fairy grass <i>Miscanthus nepalensis</i>	Localised	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests, shrublands and islands
Holly <i>Ilex aquifolium</i>	Localised	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Moist, low elevation forests.
Japanese knotweed and giant knotweed <i>Fallopia japonica</i> and <i>F. sachalinensis</i>	South Waikato and south Coromandel	Forms monocultural stands preventing native regeneration, particularly in wetlands	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Wetlands, including rivers and lakes
Japanese walnut <i>Juglans ailantifolia</i>	Widespread in southern Waikato	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration; structurally alters waterways	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Wetlands, including rivers and lakes
Jasmine <i>Jasminum polyanthum</i>	Widespread	Forms impenetrable ground cover; smothers native vegetation to mid-canopy level; alters forest composition and suppresses regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests, shrublands and dunelands

Appendix 5

Kahili ginger <i>Hedychium gardnerianum</i>	Te Kauri, Kawhia reserves	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests and shrublands
Lodgepole pine <i>Pinus contorta</i>	Pureora	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Eradicate from public conservation land	Indigenous forests and shrublands
Lupin <i>Lupinus arboreus</i>	Localised	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Dunelands
Madeira or mignonette vine <i>Anredera cordifolia</i>	Sporadic	Out-competes and smothers native plants in low forest, waterways and coastal areas	Prevent establishment on public conservation land	Indigenous forests and shrublands
Manchurian wild rice <i>Zizania latifolia</i>	Waterways in northeastern areas of the Waikato	Forms dense colonies in swampy areas, displacing other species and blocking water flow	Prevent establishment on public conservation land	Wetlands, including rivers and lakes
Marram grass <i>Ammophila arenaria</i>	Widespread in all coastal dunelands	A sand-binder and dune builder that typically builds taller, denser dunes due to its leaf structure, which allows it to trap sand more efficiently than the native pīngao (<i>Demoschoenus spiralis</i>), which it outcompetes for resources	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Dunelands
Mexican daisy <i>Erigeron kavinskianus</i>	Widespread	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests, shrublands and karst
Mexican devil <i>Ageratina adenophora</i>	Localised populations	Smothers and displaces native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests, shrublands and islands
Mist flower <i>Ageratina riparia</i>	Localised populations	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Indigenous forests, shrublands and islands
Moth plant <i>Araujia sericifera</i>	Localised populations	Smothers and displaces native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites; eradicate from Cuvier Island (Repanga Island)	Indigenous forests, shrublands and islands
Needle bush <i>Hakea sericea</i>	Localised populations in the Coromandel and on islands	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites.	The Coromandel and islands
Old man's beard <i>Clematis vitalba</i>	Localised populations	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Eradicate from public conservation land	Indigenous forests, shrublands and islands
Pampas grass and cultivars <i>Cortaderia jubata</i> and <i>C. selloana</i>	Widespread	Very invasive, forming dense, impenetrable stands that inhibit regeneration of native plants	Target specific sites of high conservation value	Indigenous forests, shrublands, karst, dunelands and islands

Appendix 5

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Privet (tree and Chinese) <i>Ligustrum lucidum</i> and <i>L. sinense</i>	Widespread	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value	Forest margins, scrub, open forests and modified forests
Radiata Pine <i>Pinus radiata</i>	Localised populations	Forms monocultural stands preventing indigenous regeneration.	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites.	Based on ecosystem and species management priorities.
Red cestrum <i>Cestrum elegans</i> and <i>C. fasciculatum</i>	Isolated populations	Plant is poisonous and can kill cattle	Target specific sites of high conservation value	Roadsides, old homestead sites, scrub and forest margins
Reed sweet grass and reed canary grass <i>Glyceria maxima</i> and <i>Phalaris arundinacea</i>	Sporadic	Forms dense stands within wetlands and damp areas, replacing other species; chokes streams, increasing flooding	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Wetlands, including rivers and lakes
Royal fern <i>Osmunda regalis</i>	Localised populations	Displaces native vegetation, particularly in wetlands	Contain existing sites and prevent spread into new sites	Wetlands, including rivers and lakes
Saltwater paspalum <i>Paspalum vaginatum</i>	Localised populations	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Estuaries and harbours
Spartina <i>Spartina</i> spp.	Localised populations	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Estuaries and harbours: Aotea, Kawhia, Coromandel, Firth of Thames
Strawberry dogwood <i>Cornus capitata</i>	Widespread in Maniapoto	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Forest margins, scrub, open or modified forests and waste places
Tradescantia/ wandering Jew <i>Tradescantia fluminensis</i>	Widespread	Forms impenetrable ground cover; smothers native vegetation and suppresses regeneration; regrowth from very small pieces of plant make removal difficult while it is easily spread	Contain existing sites and prevent spread into new sites	Places from where it is likely to spread by its profound vegetative regrowth (e.g. public places, rivers); habitat—forests, scrub, cliffs, bluffs and riverbeds
Tutsan <i>Hypericum androsaemum</i>	Localised populations	Out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value	Forest margins, scrub, open or modified forests and waste places; poor pasture in high rainfall areas; unpalatable to stock but not poisonous
Woolly nightshade <i>Solanum mauritianum</i>	Widespread	Out-competes and displaces native plants by inhibiting regeneration	Target specific sites of high conservation value	Indigenous forests and shrublands
Yellow flag iris <i>Iris pseudacorus</i>	Lower Waikato River, north Waikato lakes including Whangamarino	Displaces native vegetation, particularly in wetlands	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Wetlands, including rivers and lakes

Table A5.3. Aquatic pest plants.

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Alligator weed <i>Alternanthera philoxeroides</i>	Localised populations	Restricts water flow; high growth rate; rapid spread; may affect whitebait breeding; toxic to livestock; resistant to selective herbicides	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Warm, shallow, enriched, fresh to slightly brackish water of drains, swamps, ponds, lagoons, stream banks, dune hollows, flood-prone pasture, cropland, waste land and lawns
Bladderwort <i>Utricularia gibba</i>	Widespread in northern half of the North Island at low altitude	Rapid spread; forms dense masses; out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Most freshwater habitats
Cape pondweed <i>Aponogeton distachyus</i>	Widespread	Forms dense mats of floating leaves; out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Shallow, still or slow-flowing fresh water of farm dams, drains, streams and lakes
Curled pondweed <i>Potamogeton crispus</i>	Widespread	Out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Sediments of nutrient-rich lakes, ponds, drains, rivers and streams in clear water at a depth of up to 10 m
Egeria <i>Egeria densa</i>	Widespread	Rapid spread; forms dense masses; out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Still, shallow, enriched water in dams, ponds, drains, streams, rivers and lakes at a depth of up to 5 m
Elodea <i>Elodea canadensis</i>	Widespread	Rapid spread; out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Clear water of water races, drains, slow-flowing or still freshwater, on fertile, silty sediments
Lagarosiphon <i>Lagarosiphon major</i>	Widespread	Rapid spread; forms dense masses; out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Clear, still or slow-flowing, low-fertility freshwater ponds, lakes, streams and rivers
Mexican water lily <i>Nymphaea mexicana</i>	Localised populations	Forms dense mats of floating leaves; clogs waterways; out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Ponds, small lakes, muddy substrates at a depth of up to 2 m
Parrot's feather <i>Myriophyllum aquaticum</i>	Localised populations	Forms dense floating mats that clog waterways	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Shallow fresh water of peaty or organically rich swamps and drains, lake margins and slow-flowing water
Primrose willow <i>Ludwigia peploides</i>	Widespread	Out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Mainly still and slow-flowing, shallow water
Reed sweet grass <i>Glyceria maxima</i>	Widespread	Forms dense stands; out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Wetlands and adjacent rivers and lakes

Appendix 5

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Saltwater paspalum <i>Paspalum vaginatum</i>	Common in east and west coast harbours	Forms dense mats on tidal flats; invades and changes the composition and structure of native ecosystems; can reduce or exclude feeding and roosting for birds; may alter fish spawning and feeding sites; can change estuarine hydrology by accumulating sediment	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Margins of tidal flats, sandy or gravel beaches, adjacent pasture and coastal dunes
Spartina/cord grass <i>Spartina anglica</i>	Common along coast	Forms dense masses; loss of natural habitat for wading birds and fish spawning; impacts on recreational and cultural fisheries and seafood sources; can cause navigation problems	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Estuarine habitat
Water buttercup <i>Ranunculus trichophyllus</i>	Widespread	Forms dense masses; out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Lakes, ponds, streams, rivers and drains
Water celery <i>Apium nodiflorum</i>	Widespread	Out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Slow-flowing water, shallow ponds, drains, swamps and stream edges
Water lily <i>Nymphaea alba</i>	Localised populations	Forms dense mats of floating leaves; out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Still or slow-flowing shallow freshwater in ponds, lakes and tarns at depths of around 1.5 m
Yellow flag <i>Iris pseudacorus</i>	Common along lower Waikato and Avon Rivers	Poisonous to humans and livestock; rhizomes form dense mats of floating leaves; out-competes native species	Target specific sites of high conservation value and prevent spread into new sites	Ditches, wet ground and water bodies

Appendix 6

Threatened and At Risk species present in Waikato

Several thousand indigenous species are present in Waikato. This Appendix lists a selection of these, i.e. vascular plants, vertebrate animals and other fauna of note that are currently classified as 'Threatened' or 'At Risk'.⁷⁶

Table A6.1. Threatened and At Risk flora (vascular plants).

Threatened species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Nationally Critical	Christella Swamp helmet orchid "Corybas Kaitarakihi" (orchid) Hairy willowherb Small flowered hypericum Stalked adder's tongue fern Tainui, New Zealand hazel New Zealand fireweed Yellow bladderwort	<i>Christella dentata</i> s.l. <i>Corybas carsei</i> <i>Corybas</i> aff. <i>rivularis</i> (AK 251833; Kaitarakihi) <i>Epilobium hirtigerum</i> <i>Hypericum minutiflorum</i> <i>Ophioglossum petiolatum</i> <i>Phylloglossum drummondii</i> <i>Pomaderris apetala</i> subsp. <i>Maritime</i> <i>Senecio scaberulus</i> <i>Utricularia australis</i>
Nationally Endangered	Sneezeweed, "centipeda" Coastal cress Bog clubmoss New Zealand forget-me-not Native oxtongue Tauhinu Swamp greenhood orchid Carses schoenus Bastard grass, hook sedge	<i>Centipeda minima</i> subsp. <i>minima</i> <i>Lepidium flexicaule</i> <i>Lycopodiella serpentina</i> <i>Myosotis petiolata</i> var. <i>pansa</i> <i>Picris burbridgeae</i> <i>Pomaderris phyllicifolia</i> subsp. <i>phyllicifolia</i> <i>Pterostylis micromega</i> <i>Schoenus carsei</i> <i>Uncinia strictissima</i>
Nationally Vulnerable	Water brome Gossamer grass Curly sedge Pua o Te Reinga, dactylanthus, wood rose Napuka, tītīrangī Isolepis Dwarf musk, swamp musk, matt-leaved mazus Nau, Cook's scurvy grass Mīkoikoi, New Zealand iris Pimelea Turners kōhūhū, tent pole tree Dwarf greenhood Plumed greenhood Matangaoa, New Zealand water cress Spiranthes, lady's tresses	<i>Amphibromus fluitans</i> <i>Anemanthele lessoniana</i> <i>Carex cirrhosa</i> <i>Dactylanthus taylorii</i> <i>Dichelachne micrantha</i> <i>Gratiola concinna</i> <i>Hebe speciosa</i> <i>Isolepis fluitans</i> var. <i>fluitans</i> <i>Mazus novaezeelandiae</i> subsp. <i>impolitus</i> <i>Lepidium oleraceum</i> <i>Lepilaena bilocularis</i> <i>Libertia peregrinans</i> <i>Pimelea tomentosa</i> <i>Pittosporum turneri</i> <i>Pterostylis puberula</i> <i>Pterostylis tasmanicum</i> <i>Rorippa divaricata</i> <i>Spiranthes novae-zelandiae</i>

⁷⁶ Townsend, Lange, Duffy, Miskelly, Molloy and Norton, 2008: New Zealand Threat Classification Manual.

At risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Declining	Kohurangi, Kirk's daisy Sea sedge Tufted hair-grass, wavy hair-grass Waiū-atua, shore spurge, sea spurge, sand milkweed Rāwiri, mānuka-rauriki Leptinella Dwarf musk Leafless māhoe Stout water milfoil Scrobic, native paspalum Sickle fern, Australian cliff brake Pikirangi, piritā, roeroe, pirinoa, red mistletoe Autetaranga, toroheke, sand daphne, sand pimelea Kirk's kōhūhū, thick-leaved kohukohu Hinarepe, sand tussock Swamp greenhood King fern, para, tawhiti para, king fern, horseshoe fern Koheriki Teuclidium Tāpia, piritā, white mistletoe, tupia	<i>Brachyglottis kirkii</i> var. <i>kirkii</i> <i>Carex litorosa</i> <i>Cyclosorus interruptus</i> <i>Deschampsia cespitosa</i> <i>Euphorbia glauca</i> <i>Kunzea ericoides</i> var. <i>linearis</i> <i>Leptinella tenella</i> <i>Mazus novaezeelandiae</i> subsp. <i>novaezeelandiae</i> <i>Melicytus flexuosus</i> <i>Myriophyllum robustum</i> <i>Paspalum orbiculare</i> <i>Pellaea falcata</i> <i>Peraxilla tetrapetala</i> <i>Pimelea villosa</i> <i>Pittosporum kirkii</i> <i>Poa billardiarei</i> <i>Pterostylis paludosa</i> <i>Ptisana salicina</i> <i>Scandia rosifolia</i> <i>Teuclidium parvifolium</i> <i>Tupeia antarctica</i>
Recovering	Nil	
Relict	William's broom, giant-flowered broom Pīngao, pīkao, golden sand sedge Swamp leek orchid Māwhai Pūhā, shore pūhā, New Zealand sow thistle Bamboo rush, giant wire rush Tūrepo, large-leaved milk tree Bladderwort	<i>Carmichaelia williamsii</i> <i>Ficinia spiralis</i> <i>Prasophyllum hectorii</i> <i>Sicyos mawhai</i> <i>Sonchus kirkii</i> <i>Sporadanthus ferrugineus</i> <i>Strebilus banksii</i> <i>Utricularia delicatula</i>
Naturally Uncommon	Cave spleenwort Fern Pātōtara, parsley fern Orchid Bearded orchid Red bearded orchid Small-flowered white bindweed Adams daisy Crassula Pinaki, New Zealand carrot, native carrot Mokimoki, mukimuki Fern Great Barrier inaka Little spotted moa Sinclair's tamingi	<i>Asplenium cimmericium</i> <i>Blechnum norfolkianum</i> <i>Botrychium australe</i> <i>Brachyglottis myrianthos</i> <i>Bulbophyllum tuberculatum</i> <i>Caladenia atradenia</i> <i>Calochilus paludosus</i> <i>Calochilus robertsonii</i> <i>Calystegia marginata</i> <i>Celmisia adamsii</i> s.s. <i>Crassula ruamahanga</i> <i>Daucus glochidiatus</i> <i>Doodia mollis</i> <i>Doodia squarrosa</i> <i>Dracophyllum patens</i> <i>Drymoanthus flavus</i> <i>Epacris sinclairii</i>

At risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
	Fimbristylis	<i>Fimbristylis velata</i>
	Creeping fuchsia, climbing or trailing fuchsia	<i>Fuchsia procumbens</i>
	Red leek orchid	<i>Genoplesium nudum</i>
	Yellow gumland leek orchid	<i>Genoplesium pumilum</i>
	Central North Island gentian, forest gentian	<i>Gentianella chathamica</i> subsp. <i>nemorosa</i>
	Rawlings strap-fern	<i>Grammitis rawlingsii</i>
	Monoao	<i>Halocarpus kirkii</i>
	Awaroa koromiko	<i>Hebe scopulorum</i>
	Filmy fern	<i>Hymenophyllum atrovirens</i>
	Filmy fern	<i>Hymenophyllum</i> aff. <i>flexuosum</i> (AK 177370; Mount Burnett)
	Isolepis	<i>Isolepis crassiuscula</i>
	Dwarf mistletoe, leafless mistletoe	<i>Korthalsella salicornioides</i>
		<i>Lagenifera lanata</i>
	Kawaka, kaikawaka, New Zealand cedar	<i>Libocedrus plumosa</i>
	Lindsaea fern	<i>Lindsaea viridis</i>
	Native musk, Māori musk, native monkey flower	<i>Mimulus repens</i>
	New Zealand forget-me-not	<i>Myosotis spathulata</i>
	Tree daisy	<i>Olearia angulata</i>
	Pittosporum	<i>Pittosporum ellipticum</i>
	Pittosporum	<i>Pittosporum virgatum</i>
	Bristle fern	<i>Polyphlebium colensoi</i>
	Pale-flowered kūmarahou	<i>Pomaderris hamiltonii</i>
	Pomaderris	<i>Pomaderris rugosa</i>
	Grass-leaved orchid "sphagnum"	<i>Pterostylis</i> aff. <i>graminea</i> (CHR 513330; "sphagnum")
	Fan fern	<i>Schizaea dichotoma</i>
	New Zealand fireweed	<i>Senecio marotiri</i>
	New Zealand fireweed	<i>Senecio repangae</i> subsp. <i>repangae</i>
	New Zealand chickweed "Poor Knights"	<i>Stellaria</i> aff. <i>parviflora</i> (AK 169580; Poor Knights)
	Fennel-leaved pondweed, sago pondweed	<i>Stuckenia pectinata</i>
	Kōkihi, tūtae-ikamoana, New Zealand spinach	<i>Tetragonia tetragonioides</i>
	Spotted sun orchid "New Zealand"	<i>Thelymitra</i> aff. <i>ixioides</i> (AK 251348; New Zealand)
	Domed sun orchid	<i>Thelymitra tholiformis</i>
	Thismia	<i>Thismia rodwayi</i>
Coloniser		<i>Sicyos australis</i> s.s.

Table A6.2. Threatened and At Risk fauna (vertebrates).

Threatened species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Nationally Critical	Bryde's whale Māui dolphin	<i>Balaenoptera edeni</i> / <i>Balaenoptera brydei</i> <i>Cephalorhynchus hectori maui</i>
Nationally Endangered	Matuku-hūrepo, bittern Tarāpunga, black-billed gull Hihi, stitchbird Whitaker's skink Terehu, bottlenose dolphin	<i>Botaurus poiciloptilus</i> <i>Larus bulleri</i> <i>Notiomystis cincta</i> <i>Oligosoma whitakeri</i> <i>Tursiops truncatus</i>

Appendix 6

Nationally Vulnerable	Ngutuparore, wrybill Brown kiwi North Island kōkako Pekapeka, long-tailed bat (North Island) Pohowera, banded dotterel Tūturiwhatu, northern New Zealand dotterel Mātukutuku, reef heron Kāeaea, bush falcon Taranui, Caspian tern Whio, blue duck Tarāpunga, red-billed gull Archev's frog North Island kākā Kāruhiruhi, pied shag Weweia, New Zealand dabchick	<i>Anarhynchus frontalis</i> <i>Apteryx mantelli</i> <i>Callaeas wilsoni</i> <i>Chalinolobus tuberculata</i> (North Island) <i>Charadrius bicinctus bicinctus</i> <i>Charadrius obscurus aquilonius</i> <i>Egretta sacra sacra</i> <i>Falco novaeseelandiae</i> "bush" <i>Hydroprogne caspia</i> <i>Hymenolaimus malachorhynchus</i> <i>Larus novaehollandiae scopulinus</i> <i>Leiopelma archevi</i> <i>Nestor meridionalis septentrionalis</i> <i>Phalacrocorax varius varius</i> <i>Poliocephalus rufopectus</i>
At risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Declining	Tititipounamu, North Island rifleman Tuna, longfin eel Pīhoiho, New Zealand pipit Mātātā, North Island fernbird Panoko, torrentfish Kororā, northern blue penguin Giant kōkopu Kōaro Inanga Shortjaw kōkopu Korokoro, lamprey Bluegill bully Redfin bully Tōrea, New Zealand pied oystercatcher Poaka, pied stilt Peketua, Hochstetter's frog Pekapeka, central short-tailed bat Auckland green gecko Speckled skink Toanui, flesh-footed shearwater Tara, white-fronted tern	<i>Acanthisitta chloris granti</i> <i>Anguilla dieffenbachii</i> <i>Anthus novaeseelandiae novaeseelandiae</i> <i>Bowdleria punctata vealeae</i> <i>Cheimarrichthys fosteri</i> <i>Eudyptula minor iredalei</i> <i>Galaxias argenteus</i> <i>Galaxias brevipinnis</i> <i>Galaxias maculatus</i> <i>Galaxias postvectis</i> <i>Geotria australis</i> <i>Gobiomorphus hubbsi</i> <i>Gobiomorphus huttoni</i> <i>Haematopus finschi</i> <i>Himantopus himantopus leucocephalus</i> <i>Leiopelma hochstetteri</i> <i>Mystacina tuberculata rhyacobia</i> <i>Naultinus elegans elegans</i> <i>Oligosoma infrapunctatum</i> <i>Puffinus carneipes</i> <i>Sterna striata striata</i>
Recovering	Pāteke, brown teal Little spotted kiwi Tōrea pango, variable oystercatcher Robust skink Tīeke, North Island saddleback Pycroft's petrel North Island little shearwater	<i>Anas chlorotis</i> "North Island" <i>Apteryx owenii</i> <i>Haematopus unicolor</i> <i>Oligosoma alani</i> <i>Philesturnus rufusater</i> <i>Pterodroma pycrofti</i> <i>Puffinus assimilis haurakiensis</i>

At risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Relict	Kākāriki, red-crowned parakeet Duvaucel's gecko Pacific gecko Black mudfish Moko skink Marbled skink Egg-laying skink Pakahā, fluttering shearwater Koitareke, marsh crane Pūweto, spotless crane Tuatara	<i>Cyanoramphus novaezelandiae novaezelandiae</i> <i>Hoplodactylus duvaucelii</i> <i>Hoplodactylus pacificus</i> <i>Neochanna diversus</i> <i>Oligosoma moco</i> <i>Oligosoma oliveri</i> <i>Oligosoma suteri</i> <i>Puffinus gavia</i> <i>Porzana pusilla affinis</i> <i>Porzana tabuensis plumbea</i> <i>Sphenodon punctatus</i>
Naturally Uncommon	Koekoeā, long-tailed cuckoo Katatai, banded rail Kawau, black shag Kawau paka, little shag Kawau tūi, little black shag	<i>Eudynamys taitensis</i> <i>Gallirallus philippensis assimilis</i> <i>Phalacrocorax carbo novaezelandiae</i> <i>Phalacrocorax melanoleucos brevirostris</i> <i>Phalacrocorax sulcirostris</i>
Data Deficient	Coromandel striped gecko	<i>Hoplodactylus</i> aff. <i>stephensi</i> "Coromandel"

Table A6.3. Other Threatened and At Risk fauna of note.

Threatened species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Nationally Endangered	Moehau stag beetle	<i>Geodorcus alsobius</i>
Nationally Vulnerable	Moth	<i>Gracillariidae</i> n. " <i>Teucrium</i> "
At risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Declining	Red katipō spider New Zealand bat fly Caddisfly Snail	<i>Latrodectus katipo</i> <i>Mystacinobia zelandica</i> <i>Oxyethira kirikiriroa</i> <i>Potamopyrgus troglodytes</i>
Recovering	Pāteke/brown teal louse Mahoenui giant wētā Mercury Islands tusked wētā	<i>Anaticola</i> sp. <i>Deinacrida mahoenui</i> <i>Motuweta isolata</i>
Relict	Te Aroha stag beetle Moth	<i>Geodorcus auriculatus</i> <i>Houdinia flexilissima</i>
Naturally Uncommon	Moehau wētā Cuvier Island tree wētā	<i>Hemiandrus</i> "Moehau" <i>Hemideina thoracica</i>

Appendix 7

Nationally iconic species in Waikato

These species were identified through using a combination of web-based and phone-based public surveys in which those participating were asked what species they thought were quintessentially kiwi, contributing to their identify as New Zealanders.

	Common name	Scientific name
Flora	Kauri	<i>Agathis australis</i>
	Rimu	<i>Dacrydium cupressinum</i>
	Pōhutukawa	<i>Metrosideros excelsa</i>
	Kōwhai	<i>Sophora</i> spp.
	Ferns	Various species
Fauna	Kiwi	<i>Apteryx</i> spp.
	Tūī	<i>Prothemadera novaeseelandiae</i>
	Tuatara	<i>Sphenodon punctatus</i>

Appendix 8:

Marine habitats and ecosystems in Waikato

The Coastal Classification and Mapping Scheme depth zones are as follows: shallow—0–30 m; deep—30–200 m; upper slope—200–500 m; mid-slope—500–1000 m; lower slope—1000–4000 m.

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/ threats	Protected areas
Northeastern bioregion (Miranda to Waihi):				
Inner Hauraki Gulf and the Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana	Saltmarsh Mānawa/mangroves (<i>Avicennia marina</i>) Sheltered beach Sheltered rocky shore Tidal sand and mudflat Shallow mud High-current mud Sheltered shallow reef High-current shallow reef High-current shallow gravel Dog cockle (<i>Glycymeris glycymeris</i>) (biogenic) Water column	The Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana extensive tidal flats make it an internationally important feeding area for wading birds, with up to 25 000 birds, most of which are migratory, using these at any time. It is listed as a wetland of international importance under the Ramsar Convention, and is one of New Zealand's three most important wading bird habitats. Colville Bay also provides important wading bird habitat (Site of Special Wildlife Interest). Productive benthic and pelagic ecosystem providing primary nursery habitat for at least 15 coastal fish species. Foraging area for little shearwaters (<i>Puffinus assimilis</i>), aihe/common dolphins (<i>Delphinus delphis</i>), kera wēra/killer whales (<i>Orcinus orca</i>) and Bryde's whales (<i>Balaenoptera edeni/brydei</i>).	Sea level rise and mānawa/mangrove expansion potentially threaten wading bird habitat. Stock grazing impacts on saltmarshes. Suspended sediments, excess nutrients and other contaminants in terrestrial runoff. Benthic communities have been extensively modified by historic trawling and shellfish dredging (e.g. loss of productivity and ecosystem services provided by natural mussel beds). Aquaculture (benthic effects, loss of pelagic habitat). Trampling of intertidal organisms in high-use areas. Overfishing. Invasive marine species. Underwater noise pollution. Ship strike (threatens the resident Bryde's whale population). Toxic algal blooms.	Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana wetland of international importance under the Ramsar Convention—this 8927-ha site lies within the Coastal Marine Area, with jurisdiction vested in Land Information New Zealand (LINZ), Waikato Regional Council and the Department of Conservation.
Manaia Harbour	Sheltered rocky shore Saltmarsh Mānawa/mangroves Tidal sand and mudflat	Predominantly natural system with intact coastal vegetation sequences. Tūturiwhatu/northern New Zealand dotterel (<i>Charadrius obscurus aquilonius</i>) habitat on the shell beach and spit.	Invasive species (spartina (<i>Spartina</i> spp.), Pacific oyster (<i>Crassostrea gigas</i>)). Coastal development, including aquaculture.	

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/ threats	Protected areas
	Karepō/seagrass (<i>Zostera</i> spp.) Sheltered shallow sand and mud	Habitat for wading and coastal birds. Habitat for diadromous fishes (notably shortjaw kōkopu (<i>Galaxias postvectis</i>) and tuna/longfin eel (<i>Anguilla dieffenbachia</i>)). Relatively diverse estuarine fish fauna.		
Coromandel Harbour	Sheltered rocky shore Saltmarsh Mānawa/mangroves Tidal sand and mudflat Karepō/seagrass Estuarine sand and mud Estuarine reef Sheltered shallow sand and mud	Important wading and coastal bird habitat. Ecologically important estuarine vegetation—particularly the intact coastal vegetation sequence on the south side of Preece Point. Benthic communities are poorly known.	Infilling due to catchment clearance and development. Habitat loss due to coastal development, including aquaculture, and invasive species (e.g. spartina, Pacific oyster).	
Eastern Coromandel (Cape Colville - Waihi)	Moderate rocky shore Sheltered rocky shore Sheltered beach Moderate beach Sheltered shallow sand Moderate shallow sand Rhodoliths (biogenic) Subtidal karepō/seagrass (biogenic) Sheltered shallow reef Moderate shallow reef High-current deep sand High-current deep gravel Deep gravel Deep sand Deep mud Deep reef Upper slope Water column	High natural character values. Productive commercial, customary and recreational fisheries. High recreational and tourism use. Diverse and productive coastal rocky reef assemblages dominated by extensive beds of large brown algae. Algal assemblages input nutrients to surrounding soft sediments. Undisturbed soft sediments support diverse, biogenically structured benthic communities that are characterised by sponges, horse mussels (<i>Atrina novaezealandiae</i>), attached red algae, tubeworms and filter-feeding brittle stars. Rhodolith beds occur in some sandy, high-current areas around the Mercury Islands. Small areas of subtidal offshore karepō/seagrass beds, a nationally rare habitat type, occur to 3 m depth at sheltered sites at Great Mercury Island (Ahuahu) and Slipper Island (Whakahau). Marine fauna characterised by a diverse subtropical element, with a seasonal influx of highly migratory pelagic species,	Inputs of fine sediments resulting from catchment clearance and coastal development. Overfishing resulting in trophic cascade effects, and bycatch and entanglement of protected and threatened marine life in fishing gear. Soft-sediment communities have been extensively modified by mobile fishing gear (trawling and scallop dredging), resulting in the removal of epifauna and homogenisation of habitats. Anchor damage to sensitive biogenic habitats (e.g. offshore subtidal karepō/seagrass). Invasive marine species.	Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve—representative examples of moderate rocky shore, sheltered and moderate shallow reef, shallow sand, and some sponge garden (biogenic) habitats.

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/ threats	Protected areas
		including billfishes, tunas, pelagic sharks and rays. Internationally important seabird habitat. Semi-resident populations of terehu/bottlenose (<i>Tursiops truncatus</i>) and aihe/common dolphins. Kera wēra/killer whale habitat.		
Whangapoua Harbour	Saltmarsh Mānawa/mangroves Intertidal sand and mudflat Karepō/seagrass Estuarine beach Estuarine sand	Relatively natural estuarine environment with relatively abundant and diverse biota, and extensive intertidal and some subtidal karepō/seagrass beds.	Infilling by fine sediments. Invasive intertidal and subtidal species. Coastal development.	
Whitianga Harbour	Saltmarsh Mānawa/mangroves Intertidal sand and mudflat Estuarine sand and mud Estuarine rocky shore High-current shallow sand High-current shallow reef	Relatively healthy estuarine environment with diverse invertebrate and fish faunas. Important wading and coastal bird habitat (Site of Special Wildlife Interest). Foraging habitat for small coastal cetaceans.	Coastal development, including marina and canal development, reclamation, and stop banking. Infilling by fine sediments. Invasive species (e.g. saltwater paspalum (<i>Paspalum vaginatum</i>)). Chronic disturbance and underwater noise pollution.	
Tairua Harbour, Wharekawa Harbour (including Opoutere Spit) and Whangamata Harbour	Saltmarsh Mānawa/mangroves Karepō/seagrass Intertidal sand and mudflat Estuarine sands and mud	Relatively stable, healthy estuarine environments with diverse and abundant biota. Nationally important wading and coastal bird habitats. Dense karepō/seagrass beds. Intact, diverse and unusual freshwater-estuarine vegetation sequences.	Infilling by fine sediments. Coastal development, including encroachment and run-off from roadworks. Marina development (Whangamata). Invasive species.	
West Coast North Island bioregion (Port Waikato to Mokau River):				
Port Waikato	Saltmarsh Intertidal sand and mudflat Estuarine sand High-current shallow sand	Lower Waikato River and estuary have been identified as a wetland of international importance Important wading, shore and wetland bird habitat, and is part of the migratory corridor for internally migrating waders.	Upstream discharges of sediments, pathogens, nutrients and other contaminants. Coastal development and flood protection works.	

Appendix 8

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/ threats	Protected areas
		Estuarine and diadromous fish habitat.	Invasive species (notably saltwater paspalum).	
Raglan Harbour	Estuarine beach Estuarine rocky shore Intertidal sand and mudflat Karepō/seagrass Estuarine sand Estuarine mud Shallow, high-current sand	Abundant bivalve fauna, including subtidal hururoa/horse mussel (<i>Atrina zelandica</i>) beds. Important wading and shorebird habitat (Site of Special Wildlife Interest). Estuarine and diadromous fish habitat. Kera wēra/killer whale foraging habitat. Customary, recreational and commercial fisheries.	Infilling due to catchment clearance. Diffuse discharges of nutrients, pathogens and other contaminants. Coastal development. Invasive species (saltwater paspalum, spartina). Overfishing.	
Aotea Harbour	Estuarine beach Estuarine rocky shore Intertidal sand and mudflat Karepō/seagrass Estuarine sand Estuarine mud Shallow, high-current sand	High natural character. Relatively healthy estuarine assemblages that are characterised by large intertidal flats supporting large karepō/seagrass beds and high bivalve densities. Nationally important wading and shore bird habitat. Estuarine and diadromous fish habitat. Customary and recreational fisheries.	Infilling due to catchment clearance. Coastal development. Invasive species (spartina, saltwater paspalum).	
Kawhia Harbour	Estuarine beach Estuarine rocky shore Intertidal sand and mudflat Karepō/seagrass Estuarine sand Estuarine mud Shallow, high-current sand	High natural character. Relatively healthy estuarine assemblages that are characterised by large intertidal flats supporting extensive karepō/seagrass meadows and high bivalve densities. Nationally important wading and shore bird habitat. Tiritirimatangi Peninsula wetland, wetlands in the upper reaches of the peninsula's eastern arm and the Awaroa arm. Estuarine and diadromous fish habitat. Customary and recreational fisheries.	Infilling due to catchment clearance. Coastal development. Invasive species (spartina, saltwater paspalum).	
Exposed outer coast	Exposed beach Exposed rocky shore Moderate rocky shore Exposed shallow	High natural character. Biota of intertidal and shallow subtidal rocky reefs is poorly known—generally low diversity but distinctive assemblages adapted to a turbid, high-energy	Accelerated coastal erosion due to sea level rise. Set netting and trawling are threats to Māui dolphin and	West Coast North Island Marine Mammal Sanctuary.

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/ threats	Protected areas
	reef Moderate shallow reef Exposed shallow sand Moderate shallow sand Deep reef	<p>environment (often characterised by abundant red algae, small mussels and other sessile filter feeders).</p> <p>Biota of isolated offshore reefs is poorly known. Macroalgae generally restricted to subtidal fringe. Deeper substrata are encrusted with crustose coralline algae, large green shell mussels (<i>Perna canaliculus</i>), hydroids and sponges. Reef fishes are abundant but there is generally low species richness. Some subtropical reef species are present in low numbers.</p> <p>Fauna of offshore sediments is not well known. An epifaunal assemblage dominated by sponges, hydroids, barnacles and starfishes has been described from muddy sands at 37 m depth off the Mokau River mouth.</p> <p>Core Māui dolphin (<i>Cephalorhynchus hectori maui</i>) habitat.</p> <p>Kekeno/ New Zealand fur seal (<i>Arctocephalus forsteri</i>) haulouts on Gannet Island and at Tirua Point.</p> <p>Taniwha/great white shark (<i>Carcharodon carcharias</i>) habitat.</p> <p>Productive inshore and pelagic fisheries.</p>	<p>other protected species.</p> <p>Overfishing.</p> <p>Sand mining.</p> <p>Marine debris.</p>	

References

- Anderson, O.F.; Bagley, N.W.; Hurst, R.J.; Francis, M.P.; Clark, M.R.; McMillan, P.J. 1998: Atlas of New Zealand fish and squid distributions from research bottom trawls. NIWA Technical Report 42. 303 p.
- Bouma, S. 2007: Biological data for identified Areas of Significant Conservation Value in the Waikato coastal and marine environment. Unpublished report for Waikato Conservancy, Department of Conservation, New Zealand. 163 p.
- Department of Conservation; Ministry of Fisheries 2011: Coastal marine habitats and marine protected areas in the New Zealand Territorial Sea: a broad scale gap analysis. Vol. 1-3. Department of Conservation and the Ministry of Fisheries, Wellington, New Zealand.
- Hurst, R.J.; Bagley, N.W.; Anderson, O.F.; Francis, M.P.; Griggs, L.H.; Clark, M.R.; Paul, L.J.; Taylor, P.R. 2000: Atlas of juvenile and adult fish and squid distributions from bottom and midwater trawls and tuna longlines in New Zealand waters. NIWA Technical Report 84. 162 p.
- Kendrick, T.H.; Francis, M.P. 2002: Fish assemblages in the Hauraki Gulf, New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research* 36: 699-717.
- Ramsar Wetlands Information Sheet: www.wetlandtrust.org.nz/documents/Firth_factsheet.pdf, viewed September 2012.
- Schwarz, A.; Morrison, M.; Hawes, I.; Halliday, J. 2004: Physical and biological characteristics of a threatened marine habitat: subtidal offshore seagrass beds. NIWA Client Report: HAM2004-113; NIWA Project: DOC05278. National Institute of Water & Atmospheric Research Ltd, Hamilton, New Zealand. 44 p.

Appendix 9

Significant geological features, landforms and landscapes in Waikato

Significant geological features, landforms and landscapes in Waikato have been identified in accordance with Conservation General Policy 4.5(a).

Table A9.1. Significant geological features and landforms.*

Geological feature/landform	Significance (international or national significance, including significance to tangata whenua)	Pressure/threat	Protected areas on public conservation land†
Albatross Point, Kawhia Coast Jurassic sediments and syncline	Nationally significant—Exposed syncline showing geomorphic expression of dip slopes	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Aotea dune fields	Nationally significant—Largest example of a well-defined mobile dune field on the northwest coast	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Yes
Arapuni type ignimbrite, Waikato River; Map T15	Internationally significant—Best example of ‘ignimbrite’ as a generic term	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Bradfield’s ‘Lindern Hills’ quarry Jurassic fauna; Map R16	Nationally significant—Rich lower Temaikan mollusc and brachiopod fauna, and best Temaikan fauna in New Zealand	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Cooks Beach blowhole; Map T11	Nationally significant—Spectacular sea blowholes (daylighted sea caves) on the east coast of the Coromandel Peninsula	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Yes
Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) tourmalinised rocks; Map T09	Nationally significant—Good exposure of large black crystals of tourmaline, and good example of hornfelses	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Yes
Daff Road Jurassic plant beds; Map R13	Nationally significant—Most accessible and robust source of Jurassic plant beds of Huriwai Formation	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Gardners Gut Cave, Waitomo; Map S16	Nationally significant—Reflective of karstification, two-level development, sedimentary deposits, speleothems and fossil bone deposits	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Yes
Grand Canyon Cave, Piopio; Map R17	Nationally significant—Bat habitat; a maternity roost for pekapeka/long-tailed bats (<i>Chalinolobus tuberculata</i>)	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Hauturu Road karst, Waitomo; Map R16	Nationally significant—Extensive area of karst in farmland; easily visible; many caves, some of which are documented separately in the Geopreservation Inventory	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Yes—in part
Hinuera Gap; Map T15	Nationally significant—The eroded gap through which the Waikato River flowed on its alternate Pleistocene course to the sea, via the Hauraki Plains; a distinctive landform	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No

Geological feature/landform	Significance (international or national significance, including significance to tangata whenua)	Pressure/threat	Protected areas on public conservation land†
Huriwai Beach Jurassic plant beds; Map R13	Nationally significant—Extremely well-preserved and historically significant upper Jurassic flora; type locality of several species	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Kaawa Creek—Ngatutura Bay section; Map R13	Nationally significant—Completely interrelated upper Cenozoic strata and faulting; only significant Pliocene fauna in northwest North Island; rich, diverse and well-preserved molluscs; good example of faulting	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Kaimango Road Jurassic fossil locality, Kawhia; Map R16	Nationally significant—Holostratotype of Mangaoran Substage	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Yes
Kapanga gold discovery site; Map T10	Nationally significant—Site of the first authenticated discovery of gold in New Zealand	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Yes
Kawhia coastal karst; Map R15	Nationally significant—Spectacular examples of coastal karst; includes caves and partly submerged dolines along the coast and sinkholes and blind valleys inland	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Kawhia Harbour, Arataura Point Jurassic sequence; Map R15	Nationally significant—Holostratotype of Aratauran Stage	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Kawhia Harbour, Heteri Point Jurassic macrofossils. Map: R15	Nationally significant—Holostratotype of Heterian Stage, with rich macrofossil fauna in shelly siltstone	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Kawhia Harbour, Ohaua Point Jurassic fossils; Map R15	Nationally significant—Holostratotype of Ohauan Stage, with rich macrofossil fauna in concretionary siltstones	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Kawhia Harbour, Te Maika Point Jurassic sequence; Map R15	Nationally significant—Holostratotype of Te Maikan Stage; includes <i>in situ</i> tree stumps	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Yes
Kawhia Harbour, Totara Point and Captain Kings Shell Bed Jurassic fossils; Map R15	Nationally significant—Lower part of Heterian Stage stratotype, includes historically important Captain Kings Shell Bed containing a rich bivalve and brachiopod fauna; type locality of many species	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Kawhia Harbour, Ururoa Point Jurassic Dactyloceras fossil bed; Map R15	Nationally significant—Holostratotype of Ururoan Stage; includes important Dactyloceras bed with a rich and varied fauna	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Kellyville tuff ring; Map S12	Nationally significant—One of South Auckland's larger tuff rings	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Kiriterehe Coast Upper Triassic section; Map R16	Nationally significant—Continuous exposure of Upper Triassic to basal Jurassic strata; best Triassic sequence in the North Island; rich gastropod fauna	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Kiriterehe Moeatoa Conglomerate lowest Triassic sequence; Map R16	Nationally significant—Base of Triassic sequence; oldest Triassic strata in the North Island	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No

Appendix 9

Geological feature/landform	Significance (international or national significance, including significance to tangata whenua)	Pressure/threat	Protected areas on public conservation land†
Kopouatai peat bog; Map T13	Nationally significant—Largest indigenous peat bog and wetland remaining in New Zealand	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Yes
Korapuki Sea Arch; Map T10	Nationally significant—Spectacular sea arch opening through cliff into a small cove	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Yes
Lake Disappear blind valley, Raglan; Map R15	Nationally significant—A polje that periodically floods then drains	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Link Road ignimbrite section; Map T17	Nationally significant—One of only two known exposures of Ignimbrite F	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Yes
Mangapohue natural bridge; Map R16	Nationally significant—A local tourist feature	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Yes
Mangapu Cave System, Waitomo; Map S16	Nationally significant—Geomorphology, spectacular entrance tomos, classical streamway, includes largest entrance pitch in the North Island	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Mangawharawhara Stream natural bridges and tunnels, Piopio; Map R17	Nationally significant—Spectacular karst landscape including Mangawharawhara Cavern	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Yes—in part
Mangawhio Road section; Map T16	Nationally significant—Exposure of base of Ignimbrite A	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Mangawhitikau Cave System, Waitomo; Map S16	Nationally significant—Largest cave stream in New Zealand, with good examples of cave geomorphology	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Yes
Maori Farm No. 1 and 3 opencast mines, Rotowaro; Map S14	Nationally significant—Notable exposure of lower and upper Waikato Coal measures		No
Maramaratotara Bay coastal features; Map T11	Nationally significant—A visor notch carved into ignimbrite; two levels of platform, one related to high tide and one to groundwater level	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Maungatautari Volcano; Map T15	Nationally significant—Large, prominent volcanic cone	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Moeweka Quarry Jurassic fossils; Map R13	Nationally significant—Good Heterian molluscan and brachiopod fauna	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Motutara Peninsula Jurassic and Oligocene sediments; Map R15	Nationally significant—Oligocene overlying peneplain on Upper Jurassic siltstones	Probably not Vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Mt Karioi Volcano; Map R15	Nationally significant—Large prominent volcanic cone	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Yes
Mt Pirongia Volcano; Map S15	Nationally significant—Largest volcano in western Waikato; major and prominent landform	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Yes
New Kotuku Trig Pukewharangi Hill Oligocene fossil locality; Map R14	Nationally significant—Hypostratotype of Whaingaroan Stage; richly microfossiliferous	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No

Appendix 9

Geological feature/landform	Significance (international or national significance, including significance to tangata whenua)	Pressure/threat	Protected areas on public conservation land†
Ngapuriri Natural Arch, Port Waikato; Map R13	Nationally significant—Rare New Zealand inland example of a natural arch (ie. formed by wind erosion, unlike a natural bridge, which is formed by water erosion)	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Onewhero tuff ring; Map R13	Nationally significant—Largest tuff ring in the South Auckland field	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Opuatia cliff Jurassic fossils; Map R13	Nationally significant—Rich, diverse and well-preserved Temaikan molluscan and brachiopod fauna	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Orua Hot Springs (Hot Water Beach); Map T11	Nationally significant—One of the very few hot springs at sea level in New Zealand	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Owharoa Falls owharoaite, Karangahake Gorge; Map T13	Internationally significant—Type locality for owharoaite, a form of lenticulite (lenticular ignimbrite)	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Paewhenua West Road ignimbrite section; Map S16	Nationally significant—Good exposure of Ignimbrite A and Ongatiti Ignimbrite	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Paku rhyolite dome and perlite locality; Map T11	Nationally significant—Exposures of a multi-stage eruptive complex; excellent quality perlite	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Piarere turn off alluvial terraces; Map T15	Internationally significant—Notable example of alluvial terraces; also good outcrops of ignimbrites, and small alluvial fans	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Port Waikato to Tuakau Bridge Road Jurassic section; Map R13	Nationally significant—Holostratotype section of Waikatoan Substage of Puaroa Stage	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Puaroa Creek, Kawhia Jurassic fossil locality; Map R16	Nationally significant—Holostratotype of Puaroa Stage	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Pukekawa III scoria cone; Map R13	Nationally significant—Well-preserved small scoria cone	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Puketiti Flower Cave, Piopio; Map R17	Nationally significant—Speleothems, gypsum flower display	Vulnerable to complete destruction by human actions	Yes
Puketoka conglomerate; Map S12	Nationally significant—Type locality of Puketoka Formation and best exposed section through rhyolitic sedimentary rocks and conglomerate; contains clasts of flow-banded rhyolite, chalcedony and rare silicified wood	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Puti Point Jurassic fossiliferous siltstone, Kawhia; Map R15	Nationally significant—Type locality of Puti Siltstone Formation; rich fossil locality in Puaroa Stage	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Ranginui Road ignimbrite section; Map T17	Nationally significant—Exposure of proximal Auhuroa Ignimbrite	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No

Appendix 9

Geological feature/landform	Significance (international or national significance, including significance to tangata whenua)	Pressure/threat	Protected areas on public conservation land†
Ranginui Station farm road ignimbrite section; Map T17	Nationally significant—Exposure of Ignimbrite C	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Ruakuri Cave, Waitomo; Map S16	Nationally significant—Geomorphology, length, nationally important tourist cave	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Yes
Ruakuri natural bridge, Waitomo; Map S16	Nationally significant—Spectacular feature, high aesthetic significance, tourism	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
State Highway 30 ignimbrite section; Map T17	Nationally significant—Exposure of Manunui Ignimbrite, with underlying Ongatiti Ignimbrite	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Tahanga Basalt prehistoric quarry; Map T10	Nationally significant—Source of widely distributed stone adze material	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Tairua opal; Map T11	Nationally significant—Rare occurrence of precious opal in New Zealand	Vulnerable to complete destruction by human actions	No
Tapu ferrierite; Map T11	Nationally significant—New Zealand's only recorded occurrence of ferrierite	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Yes
Te Kaka Ridge roscoelite; Map T11	Nationally significant—A rare occurrence of roscoelite in New Zealand	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Yes
Te Kawa olivine basalt quarry; Map S15	Nationally significant—Excellent exposures of thick olivine basalt (ankaramite) lavas	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Te Mata carnelian; Map T11	Nationally significant—Good example of carnelian	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
The Hole-in-the-Wall, Needle Rock; Map T10	Nationally significant—Spectacular rock arch islet	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Troopers Road Cave System, Waitomo; Map R16	Nationally significant—Geomorphology, length, jointfault control, speleothems, selenite, calcite and fossil deposits; one of the most extensive North Island cave systems	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Tui Mine sulphides and speleothems; Map T13	Nationally significant—Notable New Zealand occurrence of copper-lead-zinc sulphide ore and secondary minerals	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Yes
Waiharakeke Bridge—Kinohaku Jurassic sediments; Map R16	Nationally significant—Easily accessible continuous sequence of Upper Jurassic formations	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Waikato River delta; Map R13	Nationally significant—Notable North Island example of a braided river delta	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Waimai Valley Oligocene sequence, Te Akau; Map R14	Nationally significant—Type locality of Waimai Limestone Member; typical north Waikato Oligocene sequence	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No

Appendix 9

Geological feature/landform	Significance (international or national significance, including significance to tangata whenua)	Pressure/threat	Protected areas on public conservation land†
Waipapa Dam section; Map T16	Nationally significant—Exposure of material typical of Whakamaru Ignimbrite in the Waikato valley	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Waipapa Road section A; Map T16	Nationally significant—Exposure of base of Whakamaru Ignimbrite	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Waipapa Road section B; Map T16	Nationally significant—Exposure of top of Whakamaru Ignimbrite	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Wairere Falls over fault line; Map T14	Nationally significant—High waterfall held up by ignimbrite over andesite on the uplifted side of the eastern fault of the Hauraki Graben	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Wairere serpentinite, rodingite and rosenhahnite; Map R17	Nationally significant—Surface exposure of structurally complex serpentinite body; only outcrop of serpentinite in South Auckland; only known occurrence of rosenhahnite in New Zealand; well-exposed example of rodingite	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Waitomo Glowworm Cave and resurgence karst; Map S16	Internationally significant—Nationally important tourist asset; best and most easily accessible area in Waitomo region showing karst resurgence features	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Yes
Waitomo Stream headwaters cave system; Map R16	Nationally significant—Geomorphology, length, extent, speleothems (calcite), fossil deposits, very important recreational resources	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	No
Whakamaru Ignimbrite Maraetai Dam section; Map T16	Internationally significant—Type locality for Whakamaru Ignimbrite	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Yes
Whangapoua columnar jointed basalt; Map T10	Nationally significant—Impressive example of columnar jointed basalt	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No
Whenuakite Dome; Map T11	Nationally significant—Well-exposed rhyolite dome, possibly the youngest in the Coromandel	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	No

* Source: New Zealand Geopreservation Inventory.

† The presence of features, landforms or landscapes on public conservation land administered by the Department was defined by the Department's Geographical Information System and a data match (New Zealand Geopreservation Inventory only). It is a guide only, and is based on site localities (data points) and the description of landscape locations.

Table A9.2. Significant landscapes.*

Landscapes	Significance (international, national or regional significance, including significance to tangata whenua)	Pressure/threats	Protected areas
Mt Karioi (ONFL 4)	Regionally significant. Distinctive volcanic cone close to the coast; good quality indigenous vegetation; cliffs and headlands; botanical values; tramping tracks	Pest plants and animals	Yes—largely
Coromandel Range and Moehau Range (ONFL 5)	Regionally significant. Massive volcanic landform; forms the distinctive backbone to the peninsula; significant to tangata whenua, e.g. pā sites; historic values of early settlement, gold mining and logging	Pest plants and animals	Yes—largely
Mt Maungatautari (ONFL 6)	Regionally significant. Distinctive volcanic cone; ecological island established on slopes; high natural character; significant to tangata whenua; Māori settlements formerly on the slopes; historic/early pākehā settlers	Pest plants and animals	Yes—largely
Mt Pirongia (ONFL 7)	Regionally significant. Distinctive volcano with several peaks, seen from much of the Waikato. Significant to tangata whenua; was a centre for the Māori Wars and a military base; recreational values; historic values	Pest plants and animals	Yes—largely
Coastal areas of the Coromandel—Cathedral Cove, Shakespeare Cliff and coastline south of Hahei (ONFL 10/1)	Regionally significant. Dramatic white cliffs, pinnacles, arches and blowholes, and white silica beaches; several offshore islands; high natural character along coastal edge; significant to tangata whenua—footpaths along coast and pā sites; recreational values	Development and overuse threats	Yes—in part
Coastal areas of the Coromandel—northern tip of the Coromandel Peninsula and western slopes of Moehau Range out to coast (ONFL 10/2)	Regionally significant. Combination of pasture and bush running out to cliffs and bays; distinctive coastal features; pōhutukawa (<i>Metrosideros excelsa</i>), indigenous forest; pā sites on headlands	Pest plants and animals	Yes—in part
Coastal areas of the Coromandel—Tuatēawa (ONFL 10/3)	Regionally significant. Combination of dramatic coastal edge, stony beaches and rock reefs, backed by steep slopes with a large number of pōhutukawa; significant to tangata whenua; recreational values	Coastal development; Pest plants and animals	No—largely
Waikato River and associated lower Waikato River wetlands (ONFL13)	Regionally significant. The longest river in New Zealand; modified in places by hydro-electricity dams and lakes; linked to Whangamarino Wetland, lowland lakes, and the dune spit at Port Waikato; of great significance to tangata whenua, as it passes through the home of the Māori King at Ngaruawahia; of historic importance.	Urban, agricultural and industrial discharges; dams and impediments to fish passage; algae and plant nuisances; exotic fish	Yes—in part

Appendix 9

Landscape	Significance (international, national or regional significance, including significance to tangata whenua)	Pressure/threats	Protected areas
Hauhangaroa Range, Mt Pureora and Titiraupenga (ONFL14)	Regionally significant. One of the largest and most significant stands of native forest within the North Island; includes tall rimu (<i>Dacrydium cupressinum</i>), tōtara (<i>Podocarpus totara</i>), mataī (<i>Prumnopitys taxifolia</i>), miro (<i>Prumnopitys ferruginea</i>) and kahikatea (<i>Dacrycarpus dacrydioides</i>), along with tawa (<i>Beilschmiedia tawa</i>) and tree ferns, kāmahi (<i>Weinmannia racemosa</i>) and Hall's tōtara (<i>Podocarpus cunninghamii</i>); subalpine herb fields closer to summit of Mt Pureora (1165 m); includes Waihora Lagoon and 78 000-ha Pureora Forest Park	Pest plants and animals	Yes—largely

* Source: Proposed Waikato Regional Policy Statement amended version (2011)—based on a regional landscape assessment undertaken for Waikato Regional Council.

Appendix 10

Actively conserved historic places in Waikato on public conservation lands or waters managed by the Department

Place	Location	Heritage topics and significance	Pressure/threats	Destination category/ access
Aotea Heads Scientific Reserve	Aotea Harbour, north shore	Midden and pā, Māori subsistence and living	Erosion	n/a—no public access
Billygoat Incline	Kauaeranga Valley	Kauri logging	Stability and vegetation management	Gateway
Bog Inn Hut	Pureora	Historic building—forestry research	Rust and decay	Backcountry network
Broken and Golden Hills Mines	Puketui Valley	Gold mining, quartz reef	Decay of structural remains	Gateway
Cathedral Cove Pā	Above Cathedral Cove arch	Māori fortification	Collapse of the arch	Icon
Christmas Creek Kauri Dam	Kauaeranga Valley	Kauri logging	Timber decay; weather bombs	Gateway
Crawler Tractor	Pureora	Native timber industry	Rust and decay	Local Treasure
Crosbies Farm Settlement	Crosbies Clearing Coromandel Range	Failed farm settlement	Vegetation management	n/a
Cuvier Island Lighthouse Settlement	Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) lighthouse station	Maritime safety	Fire; storm damage	Backcountry network
Dancing Creek Kauri Dam	Kauaeranga Valley	Kauri (<i>Agathis australis</i>) logging	Timber decay; weather bombs	Gateway
Fletcher Bay Pā	Fletcher Bay	Māori pā	Erosion; vegetation management	Local Treasure
Fletcher Bay Wool Store	Fletcher Bay	Wool storage shed	Structural stability	Gateway
Fordson Rail Tractor	Kauaeranga Visitor Centre	Kauri logging	Rust and decay	n/a—to be deployed to a visitor site
Hysler Logging Arch	Pureora	Native timber industry	Rust and decay	n/a—to be deployed to a visitor site
Judd Log Hauler	Pureora	Native timber industry	Rust and decay	Local Treasure
Kakepuku Historic Reserve	Kakepuku Mountain	Four pā and other Māori sites	Erosion	Backcountry network
Kauaeranga Water Supply Intake	Nature Walk to Hoffman's Pool	Mining water supply, Thames	Vegetation management	Gateway
Kauaeranga Water Race	Kahikatea Walk	Mining water supply, Thames	Vegetation management	Gateway
Lillis Battery	Whangapoua Saddle /Kaipawa Trig Walk	Gold mining, quartz reef	Building unsafe and falling down	Local Treasure

Appendix 10

Place	Location	Heritage topics and significance	Pressure/threats	Destination category/ access
Long And Short Trestles	Kauaeranga Valley	Kauri logging	In very poor, collapsed condition	n/a
Mccormick-Deering Tractor	Pureora	Deer recovery	Rust and decay	Local Treasure
Meremere Pā Site Historic Reserve*	Meremere, off SH1	Important Waikato War site—redoubt and pā site	Erosion	Local Treasure
Musterers Hut	Poley Bay, Coromandel Walkway	Farming, now used as day visitor shelter	Storm damage	Gateway
NZFS Workshop Building	Pureora	Native timber industry	Fire and decay	n/a—historic building
Ongarue Tramway And Spiral	Ongarue, part of The Timber Trail	Native timber industry	Erosion; storm damage	Icon/Historic Icon Site
Ongarue Tramway Miscellaneous Small Timber Assets	Ongarue, part of The Timber Trail	Native timber industry	Bridge remnants, two huts, structural decay and collapse	Icon/Historic Icon Site
Opapaka Pā	Hangatiki Scenic Reserve, Waitomo	Ridge pā	Erosion	Gateway
Opera Point Historic Reserve	North Head Whangapoua Harbour	Headland pā	Erosion; vegetation management	Local Treasure
Opito Point Historic Reserve	East end of Opito Bay	Headland pā	Erosion; vegetation management	Local Treasure
Papa Aroha Historic Reserve	Papa Aroha	Māori pā	Vegetation management and access	Local Treasure
Purahoa Historic Reserve	Aotea Harbour, south shore	Headland pā	Erosion	Local Treasure
Pureora—Timber Workers' House and Store	Pureora	Native timber industry	Fire; being transferred to iwi	Icon/Historic Icon Site
Ruakuri Historic Kiosk	Waitomo, Ruakuri Reserve	Cave tourism	Fire and decay	Gateway
Robinson Hauler	Pureora	Native timber industry	Rust and decay	n/a—to be deployed to a visitor site
Royal Standard Tramway	Wharekairauponga Valley	Gold mining, quartz reef, tunnels	Track upgrade compromising integrity	Local Treasure
Soldiers Grave	Pirongia Mountain	European soldiers' graves	Semi-remote, difficult public access	n/a—no public access
Taniwha Pā Historic Reserve	Within private land at Taniwha	Fortified food storage pā	Semi-remote, difficult public access	n/a—no public access
Te Pare Point Historic Reserve	South end of Hahei Beach	Headland pā (Heraherataura Pā is the main visitor site in this reserve)	Erosion	Local Treasure
Te Teo Teo Pā [†]	Whangamarino Walkway	Pā involved in Waikato War	Erosion	Local Treasure

Appendix 10

Place	Location	Heritage topics and significance	Pressure/threats	Destination category/ access
Wentworth Battery	Wentworth Valley	Gold mining, quartz reef	Structural stability; vegetation management	Local Treasure
Wharekatua Pā	Port Jackson	Māori pā	Erosion	Local Treasure
Whitianga Rock Scenic and Historic Reserve	Ferry landing	Headland pā	Weed management	Local Treasure
Whiritoa Rock Art Site	Beyond northern end of Whiritoa Beach	Māori rock art	In tidal zone; damage to protective cage	Local Treasure
World War II Radar Station Structures	Cuvier Island (Repanga Island) highest point	World War II defence	Fire; storm damage	Backcountry network

* Registered w āhi tapu 'Meremere' (no. 9609).

† Registered w āhi tapu 'Te Teo Teo' (no. 9607).

Appendix 11

Recreation destinations in Waikato

Note: Recreation destinations located in backcountry or remote settings are not included in this table but are addressed in general in Parts One and Two of this CMS.

Icon destinations	
Cathedral Cove	Cathedral Cove Walk Hahei Beach Walk Mahurangi Island Track
The Timber Trail*	Piropiro Campsite The Timber Trail
Gateway destinations	
Kauaeranga Valley Gateway	Booms Flat Campsite Booms Historical Walk Catleys Campsite Hotoritotori Campsite Kahikatea Walk Kauaeranga Nature Walk Kauaeranga Road Murray's Walk Shag Stream Campsite Totara Flat Campsite Trestle view Campsite Wainora Campsite Wainora Kauri Track Whangaiterenga Campsite
Kauaeranga Kauri Trail Gateway	Billygoat Basin Track - Hydro Camp Track - Kauaeranga Valley Road end Hydro Camp - Pinnacles Hut Track - Kauaeranga Kauri Trail Pinnacles Hut and Campsite Pinnacles Hut to Pinnacles Track Webb Creek - Hydro Camp Track - Kauaeranga Kauri Trail
Broken Hills Gateway	Broken Hills Campsite Gem of the Boom / Broken Hills Battery Tracks Golden Hills Mine - Water Race Track - Third Branch Track
Wentworth Valley Gateway	Wentworth Campsite Wentworth Falls Track
Fletcher Bay Campsite Gateway	Fletcher Bay Campsite
Stony Bay Campsite Gateway	Coromandel Walkway Stony Bay Campsite
Waikawau Bay Gateway	Waikawau Bay Campsite Waikawau Bay Reserve
Ruakuri Walk	Opapaka Pā and historic sites Ruakuri Access Road Ruakuri Amenity Area Ruakuri Walk
Kakaho Campsite	Kakaho Campsite Rimu Walk
Kaniwhaniwha Amenity Area	Bell Track (to tallest tree) Kaniwhaniwha amenity area Nikau Walk

Local Treasure destinations
Aratoro Carpark / picnic area
Barryville Road
Bridal Veil Falls—Short Walk
Buried Forest Walk—Pureora
Catley's Track
Centre of North Island Track
Corcoran Road Carpark and Short Walk
Crawler Tractor Walk
Edwards Lookout Track
Forest Tower Walk and Carpark
Four Brothers Walk
Grey Road Carpark
Hakarimata Rail Trail
Hakarimata Summit Track
Horoure Pā Historic Site—Aotea
Hotoritori (Pony) Trail
Jasper Creek Walk
Karakariki Track to waterfall
Kauaeranga Visitor Centre
Kauri Block Track
Kauri Loop Walk—Hakarimata
Lake Cameron
Link Road Carpark
Link Track—Pirongia
Mahaukura Track (Grey Road to Wharauroa Peak)
Mangakara Nature Walk
Manganui Roads
Mangaotaki Track / picnic area
Mangapohue picnic area
Mangapohue Walk
Manuka Track—Te Kauri Park
Maratoto Road
Maratoto Roadend to Golden Cross Track
Marokopa Falls Walk and picnic area
Matamataharakeke Track
Maungakawa Short Walk
Meremere Redoubt Historic Site
Mine Road
Mt Pureora Track (from Link Road)
Ngarunui Track (Bryant)
Omaru Falls Track
Oparure Hall
Opera Point Historic Site
Opoutere Beach Track
Otama Beach Recreation Reserve
Outlook 76 Walkway
Papa Aroha Track
Parker Road car park—Hakarimata
Pauanui Beach Loop Walk

Local Treasure destinations
Pauanui Trig Track
Pikiariki Road
Pikiariki Tractor Hauler Track
Piripiri Walk / picnic area
Port Jackson Campsite
Port Jackson Road
Pureora Cabins and Carpark
Pureora Village Road
Red Bridge Road Track
Rockys Walk Track to Tinkers Gully
Ruapane Track
Scott Roads
Select Loop Road / Mountain Bike Track
Square Kauri Walk
Stony Bay Fishing Track
Taumatawhine Track
Te Pare Pā Walk
Te Rauamoia Roads
Te Raumaiku Track
Te Toto Gorge
Tirohanga Track (Corcoran Road to Ruapane Track)
Tokatea Track
Totara Walk—Pureora
Twin Kauri Track
Waiau Falls Track
Waiau Kauri Grove Track
Waihaha Track
Waimama Bay Track
Waiomu Kauri Grove Track
Waitaia Track
Waitanguru Walk / picnic area
Waitomo Walkway
Water Race Track (Bryant Memorial Scenic Reserve)
Waterworks/Waingaro Link Track
Wentworth Mines Walk
Whangamarino Historic Walk and Pā
Wharekirauponga Track
Whenuakite Kauri Loop Track
Whewells Bush Scientific Reserve

* Also identified as a Historic Icon site.

Appendix 12

Prescriptions for the management of visitor management zones

Refer to Volume II for maps of the visitor management zones in Waikato.

Setting	Urban	Rural	Front country	Backcountry—accessible and walk-in	Remote	Wilderness
General description	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Areas inside or on the periphery of urban areas • Typically includes a historic or cultural site 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Remnant native forest, wetlands, marine reserves and historic or cultural sites in areas dominated by farmland and plantation forest 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Where the majority of visitation occurs; typically small areas, scattered within or on the periphery of large, relatively natural areas • Includes the vicinity of main 'scenic' roads passing through public conservation lands • Often focused on a particular attraction 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Large-scale natural settings generally accessed first through front country • Includes popular walks and tramps set within large-scale natural settings and/or that access other settings 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Catchments beyond the backcountry zone, forming the wild lands in the interior of large, protected areas, with basic low-use tracks, marked routes and huts 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Gazetted wilderness
Accessibility	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enabled for people of most ages and abilities 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Typically via sealed and unsealed roads, and in some cases by boat • Enabled for people of most ages or abilities 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Readily accessible areas, usually via sealed roads, or scheduled ferry or air services • Mostly by car, but also tour buses and guided parties to some sites • Enabled for people of most ages and abilities 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • People will have travelled some distance to reach these settings • 'Backcountry accessible' focuses on gravel roads, four wheel drive roads, navigable waters and aircraft landing sites • Motorised ground access generally restricted to roads and designated routes • 'Backcountry walk-in' is focused beyond the influence of motorised access 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Typically 5 or more hours travel from front country • Access supported by aircraft in some areas 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Requires passing through backcountry and remote to reach the boundary

Setting	Urban	Rural	Front country	Backcountry—accessible and walk-in	Remote	Wilderness
Predominant visitor groups	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Short-stop travellers and day visitors 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Short-stop travellers, day visitors and over-nighters Other visitors in transition to backcountry and remote settings 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Predominantly short-stop travellers, day visitors and over-nighters Other visitors in transition to backcountry and remote settings 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Predominantly 'backcountry comfort seekers' and 'backcountry adventurers' 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 'Backcountry adventurers' and 'remoteness seekers' 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 'Remoteness seekers'
Facility setting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> High-standard footpaths, cycleways and modified landscapes High degree of control via information and direction signs, and barriers 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Short walks, campsites and picnic areas, for a range of ages and abilities High degree of control via information and direction signs, and barriers 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Good-quality facilities, services and easy access Sometimes the origin for tramping tracks and routes, with signs and information to make this transition clear High degree of control via information and direction signs, and barriers 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A range of facility standards, including any designated vehicle routes, and popular walks and tramping tracks Evidence of control limited to essential directional signs and barriers on Great Walks, and places where there are significant hazards 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Basic huts, bridges, low-use tracks and marked routes Evidence of control is limited to essential signs 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No facilities
Desired visitor experience and interactions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Varying, from activities with large groups, time with small groups/families, some time away from other groups and, in some cases, solitude 			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Generally some time away from other groups and, in some cases, solitude Occasional encounters with organised groups Generally accepting of occasional intrusion of noise 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reasonable expectation of isolation from sights, sounds and activities of other people Interaction with few other groups Considerable self-reliance on backcountry skills 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Complete isolation from sights, sounds and activities of other people Maximum interaction with only one other group is generally acceptable
Preferred maximum party size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> What is socially appropriate Conforming concessions schedule—15 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 50 Conforming concessions schedule—15 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 15 50 for periodic tour bus parties Conforming concessions schedule—15 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 15 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 8 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 6

Setting	Urban	Rural	Front country	Backcountry—accessible and walk-in	Remote	Wilderness
Typical visitor interaction levels	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> What is socially appropriate 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 20 or less people seen per hour 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 30 or less people seen per visit duration 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 15 or less people seen per day for 'backcountry adventurer' tracks or routes 40 or less people seen per day for 'backcountry comfort seeker' tracks or routes 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 10 or less people seen per day 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 6 or less people seen per visit duration
Concessions operations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Concessionaire activity may be permitted in all these visitor management zones, subject to conditions to avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects, including compliance with criteria within this table; the outcomes and policies for Part Two: Places and the Policies in Part Three apply Concessionaire client activities should not be advantaged or disadvantaged compared with those for non-concessionaire visitors, unless there is a specified reason for different management; the outcomes and policies for Part Two: Places and the Policies in Part Three apply 					<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Concessions should only be granted for this setting where consistent with policies for wilderness areas
Concessions effects management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Avoid, remedy or mitigate effects by setting conditions 		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Avoid or mitigate effects. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Concessions activity to be indistinguishable from other approved activities 		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Concessions should only be granted for this setting where consistent with policies for wilderness areas
Aircraft management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Aircraft access for visitor use purpose should not be approved other than in accordance with Policies 3.5.1 to 3.5.11 (Aircraft) in Part Three and the outcomes and policies in Part Two—Places 					<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Aircraft access should only be granted where consistent with policies for wilderness areas

Appendix 13

Summary of the Memorandum of Understanding between Pouakani and the Minister of Conservation

Parties

The Pouakani Governance Entity (Pouakani)
The Minister of Conservation (the Department)

Purpose

To enable both Pouakani and the Department to exercise their respective responsibilities with the utmost cooperation. The Memorandum sets out a framework that will enable the Department and Pouakani to establish a healthy and constructive working relationship.

Areas covered

The areas covered by the Memorandum of Understanding are those parts of the Pureora Forest Park within the claim area (including the land administered by the Department on Mt Titiraupenga), the Pouakani Scenic Reserve and the land owned by the two Trusts that is covered in native bush on Mt Titiraupenga (MOU Land). Both Pouakani and the Department recognise that the Māori-owned blocks remain private land and that Crown land remains Crown land.

General

The existence of the Memorandum of Understanding, including a summary of the terms of signing of the Memorandum, will be noted in conservation management strategies and plans affecting the MOU Land.

Specific obligations

In recognition of the importance to Pouakani of the land covered by this Memorandum, Pouakani will be consulted and regard will be had to its views concerning the following management and administration activities that may be undertaken from time to time by the Department:

- The preparation of conservation management strategies and conservation management plans; and
- The preparation of non-statutory plans, strategies or programmes for the protection and management of the land (including the protection of indigenous species and the control of introduced species).

In addition:

- The Department will provide Pouakani with relevant information to enable Pouakani to consider and advise its views to the Department on any matter on which it is consulted;
- The Department will inform Pouakani of all concession applications to the MOU Land; and
- Pouakani will inform and consult the Department in relation to any programmes Pouakani conduct to protect indigenous species and to control introduced species.

The Department will seek to establish and maintain communication with Pouakani on a continuing basis.

Pouakani and the Department want to ensure that there are ongoing discussions on how to better harmonise management objectives for both Māori-owned land and land that the Department administers.

The Department will respect the great significance of wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance as taonga to Pouakani, and will endeavour to protect them in its statutory role to conserve historic resources in protected areas.

In respect of cultural materials, the Department will:

- Consider requests from Pouakani for the customary use of cultural materials in accordance with the relevant legislation;
- Agree, where reasonably practicable, for Pouakani to have access to cultural materials that become available as a result of departmental operations;
- Consult with Pouakani in circumstances where there are competing requests for the use of cultural materials, for example for scientific research purposes;
- Assist Pouakani with the planting of traditional plants on private land to reduce the need for plants to be gathered from land administered by the Department; and
- Develop procedures with Pouakani for monitoring sustainable levels and methods of use;

In providing public information and interpretation services and facilities for visitors on the land it manages, the Department will endeavour to recognise the importance to Pouakani of their cultural, spiritual, traditional and historic values.

The Department will work with Pouakani at the area office level to encourage respect for Pouakani values.

Appendix 14

Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato—The Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River

The Vision

*Tōku awa koiōra me ōna pikonga he kura tangihia o te mātāmuri.
The river of life, each curve more beautiful than the last.*

Our vision is for a future where a healthy Waikato River sustains abundant life and prosperous communities who, in turn, are all responsible for restoring and protecting the health and well-being of the Waikato River, and all it embraces, for generations to come.

The Objectives and Strategies

The Objectives and Strategies of the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River are listed below. Relevant sections and provisions of this CMS are also listed to demonstrate how this CMS implements the Department’s responsibilities under legislation to implement the Vision and Strategy.

Table A14.1. Sections and provisions of the Waikato CMS that implement the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River.

CMS section	Relevant CMS provision(s) and/or explanation
Introduction	
Purpose of conservation management strategies—General policies	States that the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River has the status of a general policy
Relationship with other Department of Conservation strategic documents and tools Relationship with other planning processes	State the planning context within which CMSs are prepared, and obligations under legislation towards other plans and strategies and the CMS
Legislative tools—conservation management plans	Lists the following integrated river management plans: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Waikato River • The upper Waikato River • The Waipa River
Part One	
Section 2: Vision for Waikato—2064	Includes specific reference to restoration of the health and well-being of the Waikato River
Section 3: Distinctive features, values and issues of Waikato —Water—the force of the region	Includes specific reference to the Waikato and Waipa Rivers
Section 4: Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities	Includes specific reference to Waikato River Iwi and Ngāti Maniapoto tribal links, territories and Treaty settlements; all objectives apply
Section 5: Waikato by 2024	Natural heritage—Objectives 5.1.1.1 to 5.1.1.4, 5.1.1.6 to 5.1.1.9, 5.1.1.12, 5.1.1.15, 5.1.1.16 and 5.1.1.23 apply History—Objectives 5.2.1.1, 5.2.1.3 to 5.2.1.5, 5.2.1.7 and 5.2.1.8 apply Recreation—Objectives 5.3.1.1, 5.3.1.4, 5.3.1.7, 5.3.1.10 and 5.3.1.15 apply Engagement—Objectives 5.4.1.1 to 5.4.1.12 apply
Section 6: The Waikato River - Te Awa o Waikato	Details those iwi who have a relationship and claim to the Waikato and Waipa Rivers, Treaty settlement legislation, and the key mechanisms arising from that legislation, including the Vision and Strategy, integrated river management plans and conservation accords; all objectives apply

CMS section	Relevant CMS provision(s) and/or explanation
Part Two—Places	
Section 12: Freshwater Wetlands Place	Description and Outcome—recognises Waikato-Tainui’s relationship with the Lower Waikato Wetlands (part of the Waikato-Tainui Co-governance Area), and the wetlands’ association with the Waikato River and contribution to achieving the Vision and Strategy; Policies 12.2.2.1, 12.2.2.3, to 12.2.2.11 and 12.2.2.14 apply
Section 13: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain	Description and Outcome—recognises the relationship that Waikato-Tainui and Ngāti Maniapoto have with the part of the Waikato and Waipa River catchments on Pirongia Mountain, and its contribution to achieving both the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River and the care and protection of the Waipa River; Policies 13.2.2.1 and 13.2.2.14, apply
Section 15: Pureora Place	Description and Outcome—recognises the relationship Ngāti Maniapoto has with the Upper Waipa River catchment in northern parts of Pureora Forest Park, and its contribution to achieving both the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River and the care and protection of the Waipa River; Policies 15.2.2.1, 15.2.2.2, 15.2.2.4, 15.2.2.7 and 15.2.2.16 apply
Part Three—Specific policy requirements for Waikato	
Policies	Throughout the policies in this section, there is frequent requirement for assessment of impacts of activities on cultural and historic values, e.g. motor vehicle use, mountain bike use, horse use, watercraft use, aircraft use
Private accommodation	Description—Reference to requirement to provide for any structures along the Waikato River that have statutory acknowledgement under Treaty settlement legislation; Policies 16.5.1.8 and 16.5.1.9 apply
Collection of material	Description—Recognises customary activities of significance to tangata whenua, and that Treaty settlements can provide more specific recognition and provision for customary use of material; all policies apply
Commercial eeling	All policies apply
Appendices	
Appendix 10: Actively conserved historic places in Waikato	Identifies historic places managed by the Department in Waikato and includes several sites close to and/or associated with the Waikato River, e.g. Te Toe Toe Pā

Table A14.2. The Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River: Objectives.

Objectives for the Waikato River	Relevant sections and provisions of the Waikato CMS
a) <i>The restoration and protection of the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Introduction: Purpose of conservation management strategies—General policies • Introduction: Legislative tools—conservation management plans • Section 2: Vision for Waikato—2064 • Section 3: Distinctive features, values and issues of Waikato —Water—the force of the region • Section 4: Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities • Section 5: Waikato by 2024 • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato • Section 12: Freshwater Wetlands Place • Section 13: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain • Section 15: Pureora Place • Part Three: Policies • Part Three: Private accommodation • Part Three: Collection of material • Part Three: Commercial eeling • Appendix 10: Actively conserved historic places in Waikato
b) <i>The restoration and protection of the relationship of Waikato-Tainui with the Waikato River, including their economic, social, cultural and spiritual relationship</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Section 2: Vision for Waikato—2064 • Section 4: Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities • Section 5: Waikato by 2024—Natural heritage, History and Business • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato • Section 12: Freshwater Wetlands Place
c) <i>The restoration and protection of the relationship of Waikato River Iwi according to their tikanga and kawa with the Waikato River, including their economic, social, cultural and spiritual relationship</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Section 2: Vision for Waikato—2064 • Section 4: Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities • Section 5: Waikato by 2024—Natural heritage, History and Business • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato • Section 12: Freshwater Wetlands Place • Section 13: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain • Section 15: Pureora Place
d) <i>The restoration and protection of the relationship of Waikato Region's communities with the Waikato River, including the economic, social, cultural and spiritual relationships</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Section 2: Vision for Waikato—2064 • Section 5: Waikato by 2024—all sections apply • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato • Section 12: Freshwater Wetlands Place • Section 13: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain • Section 15: Pureora Place • Appendix 10: Actively conserved historic places in Waikato
e) <i>The integrated, holistic and coordinated approach to management of the natural, physical, cultural and historic resources of the Waikato River</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Section 2: Vision for Waikato—2064 • Section 5: Waikato by 2024—all sections apply • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato • Section 12: Freshwater Wetlands Place • Section 13: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain • Section 15: Pureora Place • Part Three: Policies (in general) • Part Three: Private accommodation • Part Three: Collection of material • Part Three: Commercial eeling
f) <i>The adoption of a precautionary approach towards decisions that may result in significant adverse effects on the Waikato River, and in particular those effects that threaten serious or</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato • Section 12: Freshwater Wetlands Place • Section 13: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain • Section 15: Pureora Place

	<i>irreversible damage to the Waikato River</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Part Three: Policies (in general) • Part Three: Private accommodation • Part Three: Collection of material • Part Three: Commercial eeling
g)	<i>The recognition and avoidance of adverse cumulative effects, and potential cumulative effects, of activities undertaken both on the Waikato River and within its catchments on the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato • Section 12: Freshwater Wetlands Place • Section 13: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain • Section 15: Pureora Place • Part Three: Policies (in general) • Part Three: Private accommodation • Part Three Collection of material • Part Three: Commercial eeling
h)	<i>The recognition that the Waikato River is degraded and should not be required to absorb further degradation as a result of human activities</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Section 3: Distinctive features, values and issues of Waikato –Water—the force of the region • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato • Section 12: Freshwater Wetlands Place • Section 13: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain • Section 15: Pureora Place
i)	<i>The protection and enhancement of significant sites, fisheries, flora and fauna</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Section 2: Vision for Waikato—2064 • Section 5: Waikato by 2024—Natural heritage and History • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato • Section 12: Freshwater Wetlands Place • Section 13: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain • Section 15: Pureora Place • Part Three: Policies (in general) • Part Three: Collection of material • Part Three: Commercial eeling • Appendix 10: Actively conserved historic places in Waikato
j)	<i>The recognition that the strategic importance of the Waikato River to New Zealand’s social, cultural, environmental and economic wellbeing is subject to the restoration and protection of the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Section 2: Vision for Waikato—2064 • Section 3: Distinctive features, values and issues of Waikato –Water—the force of the region • Section 5: Waikato by 2024—all sections apply • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato • Section 12: Freshwater Wetlands Place • Section 13: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain • Section 15: Pureora Place
k)	<i>The restoration of water quality within the Waikato River so that it is safe for people to swim in and take food from over its entire length</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato • Section 12: Freshwater Wetlands Place • Section 13: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain • Section 15: Pureora Place. • Part Three: Policies (in general) • Part Three: Private accommodation • Part Three: Collection of material • Part Three: Commercial eeling
l)	<i>The promotion of improved access to the Waikato River to better enable sporting, recreational, and cultural opportunities</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato • Section 5: Waikato by 2024—History and Recreation. • Section 12: Freshwater Wetlands Place • Part Three: Policies (in general) • Part Three: Private accommodation • Part Three: Collection of material • Part Three: Commercial eeling

m)	<i>The application to the above of both mātauranga Māori and the latest available scientific methods</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato • Section 12: Freshwater Wetlands Place • Section 13: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain • Section 15: Pureora Place
----	--	---

Table A14.3. The Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River: Strategies.

Strategies for the Waikato River		Relevant sections and provisions of the Waikato CMS
a)	<i>Ensure that the highest level of recognition is given to the restoration and protection of the Waikato River</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Introduction: Purpose of conservation management strategies—General policies • Section 2: Vision for Waikato—2064 • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato
b)	<i>Establish what the current health status of the Waikato River is by utilising mātauranga Māori and the latest available scientific methods</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Introduction: Legislative tools—Conservation management plans (integrated river management plans) • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato • Section 12: Freshwater Wetlands Place • Section 13: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain • Section 15: Pureora Place
c)	<i>Develop targets for improving the health and well-being of the Waikato River by utilising mātauranga Māori and the latest available scientific methods</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Introduction: Legislative tools—Conservation management plans (integrated river management plans) • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato • Section 12: Freshwater Wetlands Place • Section 13: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain • Section 15: Pureora Place
d)	<i>Develop and implement a programme of action to achieve the targets for improving the health and well-being of the Waikato River</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Introduction: Legislative tools—Conservation management plans (integrated river management plans) • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato • Section 12: Freshwater Wetlands Place • Section 13: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain • Section 16: Pureora Place
e)	<i>Develop and share local, national and international expertise, including indigenous expertise, on rivers and activities within their catchments that may be applied to the restoration and protection of the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Section 4: Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato
f)	<i>Recognise and protect wāhi tapu and sites of significance to Waikato-Tainui and other Waikato River iwi (where they do decide) to promote their cultural, spiritual, and historic relationship with the Waikato River</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Section 4: Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato • Section 5: Waikato by 2024—Natural heritage and History • Section 12: Freshwater Wetlands Place • Section 13: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain • Section 15: Pureora Place • Appendix 10: Actively conserved historic places in Waikato
g)	<i>Recognise and protect appropriate sites associated with the Waikato River that are of significance to the Waikato regional community</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato • Section 5: Waikato by 2024—Natural heritage and History • Section 12: Freshwater Wetlands Place • Section 13: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain • Section 15: Pureora Place • Appendix 10: Actively conserved historic places in Waikato

h)	<i>Actively promote and foster public knowledge and understanding of the health and well-being of the Waikato River among all sectors of the Waikato regional community</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Section 2: Vision for Waikato—2064 • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato • Section 5: Waikato by 2024—Engagement
i)	<i>Encourage and foster a “whole of river” approach to the restoration and protection of the Waikato River, including the development, recognition, and promotion of best practice methods for restoring and protecting the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Introduction: Legislative tools—Conservation management plans (integrated river management plans) • Section 2: Vision for Waikato—2064 • Section 4: Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities • Section 5: Waikato by 2024—Natural heritage and Engagement • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato • Section 12: Freshwater Wetlands Place • Section 13: Karioi to Whareorino Place—Pirongia Mountain • Section 15: Pureora Place
j)	<i>Establish new, and enhance existing, relationships between Waikato-Tainui, other Waikato River iwi (where they so decide), and stakeholders with an interest in advancing, restoring and protecting the health and well-being of the Waikato River</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Introduction: Legislative tools—Conservation management plans (integrated river management plans) • Section 2: Vision for Waikato—2064 • Section 4: Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities • Section 5: Waikato by 2024—Engagement • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato
k)	<i>Ensure that cumulative adverse effects on the Waikato River of activities are appropriately managed in statutory planning documents at the time of their review</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Introduction: Legislative tools—Conservation management plans (integrated river management plans) • Introduction: Relationship with other ... agencies’ planning processes • Section 2: Vision for Waikato—2064 • Section 4: Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities • Section 5: Waikato by 2024—Engagement • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato
l)	<i>Ensure appropriate public access to the Waikato River while protecting and enhancing the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Section 5: Waikato by 2024—Recreation • Section 6: The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato

Appendix 15

Private accommodation schedule

Location of building(s)	Concession expiry date	Circumstances
Flax Block Wildlife Management Reserve	31 December 2019	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2019	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2018	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2019	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	31 March 2018	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Te Kauri Park Scenic Reserve	30 June 2041	Caretaker's house
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2018	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2018	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Bush Tramway Club Stewardship Land	31 December 2031	Private residence
Whangamarino Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2018	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2018	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Whangamarino Wetland Management Reserve	31 March 2018	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2019	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2018	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2018	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Whangamarino Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2018	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	31 December 2018	Private hut (Duck Hut)
Pirongia Forest Park	30 November 2030	Caretaker's house
Waikato River—marginal strips	No concession	Various illegal structures along lower Waikato River—locations unknown
Waiwawa catchment—Coromandel Forest Park	No concession	Illegal hut
Kopuatai Wetland Management Reserve	No concession	Two illegal private huts (Duck Huts)
Waemaro Wetland Management Reserve	No concession	One illegal private hut (Duck Hut)
Horsham Downs Lakes	No concession	One illegal private hut (Duck Hut)
Waipa Peat Lakes	No concession	Five illegal private huts (Duck Huts)
Torehape Wildlife Management Reserve	No concession	One illegal private hut (Duck Hut)
Lake Whangape Wildlife Management Reserve	No concession	Three illegal private huts (Duck Huts)
Arapuni Scenic Reserve	No concession	Three illegal private huts

Appendix 16

Criteria for which the Firth of Thames, Kopuatai Peat Dome and Whangamarino Wetland were nominated as Wetlands of International Importance

Firth of Thames: Criteria 1, 2, 3 and 5.

Kopuatai Peat Dome: Criteria 1, 2, 3 and 4.

Whangamarino Wetland: Criteria 1, 2, 3 and 6.

Criterion 1: A wetland should be considered internationally important if it contains a representative, rare, or unique example of a natural or near-natural wetland type found within the appropriate biogeographic region.

Criterion 2: A wetland should be considered internationally important if it supports vulnerable, endangered, or critically endangered species or threatened ecological communities.

Criterion 3: A wetland should be considered internationally important if it supports populations of plant and/or animal species important for maintaining the biological diversity of a particular biogeographic region.

Criterion 4: A wetland should be considered internationally important if it supports plant and/or animal species at a critical stage in their life cycles, or provides refuge during adverse conditions.

Criterion 5: A wetland should be considered internationally important if it regularly supports 20,000 or more waterbirds.

Criterion 6: A wetland should be considered internationally important if it regularly supports 1% of the individuals in a population of one species or subspecies of waterbird.

Appendix 17

Statement of Values and Protection Principles for Pureora o Kahu

1. Statement of Values

'Pureora o Kahu' is the dominant peak overlooking the Maraeroa plains which lie to the north and north west of the mountain and is highly regarded by the Rereahu people and other local iwi and is known as a very tapu or sacred place.

Pureora o Kahu meaning 'Kahu's Recovery', was named after the ancestor Kahupekerere, a chiefly woman who was healed by the sacred waters of the punawai or spring located just below the summit of the mountain. The spring was named Waimiha o Kahu after the ceremonial healing ritual called 'Purea I te Wai' or purification by the water, which was performed there by the high priests. At the summit another ritual termed 'Purea I te Hau' or 'purification by the wind' was also performed. Importantly Waimiha means, 'water ritual' with a 'Miha' being the actual blessing process or karakia performed with the use of the spring water.

Pureora o Kahu is the source of many streams and rivers which flow through the Maraeroa lands and which were a principal source of drinking water for the many Rereahu villages, with abundant fish life for food, a habitat for plants and birds and sacred places for ceremonial rituals. The streams and rivers which start their journey from Pureora o Kahu include; the Paruhou, Kokakotaea, Waimiha o Kahu, Mihianga, Waipohutuhutu, Waimonoa and the Kakaho.

2. Protection Principles

1.1. The following protection principles are directed at the Minister of Conservation avoiding harm to, or the diminishing of, Raukawa values related to Pureora o Kahu:

- (a) Protection of wahi tapu, indigenous flora and fauna and the wider environment within Pureora o Kahu;
- (b) recognition of the mana, kaitiakitanga and tikanga of the descendants with regard to Pureora o Kahu;
- (c) respect for Raukawa tikanga within Pureora o Kahu;
- (d) encouragement of respect for the association of Raukawa with Pureora o Kahu;
- (e) accurate portrayal of the association of Raukawa with Pureora o Kahu; and
- (f) recognition of the relationship of Raukawa with the wahi tapu and wahi whakahirahira.

Index

- abseiling, 117, 121, 123
- accommodation, 42, 46, 59, 69, 78, 79, 87, 98, 136, 139
private, 77, 110, 118, 161–63, 190
- active management, 26, 38–39, 70, 73, 82, 135, 138, 191
- adverse effects, 12, 16, 18, 20, 47, 59, 60, 61, 82, 84, 101, 124, 131, 138, 140, 149, 150, 153, 155, 159, 160, 161, 164, 165, 166, 169, 181
- addressing, 25, 75, 76, 79, 86, 89, 90, 95, 97, 98, 106, 107, 108, 111, 112, 120, 121, 122, 123, 127, 128, 130, 141, 147, 148, 150, 152, 153, 154, 157, 158, 161, 167
- advocacy, 14, 22, 32, 34, 35, 69, 74, 75, 76, 81, 87, 95, 97, 107, 109, 110, 111, 116, 120, 122, 123, 129, 130, 139, 154, 158, 173, 174, 177
- agriculture, 16, 20, 65, 105, 106, 116
- aircraft, 57, 59, 62, 71, 72, 85, 97, 107, 120, 121, 122, 129, 136, 137, 138, 149, 155–58, 168, 169, 174, 175, 188, 191
- landings, 57, 62, 76, 88, 98, 111, 115, 123, 131, 142, 155–58, 175
- Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua), 22, 51, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 172
- all terrain vehicles (ATVs), 131, 135, 136, 141, 143, 149, 175
- Animal Health Board. *See* TBfree New Zealand
- animal pests, 16, 20, 22, 34, 37, 38, 57, 65, 126
control of, 19, 70, 71, 105, 108, 115–16, 117, 118, 119, 120, 127, 128, 132, 134, 138, 139, *See also* pest control
- Aotea Harbour, 16, 21, 22, 27, 34, 36
- Aotea Heads, 158
- aquaculture, 20, 94, 97
- Aranui Cave, 21, 127, 128, 130
- Arapuni, 29
- Arataki, 137, 140, 145
- Arawai Kākāriki wetland, 13, 104, 108
- at risk species. *See* threatened and at risk species
- Atiamuri, 29
- Auckland, 24, 51, 93, 149
- Auckland Council, 95, 97
- Awakino River, 17, 114, 119
- Awaroa River, 114
- Awaroa Swamp, 100, 104, 105, 108, 109, 112, 172
- Backcountry destinations, 11, 40, 41, 42, 66, 122, 176, 179
- bats, 18, 20, 34, 65, 70, 74, 75, 76, 114, 117, 118, 121, 122, 126, 129, 132, 133, 137
- Bay of Plenty, 25
- beetles, 19, 20, 65, 67
- Benneydale, 24, 28
- biking. *See* cycling; mountain biking
- biodiversity, 15, 18–20, 40, 56, 59, 70, 86, 122, 138, 176, 186
addressing, 11, 24, 33, 41, 43, 44, 57, 61, 62, 64, 67, 69, 71, 72, 73, 81, 87, 90–92, 107, 115, 122, 123, 128, 130, 131, 139, 140, 142
values, 19, 26, 59, 72, 85, 86, 108
- biosecurity, 15, 34, 36, 57, 60, 76, 87, 91, 101, 119, 124, 125, 147, 149, 170, 176
- Biosecurity Act 1993, 12, 176, 188
- birds, 23, 57, 65, 87, 93–98, 103, 117, 159, 160
coastal, 67, 72, 81, 85, 94
forest, 114, 133, 134, 135, 138
game, 25, 43, 93, 95, 96, 100, 101, 102, 103, 106, 107, 108, 110, 111, 159, 165–66, 182
sea, 21, 34, 51, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 74
shore, 21, 22, 34, 65, 69, 74, 87, 91, 93, 95, 96, 122, 149
wading, 15, 65, 93, 94, 96, 97, 104, 105, 106
waterfowl, 93, 94, 104, 105, 106, 165
wetland, 67, 74, 85, 87, 96, 101, 104, 105, 108
- boating, 22, 24, 25, 47, 82, *See also* watercraft
- Broken Hills, 40, 46, 64, 68–69, 72–73, 78–79
- buffers, 19, 44, 84, 85, 94, 107
- Building Act 2004, 163, 176
- bush walks. *See* walks
- business, 14, 15, 17, 36, 39, 42, 44, 46, 45–46, 102, 109, 112, 113, 139, *See also* commercial activities
- bylaws, 12, 37, 89, 123, 130, 146, 150, 152, 153, 154, 159, 176
- Cambridge, 23, 29
- camping, 25, 59, 66, 68, 70, 71, 72, 73, 75, 78, 79, 85, 91, 118, 122, 136, 137, 138, 155, 180, *See also* freedom camping
- campsites, 40, 66, 68, 69, 70, 73, 77, 78, 118, 124, 135, 136, 137, 138, 141, 142, 159
- Cape Colville, 64, 72, 75
- car parks, 46, 78, 79, 83, 89, 117, 121, 124, 181
- carbon sequestration, 18, 65, 101, 114, 134
- Cathedral Cove, 40, 46, 81, 82, 83–84, 86, 88–90, 92, *See also* Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve
- caving, 21, 115, 119, 126, 127–28, 128, 130, 131
- chenier plain, 93, 96, 97
- Civil Aviation Authority, 155
- climate change, 18, 20, 103
- coastal environments, 17, 21–23, 34, 66, 68, 81–82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 94, 114, 116, 121, 123, 149, *See also* birds; ecosystems
- co-management, 18, 27, 28, 29, 47, 48, 49, 71
- commercial activities, 21, 60, 71, 82–84, 86, 88–91, 95, 98, 117, 121, 124, 127, 129, 130, 134, 136, 147, 163–65, 166–68, 169, 177
- community, 11, 83, 86, 88, 126, 136, 160, 170, 177

- contribution of, 17, 19, 23–24, 34, 38, 57, 59, 63, 65, 66, 67, 69, 70, 71, 70–75, 77–78, 84, 85, 87, 103, 108, 115, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 128, 129, 137
 working with, 14, 15, 17, 18, 22, 23, 33, 35, 36, 37, 38–39, 40–42, 44, 50, 52, 90, 95, 102, 104, 107, 109, 112, 113, 120, 121, 128, 129, 137, 138, 139, 140, 165
- community groups, 19, 42–43, 116, 119, 134
- compliance, 12, 90, 110, 157, 163, 168
- cessionaires, 36, 46, 86, 90, 91, 119, 120, 122, 127, 128, 129, 130, 147, 163, 170, 177, 193
- cessions, 11, 67, 69, 70, 71, 79, 98, 110, 115, 118, 123, 130, 136, 141, 147–49, 155–58, 161, 162–63, 165, 167–69, 173, 177
- conflict, social, 25, 42, 73, 74, 84, 86, 88, 115, 117, 134, 136, 137, 140, 150, 151, 155
- connectivity, 15, 35, 64, 71, 74, 75, 118, 120, 123, 129, 133
- conservation
 concept of, 8, 14, 27, 38, 177
 events, 23, 90, 91, 107
 participation in, 32, 40, 41, 42–45, 57, 107, 122, 123, 137
- Conservation Act 1987, 8, 9, 12–13, 27, 48, 51, 52, 146, 147, 151, 155, 159, 160, 165, 169, 175, 177, 178, 180, 181, 185, 188, 189, 190, 192, 194
- Conservation Board, 9
- Conservation General Policy 2005, 8, 10, 11, 48, 54, 102, 146, 148, 161, 162, 165, 168, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181, 183, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 190, 191, 192, 193
- conservation management strategies (CMSs), 8, 10, 11, 178, 188
- consultation, 9, 11, 31, 74, 77, 78, 79, 88, 109, 134, 140, 151, 152, 159, 160, 178
- Convention on Migratory Species, 13
- Convention on Wetlands of International Importance especially as Waterfowl Habitat.
 See Ramsar Convention
- Cook Bluff, 82, 83, 86, 88–90
- Cook, Captain James, 82, 86
- Coromandel Forest Park, 17, 18, 25, 26, 40, 43, 64, 68, 77, 93
- Coromandel Land Management Plan, 8, 80
- Coromandel Peninsula, 15, 16, 17, 21, 22, 23–24, 25, 26, 30, 36, 38, 40, 41, 46, 68, 72, 76, 82, 155, 161, 163, 167, 170, 171, *See also* Hauraki–Coromandel Peninsula
- Coromandel Range, 16, 64, 65–66, 71, 73, 74, 76, 93
- councils. *See* local authorities
- Cowan Wildlife Refuge, 133, 141, 172
- crowds, 83, 84
- Crown materials, 168
- Crown Minerals Act 1991, 9, 66, 75, 166–67, 186
- cultural harvest, 58, 59, 60, 105, 108
- cultural heritage, 15, 24, 26, 27, 39, 40, 41, 45, 57, 59, 72, 81, 85, 93, 98, 104, 107, 109, 114, 115, 120, 129, 133, 138, 139, 146, 147, 183, 184, 190, 194
- cultural resources, 22, 32, 101, 102
- cultural values, 15, 18, 21, 26, 47, 69, 71, 72, 83, 86, 87, 96, 100, 107, 108, 112, 117, 119, 120, 121, 126, 129, 136, 137, 139, 150, 153, 154, 159, 170
- protecting, 25, 38, 39, 58, 60, 68, 75, 76, 77, 82, 90, 96, 116, 122, 123, 124, 127, 130, 131, 137, 138, 142, 150, 152, 153, 154, 166, 167
- customary use, 31, 32, 109, 168, 179
- Cuvier Island (Repanga Island), 22, 38, 46, 51, 55, 56, 57–58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 157, 172
- cycleways, 25, 26, 29, 41, 42, 136, 139, 140, *See also* Timber Trail
- cycling, 25, 72, 73, 78, 118, 136
 power assisted, 75, 153–54, 180, 187
- Dactylanthus taylorii*, 69, 114, 117, 119, 121, 133, 137
- Deeds of Settlement, 29, 30, 47
- deer, 25, 36, 65, 71, 105, 107, 114, 118, 120, 123, 128, 134, 138, 140, 159, 169, 171, 174, 182, 191, 194
- destination management, 11, 40, 41, 136, 179
- development, 16, 20, 22, 47, 52, 64, 68, 82, 94, 120
- Diggers Hill, 82
- Director-General of Conservation, 29, 49, 163, 175, 177, 178
- disease, 22, 65, 124, 134, 149, *See also* kauri dieback disease
- district plans, 11, 184
- dogs, 74, 94, 97, 159–60, 171, 179
- domestic animals, 22, 94, 97, 159–61
- dunes, 26, 33, *See also* ecosystems
- East Asian–Australasian Flyway Partnership, 13, 94, 97, 98, 99, 149
- ecological corridors, 18, 44, 116, 122, 129, 133, 138
- ecological values, 18, 19, 21, 60, 68, 70, 79, 92, 96, 98, 107, 108, 117, 120, 121, 123, 124, 127, 136, 137, 139
- ecology, 101, 102, 107, 117, 128
- ecosystems, 15, 16, 19, 22, 33–38, 44, 64–65, 67, 70, 71, 72, 85, 95, 97, 98, 100, 104, 106, 107–8, 114, 121, 128, 130, 133, 137, 176, 180, 191, *See also* priority ecosystem units; restoration
- coastal, 64, 65, 81, 87, 96
- dune, 64, 67, 74, 75, 81, 82, 85, 87, 91, 149
- forest, 64, 65, 120, 121, 133, 134, 138, 139
- fragile, 57, 58, 62, 74, 75, 85, 91, 117, 149
- freshwater, 35, 65, 74, 113, 164
- island, 51, 56, 57, 58–59, 60, 61
- karst, 33, 35, 122, 129
- marine, 35, 64, 81, 84, 86, 87, 96
- peat, 103, 109
- services, 17, 18, 35, 71, 93, 94, 96, 100, 101, 107, 114, 115, 134, 180
- wetland, 17, 95, 96, 99, 101, 108, 110

Index

- education, 69, 73, 78, 84, 86, 95, 115, 118, 122, 129,
130, 136, 151, 160, 164
camps, 69, 78, 147
- eels. *See* tuna/eels
- Electricity Act 1992, 9
- engagement, 33, 43, 45, 46
- Enviroschools Programme, 23
- eradication, 19, 51, 99, 107, 108, 113, 134, 147, 165, 181
- erosion, 78, 83, 94, 115, 159, 161
- Europeans, heritage of, 23, 26, 57, 66, 68, 71, 82, 85,
86, 115
- exploration, 26, 27
recreational, 25, 115, 135, 138
- facilities, 38, 40–41, 46, 59, 66, 68, 71, 75, 84, 87, 88,
89, 91, 98, 102, 107, 115, 116, 117, 120, 121, 122, 123,
129, 137, 140, 152, 153, 154, 170, 181, 193. *See also*
accommodation; huts
demand for, 74, 76, 82–83, 115, 118
- Falls Road Pā, 101, 104, 108
- families, 43, 44, 68, 72, 73, 115, 118, 121, 124, 138, 152
- Fantail Bay, 64, 68, 72, 77, 78
- farming, 16, 23, 45, 56, 68, 78, 84, 85, 103, 114, 118,
149, 150
- filming, 57, 60–61, 71, 76, 82, 90, 147, 157, 167–68
- fire, 20, 57, 101, 147, 150, 170
- Fire Services Act 1975, 170
- Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana, 21, 22, 30, 34, 69,
94–95
Wetland, 13, 17, 51, 93–99, 189
- fish, 22, 81, 94, 101, 104, 108, 117, 181
freshwater, 35, 36, 50, 74, 108, 119, 123, 129, 139,
166, 182
introduced, 104, 105, 106, 107, 108, 113
native, 65, 69, 103, 104, 106, 109, 114, 119
passage, 35, 74, 120, 123, 129, 139
sports, 43, 165–66, 178, 192
- fish and game councils, 43, 102, 104, 106, 107, 165–
66, 181
- fisheries, 51, 181
freshwater, 13, 28, 29, 50, 166, 190
native, 47, 102, 106, 114, 166
- Fisheries Act 1996, 23, 51, 164, 181, 186
- fishers, 35, 154, 165
- fishing, 22, 47, 66, 82, 84, 95, 97, 101, 102, 108, 115,
117, 119, 165–66, 186
- Fletcher Bay, 68, 72, 78
- flood protection, 18, 69, 71, 72, 96, 101, 108, 114, 134,
137
schemes, 65, 101, 103, 104, 110
- flora
aquatic, 101, 103, 104, 105, 106, 108, 109
threatened and at risk species, 18, 19, 20, 84, 87,
114, 119, 121, 126, 132, 133, 143
- flyways, 13, 22, 35, 74, 94, 96, 122, 149
- Fonterra, 95, 103, 105
- foreshore, 51, 81, 84, 85, 86, 93, 94, 97, 181
- Forest and Rural Fires Act 1977, 170
- forestry, 20, 45
- fossils, 20, 103, 115, 126
- four-wheel driving, 25, 41, 66, 70, 71, 73, 75, 80, 135,
136–37, 139, 140, 145, 149, 181
- freedom camping, 66, 75, 78, 79, 88, 94, 95, 97, 181
- Freedom Camping Act 2011, 9
- freshwater. *See* ecosystems; fish; fisheries;
wetlands
- frogs, 19, 34, 65, 67, 69, 70, 73, 75, 76, 114, 118, 122,
126, 133, 134, 137
- Game Animal Council, 43
- Game Animal Council Act 2013, 9, 168, 171, 182,
183, 188, 194
- game animals, 171, 182. *See also* birds; wild
animals
- Gateway destinations, 11, 40, 41, 42, 66, 68, 69, 70,
72, 73, 80, 121, 127, 129, 135, 138, 179, 182
- Gemstone Bay, 83, 84, 86
- geology, 58, 65, 83, 115, 122, 133
- Goat Island. *See* Mahurangi Island (Goat Island)
- goats, 25, 37, 65, 70, 71, 72, 114, 115, 116, 117, 118, 120,
126, 127, 128, 134, 159, 169, 194
- gold, 23, 26, 38, 65–66, 69, 70, 73
- Grand Canyon Nature Reserve, 20, 126, 128, 131,
132
- grazing, 20, 67, 68, 72, 78, 79, 80, 93, 96, 98, 101, 110,
114, 115, 147, 149, 161
- group size. *See* party size
- guiding, 46, 61, 62, 67, 71, 76, 82, 86, 91, 124, 125, 127,
129, 130, 131, 136, 142, 143, 147, 152, 153
- Hahei Beach, 83, 84, 86
- Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve, 55, 81–92, 157,
189
- Hakarimata Rail Trail, 40, 41, 152
- Hakarimata Range, 19, 36, 40, 42, 158, 170, 171
- Hamilton, 23, 43, 118
- Hamilton Basin, 108
- Hangatiki Scenic Reserve, 127, 128, 131, 132
- Hapuakohe Range, 19, 158
- Hauāuru ki Uta, 126, 129
- Hauhungaroa Range, 134, 135, 138, 139, 140, 143
- Hauraki District Council, 93
- Hauraki Gulf, 22, 93
- Hauraki Gulf Forum, 34, 52, 95, 97
- Hauraki Gulf Marine Park, 51–53, 55, 64, 84, 93, 95
- Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000, 8, 22, 51, 52,
53, 178
- Hauraki Islands, 55–63, 189
- Hauraki Plains, 16, 17, 47, 93, 94, 95, 96, 100, 103,
106
- Hauraki Rail Trail, 70, 75, 95
- Hauraki Whānui, 17, 27, 30–31, 56, 58, 61, 66, 68, 69,
71, 72, 82, 83, 86, 87, 88, 94, 102, 106, 164
- Hauraki–Coromandel Peninsula, 64–80, 189
- helicopters, 149
- Herangi Range, 18, 114, 118, 119, 122, 123

- Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga, 39, 43
 Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014, 9, 175, 183
 historic heritage, 16, 24, 26, 27, 38–39, 41, 45, 57, 59, 72, 98, 107, 115, 139, 146, 147, 183, 184, 190
 historic resources, 8, 11, 12, 14, 22, 40, 50, 51, 147, 177, 178, 192
 historic sites, 25, 26, 38–39, 57–58, 66, 69, 82, 101, 135, 138, 149, 174
 icons, 11, 38, 40, 136, 139
 history, 23, 26, 27, 30, 57, 58, 68, 69, 71, 82, 85, 86, 101, 104, 108, 115, 134–35, 138, 139, 175, 183
 Hollow Hill, 126, 132
 Horotiu Pā, 30
 horse riding, 66, 70, 71, 75, 77, 79, 80, 131, 135, 136–37, 138, 139, 140, 142, 144–45, 150, 161
 Horsham Downs Lakes, 100, 105, 110
 Hot Water Beach, 19, 25, 81, 82, 85, 87, 91–92
 human activities, 16, 22, 26, 34, 56, 117, 127, 164, 175, *See also* land use
 hunters, 65, 71, 117, 120, 121, 122, 134, 136, 138, 139, 140, 154, 171, 174, 177
 hunting, 25, 36, 37, 43, 47, 66, 70, 71, 73, 95, 96, 102, 103, 107, 108, 110, 111, 114, 115, 117, 123, 133, 134, 135, 138, 140, 149, 155, 159, 160, 165–66, 168, 169, 171, 174, 177, 191
 Hunua Ranges, 93
 Hurrells Lake, 100, 111
 huts, 46, 66, 69, 73, 77, 79, 102, 110, 118, 119, 121, 136, 138, 160, 163, 181
 icon destinations, 11
 Icon destinations, 40, 41, 42, 83, 86, 92, 136, 139, 179, 183
 iconic species, 11, 35, 184
 Important Bird Area programme, 22
 indigenous forests, 16, 19, 18–20, 29, 30, 64, 68, 71, 72, 74, 76, 84, 87, 102, 104, 105, 114, 117, 118, 120, 126, 129, 133, 135, 138, 139, 170
 indigenous species, 15, 16, 18, 19, 22, 32, 35, 47, 51, 67, 71, 92, 101, 103, 111, 114, 118, 121, 128, 133, 159, 165, 184
 integrated management, 8, 9, 10, 12, 20, 21, 26, 32, 35, 36, 48, 50, 52, 54, 55, 64, 83, 87, 93, 95, 100, 102, 104, 107, 114, 115, 120, 130, 146, 178, 184
 Integrated Management Plan, 48
 international agreements, 13
 intertidal areas, 21, 34, 36, 93, 96
 introduced animals, 25, 55, 56, 57, 58, 65, 84, 87, 96, 101, 107, 134
 introduced plants, 93
 invertebrates, 19, 20, 65, 81, 114, 126
 islands, 19, 21, 22, 33, 35, 51, 55–63
 iwi, 13, 47, 86, 94, 105, 108, 116, 128, 135, 192
 contribution of, 24, 73, 103, 115, 122
 environmental plans, 27, 28, 32, 48, 50
 working with, 27, 52, 87, 90, 95, 96, 97, 98, 102, 104, 106, 107, 109, 112, 113, 119, 120, 121, 123, 124, 125, 126–27, 128, 129, 137, 138, 140
 iwi authorities, 9, 27
 Kaimai Range, 70
 Kaimai–Mamaku catchment, 18, 95
 kaimoana, 21, 52, 82
 kaitiakitanga, 27, 28, 31, 47, 87, 95, 101, 107, 116, 185
 kākā, 18, 34, 67, 70, 118, 133, 137
 Kakaho, 40, 135, 138, 142
 Kakepuku Mountain, 158
 Kaniwhaniwha, 40, 121, 124, 125
 Kapowai–Kauaeranga, 64, 69, 72
 Karioi, 16, 18, 122, 189
 karst, 17, 20–21, 28, 34, 40, 114, 115, 118, 119, 120, 122, 124, 126–27, 128–30, 131, *See also* ecosystems; Waitomo
 Kauaeranga River, 26, 69
 Kauaeranga Valley, 25, 38, 40, 64, 66, 69, 68–69, 71, 72–73, 75, 76, 78–79, 159
 Kauaeranga Visitor Centre, 69, 78
 kauri, 16, 19, 30, 64, 68, 69, 71, 118
 dams, 38, 66, 69, 72
 logging, 26, 66, 69, 70, 73
 kauri dieback disease, 34, 36, 37, 65, 69, 71, 74, 76, 118, 122, 124, 125, 170–71
 Kawhia Harbour, 16, 21, 27, 34, 36, 158
 kayaking, 22, 82, 84, 85, 88, 89, 90, 91, 102, 107, 119
 King Country, 20, 23, 26, 118, 165
 kiwi, 19, 24, 34, 58, 65, 67, 69, 70, 72, 73, 74, 75, 76, 117, 119, 133
 kōkako, 18, 19, 24, 34, 80, 117, 121, 128, 133, 134, 137
 Kopuatai Peat Dome, 13, 16, 17, 100, 101, 102, 103, 106, 107–8, 109, 112, 113, 172
 Koropupu, 126, 128, 132
 Lake Areare, 105, 108, 109, 112, 113, *See also* Horsham Down Lakes
 Lake Hakanoa, 100, 111
 Lake Hotoananga, 105, 108, 109, 112, *See also* Horsham Down Lakes
 Lake Koraha, 114, 119, 122
 Lake Koromatua, 100, 110
 Lake Ngarotoiti, 100, 110
 Lake Ohinewai, 100, 105, 108, 109, 110, 112
 Lake Okowhao, 100, 110
 Lake Pikopiko, 105, 108, 109, 112, *See also* Horsham Down Lakes
 Lake Rotokawau, 100, 105, 108, 109, 110, 112, 172
 Lake Rotomanuka, 100, 106, 109, 110, 112, 113
 Lake Rotongaro, 100, 104, 108, 109, 112, 172
 Lake Rotongaroiti, 100, 104, 108, 109, 112
 Lake Rotopotaka, 100, 110
 Lake Ruatuna, 100, 106, 109, 110, 112, 113
 Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko), 17, 100, 105–6, 108, 109, 110, 111–12
 Lake Taupo (Taupomoana), 31, 41, 47, 133, 136, 140
 Lake Whangape, 100, 105, 172

Index

- land
 legal status of, 55, 77, 84, 85, 91, 97, 112, 118, 124, 125, 128, 130, 132, 133, 141
 private, 19–20, 51, 66, 101, 104, 107, 110, 114, 115, 116, 118, 128, 129, 130, 133, 136, 149, 155
Land Information New Zealand, 110, 112, 151
Land Transport Act 1998, 187
land use
 consents, 12, 147
 practices, 16, 20, 21, 93, 94, 103, 104, 121
landforms and landscapes, 34, 35, 51, 56, 58, 64, 65, 68, 71, 74, 76, 83, 85, 86, 87, 93, 114, 115, 116, 117, 120, 121, 122, 123, 126, 129, 133, 134, 138, 187, 191
landowners, 133, 152, 153
 contribution of, 19–20, 44, 103, 122
 working with, 15, 18, 33, 35, 36, 42, 74, 87, 88, 95, 96, 97, 102, 107, 109, 117, 118, 119, 121, 123, 124, 129, 139
lighthouse, 38, 57–58, 59, 60
lizards, 34, 57, 58, 65, 67, 94, 114, 126
local authorities, 51, 67, 75, 77, 83, 88
 contribution of, 52, 115
 requirements by, 74, 77, 110, 159, 163
 working with, 15, 17, 18, 22, 23, 33, 35, 36, 42, 43, 44, 50, 52, 53, 71, 74, 83, 87, 90, 95, 96, 97, 98, 102, 106, 107, 109, 110, 117, 118, 120, 122, 124, 129, 137, 139, 140, 150, 151, 159, 160, 164
Local Treasure destinations, 11, 40, 41, 42, 132, 179, 185
logging, 26, 38, 40, 66, 69, 70, 72, 73, 134, 138, 139
mahinga kai, 32, 56, 57, 185
Mahoe Forest, 119
Mahoenui, 125, 172
Mahoenui Giant Weta Scientific Reserve, 19, 158
Mahurangi Island (Goat Island), 19, 40, 46, 55, 81, 82, 83, 84–85, 86–87, 88, 90–91, 92
maimai, 96, 102, 163
mana, 31, 47, 185
Mana Whakahaere, 49
mana whenua, 27, 31, 135, 138
mānawa/mangroves, 82, 93, 94, 96
Mangapohue Natural Bridge, 127, 131, 172
Mangatutu, 133, 134, 139
Maniapoto Trust Board, 28
Māori, 27, 58, 68, 186, 192, *See also* iwi; tangata
 whenua; Treaty of Waitangi
 engaging, 43, 44, 45
 heritage, 16, 21, 23, 26, 71, 82, 85, 86, 94, 115, 120, 134
 land, 30, 51
 rock art, 26, 38
Mapara, 19, 158
Maraeroa, 29, 136
Maramarua River, 103, 104, 110
Maratoto, 64, 73, 76, 79, 149
Maratoto Valley, 69–70
Mares Leg Cove, 83, 86, 88
marine mammals, 22, 32, 51, 82, 94, 163–64, 185
Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978, 8, 163, 178, 185
marine reserves, 35, 51, 81, 166, 186, *See also* Hahei Coast and Marine Reserve; Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve
Marine Reserves Act 1971, 8, 178
Maritime New Zealand, 60
Marokopa Falls, 127, 129, 131, 172
Marokopa River, 17
Marutūahu, 30, 58, 59, 60, *See also* Hauraki Whānui
matuku/Australasian bittern, 34, 65, 67, 94, 101, 104, 105, 106, 108
Māui dolphin, 34, 35, 37
Māui dolphin, 15, 22–23
Māui dolphin, 37
Māui dolphin, 164
Maungatautari, 19, 29, 36
Maungatautari Ecological Island Trust, 19, 36
mauri, 18, 47, 96, 121, 138, 186
Mean Low Water Springs, 83, 88
Mercury Islands, 22, 51, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62
Meremere Pā, 101, 108, 158
Meyer Wildlife Refuge Reserve, 141, 172
migratory pathways. *See* flyways
milestones, 37–38, 39, 42, 45, 46, 54, 62–63, 79–80, 92, 98–99, 112–13, 125, 132, 143, 171–72, 173, 186
minerals, 26, 65, 66, 166, 186
mining, 20, 22, 23, 26, 38, 66, 69, 70, 72, 73, 94, 101, 103, 111, 166–67, 186
Minister of Conservation, 9, 12, 13, 28, 29, 30, 48, 49, 52, 146, 147, 155, 166, 168, 170, 171, 175, 176, 177, 178
Minister of Energy and Resources, 166
Minister of Māori Affairs, 52
Minister of Primary Industries, 52
Ministry for Primary Industries, 34, 35, 95, 97, 164, 170
Miranda, 93, 95, 96
Miranda Naturalists' Trust, 95, 97
Miranda River, 103
Moanatuatua, 100, 101, 106, 109, 111, 112
Moeatoa, 16, 118, 122
Moehau, 16, 19, 64, 67–68, 72, 80
Moehau Kiwi Sanctuary, 67, 72
Moehau Range, 65, 66, 68, 72, 74
Mokau River, 17, 19, 28
monitoring, 13, 25, 28, 34, 58, 75, 84, 90, 92, 96, 101, 103, 107, 116, 117, 131, 132, 136, 138, 141, 147–48, 150, 153, 154, 157, 161, 164, 170, 173
Motukoranga Islands, 55, 56
Motukoruenga Islands, 55, 56
Motutapere Island, 51, 55, 56, 57, 59, 60, 62, 63, 157
mountain biking, 25, 41, 66, 69, 70, 71, 72, 75, 76–77,

Index

- 79, 80, 115, 118, 119, 120, 122, 123, 124, 125, 129, 131, 135, 136–37, 138–39, 140, 142, 143, 144–45, 150, 151–53, 179
- Mt Hikurangi, 19
- Mt Karioi, 114, 116, 120–21, 123, 125
- Mt Moehau, 30, 66, 68
- Mt Pureora. *See* Pureora o Kahu (Mt Pureora)
- Mt Te Aroha, 30, 66
- mudfish, 34, 101, 103, 105, 106
- National Parks Act 1980, 151, 155, 175, 176, 177, 178, 188, 194
- National Wetland Trust, 106, 108, 109, 110, 111
- Native Land Court, 31
- natural heritage, 15, 16, 20, 24, 26, 36, 33–38, 41, 45, 104, 120, 143, 146, 147, 184, 190, 194
management, 11, 20, 33, 187
- natural quiet, 40, 71, 121, 122, 136, 137, 138, 149, 153, 154, 155, 156, 157, 169, 187
- natural resources, 8, 11, 12, 14, 22, 24, 26, 27, 28, 40, 41, 50, 51, 98, 147, 165, 177, 178, 184, 187, 190, 192
- natural state, 15, 84, 86, 110, 188
- New Zealand Conservation Authority, 9, 173, 177
- New Zealand Defence Force, 155
- New Zealand Food Safety Authority, 174
- New Zealand Motor Caravan Association, 43
- New Zealand Orthnithological Society, 95
- New Zealand Police, 150
- New Zealand Speleological Society, 128, 131
- New Zealand Threat Classification System 2008, 11, 175, 192
- New Zealand Transport Agency, 43
- New Zealand Walking Access Commission, 41, 43, 77, 118, 119, 151
- New Zealand Wars, 26, 38
- Nga Wai o Maniapoto (Waipa River) Act 2012, 8, 28, 47, 48
- Ngaroma, 140, 149
- Ngāti Hako, 58, 59, 60. *See also* Hauraki Whānui
- Ngāti Hei, 58, 59, 60, 82. *See also* Hauraki Whānui
- Ngāti Korokī Kahukura, 27, 30
- Ngāti Maniapoto, 27, 28–29, 30, 47, 49, 50, 115, 119, 120, 122, 126, 135, 139
Environmental Management Plan, 28
- Ngāti Tūwharetoa, 17, 30, 31, 47, 49, 50, 135. *See also* Waikato River Iwi
Environmental Management Plan, 31
- Ngāti Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010, 8, 29, 31, 47, 48, 135
- noise, 73, 96, 111, 155, 157
- Northern Coromandel, 64, 66, 67–68, 75, 78, 79
- nutrification, 17, 21, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 101, 107, 109
- objectives, 9, 31–32, 34–37, 38–39, 41–42, 44–45, 46, 50, 52–53, 54, 146, 186
- Onemana, 64, 75
- Ongarue, 25, 28, 135
- Ongarue River, 18, 138
- Opapaka Pā, 40, 127, 129, 132
- Opoutere, 64, 75
- Opuatia, 100, 172
- orchids, 19, 67, 69, 72, 79, 101, 103, 104, 108, 111, 117
- Otago, 64, 66, 70, 73, 75
- Otama, 64, 75, 78
- Otorohanga, 24, 28, 133
- outcomes, 33, 58–59, 70–73, 70–73, 85–87, 96, 106–9, 120–22, 128–29, 137–39, 146, 150, 186, 188
statements, 9, 54
- pā, 21, 26, 29, 38, 66, 82, 83, 86, 94, 101, 107, 115, 127
- Pakoka River, 117
- Papakai, 64, 69, 72
- Papanui Point, 116, 121, 123
- Papatūānuku, 27, 127
- Parakawai, 66, 70, 73, 75
- partnerships, 14, 15, 17, 18, 23, 24, 27–32, 35, 41, 43, 44–46, 50, 53, 58, 60, 65, 69, 72, 103, 105, 106, 109, 119, 121, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 138, 139, 189
- party size, 89, 127, 128, 130, 131, 136
- permits, 57, 58, 74, 149, 159, 160, 164, 166, 168, 169
- pest control, 12, 15, 19, 36, 42, 43, 51, 72, 87, 97, 104, 108, 109, 126, 188. *See also* animal pests; pest plants
- pest plants, 16, 20, 22, 34, 37, 38, 57, 93, 101, 105, 126, 159
control of, 34, 96, 98, 99, 103, 104, 105, 106, 128, 134, 138, 143
- pest-free sites, 34, 35, 51, 56, 57, 58, 84, 86
- Piako River, 17, 18, 30, 94, 95, 96, 103, 110
- picnicking, 25, 66, 70, 71, 82, 105, 115, 155
- pigs, 25, 65, 71, 107, 128, 134, 138, 159, 169, 171, 182, 194
- Pikiariki, 133, 137, 142, 172
- Pinnacles, 69, 73
- Piripiri Cave, 127, 131, 172
- Pirongia, 16, 28
- Pirongia Forest Park, 25, 40, 43, 114, 124
- Pirongia Mountain, 114, 115, 117–18, 120, 121–22, 123, 124
- Piropiro, 136, 137, 139, 140, 142
- policies, 9, 11, 54, 55, 59–62, 64, 73–79, 81, 87–92, 93, 97–98, 100, 102, 109–12, 114, 122–25, 129–31, 139–42, 146–71
- pollution, 18, 22, 94, 95, 97
- population trends, 16, 23, 24, 43
- Port Jackson, 64, 68, 72, 78
- Port Waikato, 21, 22, 34, 36, 47
- possums, 37, 43, 65, 70, 71, 72, 114, 115, 116, 117, 118, 119, 120, 126, 134, 194
- Pouakani, 27, 30, 135, 139
- Pouakani Claims Settlement Act 2000, 30
- Pouakani Scenic Reserve, 30
- priority ecosystem units, 11, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 56, 62–63, 67, 69, 70, 75, 79, 85, 87, 92, 106, 108, 112–13, 114, 116, 117, 118, 119, 120, 122, 125, 129, 132, 133, 137, 138, 139, 143, 169, 173, 190

Index

- protected areas, 23, 114, 190
 marine, 15, 35, 37, 38, 44, 186, *See also* marine reserves
- Protected Objects Act 1975, 9
- protests, 40, 133, 134
- public access, 12, 56, 57, 60, 84, 85, 90, 91, 102, 103, 113, 119, 123, 130, 132, 146–47
- public benefit, 14, 18, 27, 43, 44, 51, 52, 86, 115, 134, 136, 166, 177
- public safety, 12, 25, 66, 74, 77, 83, 87, 92, 128, 130, 140, 147, 150, 154, 160, 161, 167, 169
- Puketui, 69
- Pureora, 15, 16, 38, 46, 133–43, 149, 155, 157, 161, 189
- Pureora Forest Park, 18, 25, 28, 29, 30, 31, 40, 41, 43, 133, 134, 136, 140, 141, 143, 172, *See also* Timber Trail
- Pureora o Kahu (Mt Pureora), 29, 30, 133, 134, 135, 138, 140, 142
- Pureora Recreational Hunting Area (RHA), 134, 135, 140, 143
- Pureora Village, 25, 135, 136, 139, 140, 172
- Rabbit Island, 55, 56, 57, 59, 60, 62, 63, 157
- Raglan, 22, 23, 116, 121, 123
- Raglan Harbour (Whaingaroa), 16, 21, 27, 34, 36
- Ramsar Convention, 13, 17, 21, 51, 93, 97, 98, 99, 103, 104, 109, 148, 190
 Secretariat, 112, 113
- Rangitoto Range, 28, 134, 135, 138, 139, 140
- rātā, 19
- rats, 65, 126, 134
- Raukawa, 17, 27, 29–30, 30, 47, 49, 50, 139, *See also* Waikato River Iwi
- Raukawa Claims Settlement Act 2014, 29, 135
- recovery
 species, 23, 35, 57, 59, 120
 wild animal, 134, 168, 169, 174
- recreation, 8, 11, 15, 16, 18, 20, 22, 24–25, 29, 39–42, 47, 51, 56, 57, 60, 62, 66–67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72–73, 74–75, 77, 78, 82–83, 85, 88, 91, 95, 96, 98, 102, 104, 106, 107, 108, 111, 115, 116, 117–18, 119, 120, 122, 127–28, 129, 133, 135–37, 138–39, 147, 149, 156, 167, 178, 185
 multi-day, 25, 46, 66, 68, 70, 73, 75, 78, 79, 135, 136, 138, 139
 water-based, 25, 81, 82, 84, 85, 86, 102
- recreational users, 24, 36, 67, 71, 74–75, 79, 84, 86, 120, 123, 129, 130, 137, 139, 140
- regional councils, 12
- regulations, 12, 37, 46, 130, 146, 150, 152, 153, 154, 163, 165, 168, 170, 190
- rehabilitation, 48, 166
- remoteness, 25, 40, 68, 71, 72, 148, 155, 156
- reptiles, 56, 65
- Rereahu, 135, 139
- research, 11, 13, 23, 35, 37, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 84, 95, 96, 103, 107, 115, 120, 138, 147, 155, 164, 168
- Reserves Act 1977, 8, 12, 51, 151, 155, 165, 168, 175, 176, 178, 188, 191
- Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA), 11, 12, 51, 147, 167, 179, 192
- restoration, 20, 23, 29, 33, 59, 67, 78, 79, 80, 83, 105, 106, 120, 127, 128, 132, 139, 150, 191
 collaborative, 24, 37, 38, 39, 73, 87
 ecological, 19, 56, 68
 ecosystem, 44, 65, 72, 103, 116, 123, 137
 island, 61, 62–63, 85, 87, 91
 waterway, 48, 50, 117, 121, 135, 138
 wetland, 13, 67, 96, 101, 103, 104, 106, 107, 108, 109, 111, 112–13
- roads, 72, 77, 78, 122, 135, 137, 138, 149–52, 153, 154, 181, 191
- rohe, 17, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 48, 115, 191
- Rotopiko. *See* Lake Serpentine (Rotopiko)
- Royal Standard Tramway, 70, 73
- Ruakawa, 135
- Ruakuri Cave, 21, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 172
- Ruakuri Scenic Reserve, 40, 128
- Ruamahua. *See* Aldermen Islands (Ruamahua)
- Ruapuha Uekaha Hapu Trust, 27, 28–29, 127, 128, 130
- rubbish, 57
- sanctuaries, 33, 51, 55, 56, 57, 91
- Sandy Bay, 68, 78
- schools, 44, 78, 121
- seabed, 51, 84, 93, 176
- search and rescue, 43, 116, 155, 159
- sedimentation, 17, 20, 21, 65, 69, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 101, 107, 109, 126, 128, 134, 137
- sewerage, 193
- shellfish, 93, 94, 182
- shelters, 74, 102, 163
- shrubland, 18, 64, 65, 67, 82, 133
- signage, 12, 151, 181
- Significant Natural Areas programme, 20, 102
- snorkelling, 25, 82, 84, 85, 86
- soil, 70
 conservation, 18, 65, 114, 134, 137
- sporting events, 67, 71, 72, 76, 90, 124, 131, 134, 138, 140, 142, 147, 151, 157
- stakeholders, 9, 45, 95, 169
- Statement of Intent, 10, 11, 33, 173, 192
- State-Owned Enterprises Act 1986, 9
- Stingray Bay, 83, 86
- Stony Bay, 68, 72, 76, 78
- structures, 61, 67, 71, 74, 75, 78, 79, 88, 89–90, 91–92, 95, 96, 98, 101, 102, 108, 110, 112, 113, 116, 121, 123, 124, 129, 130, 140, 141, 147, 148, 161–62, 171, 175, 191, 192, *See also* facilities; huts; maimai
- sustainability, 22, 27, 52, 58, 59, 82
- Table Mountain, 65, 69
- Tainui Waka, 27
- Tairua Harbour, 64
- Tairua River, 26

- tangata whenua, 18, 19, 20, 21, 28, 38–39, 45, 47, 51, 52, 66, 84, 101, 119, 126, 167, 168, 179, 185, 186, 192
 consultation with, 31, 151, 152, 153
 working with, 14, 15, 17, 22, 23, 27, 31–32, 35, 36, 37, 44, 52, 164, 165, 170
- taonga, 30, 101, 110, 122, 192
- Taumatotara Range, 119
- Tawarau Forest, 20, 25, 41, 114, 118–19, 122, 124–25, 128
- Tawarau River, 114
- TBfree New Zealand, 43, 134, 139, 169
- Te Araroa Trust, 25, 41, 42, 43, 118, 128, 140
- Te Araroa—The Long Pathway, 25, 40, 115, 118, 121, 135, 140
- Te Arawa River Iwi, 17, 30, 47, 49, 50, *See also* Waikato River Iwi
- Te Awamutu, 29, 117
- Te Kauri Park, 36, 114, 118–19, 122, 124–25, 170, 171
- Te Mana o Te Āwa, 49
- Te Maru o Rereahu, 28
- Te Maru o Rereahu Trust, 27, 29
- Te Pare Point, 81, 82, 86
- Te Pupuha, 82, 88
- Te Putahitanga O Nga Ara Trust, 30
- Te Tapui, 158, 172
- Te Teo Teo Pā, 101, 108
- Te Toto Gorge, 16, 116, 120–21, 123
- Te Ture Whaimana o Te Āwa o Waikato—the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River. *See* Waikato River
- telecommunications, 116, 147, 155, 157, 158, 193
- telegraph, 70, 73
- territorial local authorities. *See* local authorities
- Thames Coast, 19, 46, 64, 67, 68–69, 72–73, 75, 78–79
- Thames Coromandel District Council, 66, 75, 77, 82, 83, 85, 86, 87, 88
- threatened and at risk species, 21, 47, 51, 56, 65, 67, 69, 70, 93, 94, 100, 101, 103, 104, 105, 114, 117, 126, 164, 175, 192, *See also* flora
 conservation, 11, 15, 19, 23, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 44, 57, 59, 70, 72, 73, 79, 85, 87, 91, 96, 106, 108, 112, 114, 116, 120, 123, 124, 125, 128, 132, 137, 173
 habitats for, 36, 74, 75, 76, 87, 123, 129, 139, 155
- tikanga, 29, 179, 192
- timber milling, 38, 68, 135
- Timber Trail, 15, 25, 26, 38, 40, 41, 46, 133, 135, 136–37, 139, 140, 141, 143
- Titiraupenga, 30, 134, 135, 138, 140, 142
- toilets, 181
- Tongariro National Park, 25
- Tongariro/Taupo Conservation Management Strategy, 31
- Torehape Peat Dome, 100, 101, 103, 108, 109, 111, 112, 172
- tourism, 8, 11, 15, 16, 20, 24–25, 40, 41, 45, 57, 59, 61, 62, 81, 83, 84, 91, 96, 115, 116, 121, 126, 127, 128, 129, 136, 137, 147, 149, 164, 166, 167, 178
 organisations, 24, 42, 46, 71, 75, 83, 88, 129, 139, 140, 152
- Tourist Hotel Corporation, 29
- tracks, 40, 41, 66, 67, 68, 69, 72, 73, 74–75, 76, 78, 79, 82, 83, 86, 95, 98, 115, 116, 119, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 128, 135, 137, 138–39, 142, 151–54, 181
- tramping, 25, 40, 41, 46, 70, 71, 115, 117, 119, 121, 135, 138, 140
- translocations, 19, 24, 58, 59, 134, 138, 192
- trapping, commercial, 65, 114
- Treaty of Waitangi, 8, 13, 15, 18, 31–32, 39, 47–48, 49, 50, 71, 101, 109, 117, 135, 138, 139, 141, 162, 163, 168
- tuatara, 34, 57, 58
- tuna/eels, 15, 34, 65, 70, 94, 95, 101, 108, 114, 117
 eeling, 101, 164–65
- tūturiwhatu/New Zealand dotterel, 21, 24, 34, 65, 67, 69, 72, 81, 85, 87, 94, 96
- Tuwharetoa, 27
- utilities, 67, 148, 150, 155, 157, 158, 193
- vehicles, 67, 70, 75, 77, 78, 79, 89, 91, 92, 94, 97, 98, 137, 138, 140, 142, 144–45, 149–58, 168, 193, *See also* aircraft; four-wheel driving; watercraft
 access, 149, 150, 151, 154
 motorised, 75, 85, 149–51, 186
- visitors, 26, 38, 41–42, 52, 53, 66, 71–73, 82–84, 85–87, 96, 115, 120, 122, 193, *See also* tourism
 experience, 25, 38, 51, 59, 68, 73, 98, 107, 108, 112, 121, 122, 124, 128–29, 136, 138–39, 141, 143, 147, 148, 156, 157, 159, 160, 183
 number of, 24, 69, 70, 116, 122, 127, 131, 136, 139
- volcanic formations, 16, 34, 65, 68, 114, 115, 116, 134
- volunteers, 43, 87, 91, 128, 129, 137
- vulnerability, 16, 20, 33, 57, 58, 93, 94, 100, 107, 113, 127, 132, 149
- wāhi tapu, 26, 27, 29, 32, 94, 119, 130, 138, 183, 193
- Waihaha, 137, 145
- Waihou River, 17, 18, 29, 30, 94, 95, 96, 103
- Waikato Biodiversity Forum, 43
- Waikato Conservation Board, 9, 19, 84, 162, 173
- Waikato District, 23
- Waikato District Council, 117, 121, 124, 125
- Waikato Raupatu Claims Settlement Act 1995, 27
- Waikato Regional Coastal Plan (2004), 21, 93
- Waikato Regional Council, 18, 20, 22, 24, 49, 65, 74, 80, 93, 95, 97, 98, 99, 102, 110, 117, 119, 122, 123, 164, 170
- Waikato River, 13, 15, 16, 17, 27–28, 29–30, 36, 47–50, 101, 108, 117, 135, 162, 163, 171, *See also* Port Waikato
 Conservation Accord, 102, 109, 124
 lower, 17, 21, 100, 103–5, 106, 110
 Upper, 13, 31

Index

- Vision and Strategy, 47–48, 49, 50, 100, 102, 106, 109, 121, 124, 139
- Waikato River Authority, 48, 49, 50
- Waikato River Clean-up Trust, 48, 49
- Waikato River Iwi, 47, 48, 49, 50
- Waikato-Tainui, 17, 23, 27–28, 36, 42, 47–50, 101, 102, 104, 106, 115, 116, 117, 119, 120, 122, *See also* Waikato River Iwi
- Environmental Plan, 27–28
- Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010, 8, 27, 47, 48
- Waikawau, 64, 67, 68, 72, 75, 78, 79
- Waiomu, 19, 64
- Waipa, 17, 23, 30
- Waipa District Council, 19, 36, 105, 108, 109, 112, 111–12
- Waipa River, 15, 17, 28, 30, 47, 48, 49, 100, 106, 117, 121, 135, 138, 139
- Conservation Accord, 124, 139
- Integrated Management Plan, 28
- lakes and wetlands, 105–6
- Upper, 13, 47, 48, 135
- Waipapa, 16, 30, 133, 134, 137, 138, 142, 143
- Wairēinga/Bridal Veil Falls, 114, 116–17, 120, 121, 123–24
- Waitangi Tribunal, 127
- Waitoa River, 103
- Waitomo, 15, 16, 21, 24, 28, 40, 41, 46, 115, 119, 122, 126–32, 172, 189
- Waitomo District Council, 128
- Waitomo Forest, 131
- Waitomo Glowworm Cave, 21, 127, 129, 130
- walking, 46, 68, 69, 75, 78, 82, 83, 84, 87, 95, 102, 105, 107, 115, 119, 121, 123, 125, 127, 129, 135, 136, 151
- Walking Access Act 2008, 9
- walks, 25, 40, 59, 66, 71, 72, 73, 85, 86, 104, 108, 115, 118, 121, 127, 128, 129
- water
- conservation, 65, 114
- quality, 20, 35, 65, 70, 74, 94, 104, 105, 106, 108, 117, 121, 123, 126, 129, 134
- supply, 18, 65, 67, 71, 114, 115, 116, 117, 193
- water taxis, 84, 91
- watercraft, 57, 59, 62, 84, 86, 88–89, 90–91, 107, 110–11, 149, 154, *See also* boating
- landings, 84, 88–89, 90
- weeds, 134, 147, 149, 161
- Wentworth Valley, 40, 64, 69–70, 73, 76, 79, 159
- West Coast North Island Marine Mammal Sanctuary, 15, 23, 33, 164
- wētā, 19, 34, 58, 84, 87
- wetlands, 17, 33, 34, 47, 64, 65, 133, 149, 154, 162, 165, 190, 193, *See also* birds; ecosystems; Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana; restoration
- freshwater, 15, 17–18, 30, 100–113
- Wetlands of International Importance, 13, 17, 21, 51, 93, 97, 103, 104, 109, 148
- Whangamarino River, 103, 104, 110
- Whangamarino Wetland, 13, 17, 100, 101, 102, 103–4, 106, 108, 109, 110, 111, 112–13, 165, 172
- Whangamata, 64, 70, 164
- Whangamata Islands, 55, 56
- Whanganui Island, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 62, 157
- Whanganui National Park, 25
- Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve, 22, 25, 33, 81, 82, 83, 84, 86, 87, 89, 90, 92
- Committee, 84, 90
- Whangapoua Forest/Hukarahi Conservation Area, 65, 170
- Whangapoua Harbour, 64
- Wharekawa Harbour, 64, 70
- Wharekirauponga Valley, 46, 64, 69–70, 73, 79
- Whareorino, 189
- Whareorino Forest, 25, 40, 41, 114, 118–19, 120, 122, 123, 124–25, 172
- Wharepūhunga, 29, 30, 135, 138
- wharves, 146, 181
- Whenuakite, 19, 64
- Whitianga, 64, 82, 163
- Whitianga Rock, 81, 82, 86
- Wigmore Historic Reserve, 82
- Wild Animal Control Act 1977, 8, 134, 140, 168–69, 171, 172, 174, 178, 188, 194
- wild animals, 16, 20, 22, 37, 38, 114, 194
- control of, 19, 34, 36, 65, 70, 71, 103, 104, 105, 107, 115–16, 118, 119, 120, 127, 128, 132, 134, 138, 139, 140, 168–69, 170, 188
- wild caves, 127, 128, 129, 130
- wilderness areas, 155, 194
- wildlife, 94, 102, 121, 149, 154, 155, 159, 160, 194, *See also* sanctuaries
- habitat, 22, 85, 97, 98, 111, 133, 138
- Wildlife Act 1953, 8, 171, 178, 182, 188, 194
- World War II defences, 38, 57, 59, 68, 82
- young people, 43, 44, 45
- zoning, 40, 41, 72, 85, 137, 145, 150, 154, 155–58, 169

